

This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + Refrain from automated querying Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at http://books.google.com/



HORSER & STOREY, Booksellers, 33, High St., Oxford.





PRESENTED TO THE LIBRARY

BY

PROFESSOR H. G. FIEDLER

Fiedler N 390

J. S. Plum F Rev. C. E. hoterly

.

THE

FIRST GERMAN BOOK:

ON THE PLAN OF

"HENRY'S FIRST LATIN BOOK."

BY THE REV.

THOMAS KERCHEVER ARNOLD, M.A.

LATE RECTOR OF LYNDON,

AND FORMERLY FELLOW OF TRINITY COLLEGE, CAMBRIDGE;

AND

J. W. FRADERSDORFF, PHIL. DR. OF THE TAYLOR-INSTITUTION, OXFORD.

Fifth Edition.

LONDON:
RIVINGTONS, WATERLOO PLACE.
1859

LONDON:
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.

PREFACE.

THE following Introduction to German is exactly on the plan of my 'Henry's First Latin Book.' I have drawn it up from a wish to assist in introducing the study of modern languages into our classical schools: for I am convinced that the foundation, at least, of an accurate acquaintance with several of them may be laid not only without interfering with the study of Greek and Latin, but with positive advantage to the classical student; for the acquisition of every new language affords fresh materials for that comparison between the different means by which human speech effects the adequate expression of human thought, without which no clear insight into the laws of any language can be obtained.

It must be remembered that this work does not profess to be a systematic grammar. Should it be received with any tolerable portion of public favour, it will be followed by a more systematic work on the same plan and scale as my 'Practical Introductions to Greek and Latin Composition *.'

That the student may acquire some expertness in perceiving the virtual identity of German and English words under occasionally considerable difference of sound and orthography, he should make himself acquainted with that very interesting law (called 'Grimm's Law,' from the name of its great discoverer) by which the changes of consonants are found to be regulated. First let us take the table of the mutes:

	4	mooth.	middle.	aspire	ate.
P sounds ((labials)	\boldsymbol{p}	b	ph	[f, v]
K sounds	(gutturals)	k	\boldsymbol{g}	ch	[c hard = k]
T sounds (linguals)	t	d	th.	

- a) There is a tendency (in the progress of language) to interchange mutes of the same organ. Thus aspirated mutes pass into smooth; and smooth into middle.
 - (Thus $\pi o \delta$ (r. of $\pi o v \varsigma$) is the same word with Fot, foot; p having passed into f, d into t.)
- β) The *smooth* mutes (p, k, t) have a tendency to *supplant* each other.

[•] This has since been supplied by the publication of the Second German Book, containing a complete Syntax, &c.

 γ) In German ξ (= ts) sometimes takes the place of th, which in English has often passed into t.

An acquaintance with these principles will enable the pupil to detect the *identity* of many words, which would otherwise appear to him quite unconnected. He may also observe (1) that a final guttural in the German is in English often softened into y, as Xag, 'day,' trod=en, 'dry.'

- (2) p is sometimes pf in German, as in Pfund, pound; Pfuhl, pool.
- (3) the is sometimes gh in English, as Soch ter, daughter; hoth, high. To this gh we often find u prefixed: laugh (lathen); thought (bathte); so daughter.
- (4) sl is sometimes schl in German: sh, sch.

EXAMPLES.

- I. Interchange of p sounds (including f, v): sleeP, schlaF-en (4); deeP, tieF (iii); Pole, PFahl; haVe, haBen; loVe, lieBen.
- II. Interchange of k sounds: breCh=en, break; CHerry, Kirsche; liGHt, liCht.
- III. Interchange of t sounds (including z = ts): To, Zu; Ten, Zehn; Toe, Zehe; Dove, Taube (i); Drive, Treiben (i); riDe, reiTen; Deal, Theil; Door, Thur; blood, BluT; Think, Denken;

THorn, Dorn; THief, Dieb (i); Four, Bier; Full, Boll; Fowl, Bogel; Deaf, Taub (i); loud, lauX.

The numeral appended shows that the word illustrates another change belonging to (i), (ii), or (iii) respectively.

Numerals over the line refer to the Differences of Idiom; those with curve, to Cautions.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

On	Pronunciation									P.	AGE ix
LRS	ION										
	Terminations of	the 1	erso	ns of a	regu	lar v	erb				1
	3. Article 'the'							-			2
	'This,' 'that'										5
	Gin, 'one,' tein,	ino.	' no	ne'	-				:		7
	Some tenses of t				e ;				:	-	8
	Future of haben					•	•	-		·	10
	Some tenses of t					•	•	·	•	·	īĭ
	Future of fein (•	•	•	•	•	•	12
	-12. On Questio		,,,		•	•	•	•	•	·	13
	Past tenses of a				form	of C	onine	ration	•	•	18
	On dropping or						م رس		•	•	20
	Verbs whose ro					••	•	•	•	•	23
	Declension of th					etant		•	•	•	25
	Ancient form of						1700	•	•	•	29
10	Modern form of	deel	ining	Adia	etivos	•	•	•	•	•	32
10.	On omitting the	4 in	gonit	izoe o	nd de	*****	•	•	•	•	34
	The auxiliary v						•	•	•	•	36
	The auxiliary v						•	•	•	•	39
41.			moge	n and	muji	116	•	•	•	•	42
22.	On the engine		louen	who t	oouen	•	•	•	•	•	42 45
	On the ancient						41	•	,	•	
	Biel, wenig Pr					s gov	ern u	ie Vcc	UBBU	₹8	47
	Verbs of the str	ong	conju	Grenon		•	•	•	•	•	49
	Laffen .	• ,	•	•	• '	•	•	•	•	•	53
	On Dependent				•	•	•	•	•	•	55
28.	Verbs conjugate	ed wi	in lei	π.	•	٠.,	•	•	•	•	58
	Subjunctive mo					ient i	orm	•	•	•	61
	Verbs of wishin		mmai	nding,	äcc.	•	•	•	•	•	63
	Subjunctive mo		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	66
	33. Imperative		ι.	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	67
	On the Condition		•	•		•	•	•	•	•	72
	Conditional sent			•		•	•	•		•	75
	The Imperfect					Indi	cativ	в.		•	77
37.	Werben, 'to be	come	,''to	grow	,	•.				•	80
38.	The verb fein, '	to be	,' thi	roughe	out (i1	ı the	first	person	a)	•	84
39.	haben, 'to have	в'		•	•	•	•			•	86
	Verbs with hab					•					89
41	49 The Medde	of th	. À.,	-iliam	. Vani	ha					01

CONTENTS.

LESSON					P	AGE
43. The Passive Voice	•	•	•	•		97
44. Substitutes for the Passive Voice	•	•	•	•		100
45. Further Remarks on the Auxiliary	Verbs	•		•		103
46. Adjectives in el, en, er	•	•			•	106
47—49. Degrees of Comparison .	•			•		108
50. Verbs compounded with Separable 1	Particl	es		•		116
51. Some Verbs that govern the dative,	where	we do	not u	se 'to	,	121
52. Prepositions	•	•	•	•		124
53, improperly so called						127
54. Reflexive Verbs			•	•		130
55. Conjunctions that introduce subordi	nate se	nten	es			133
56. A. Adverbial Sentences of Place						134
57. B. ———— of Time	•	•	•	•		135
58. B. continued. Duration of Time	•	•	•			137
59. C. Causal Adverbial Sentences.						139
60. D. Condition		•	•			141
61. E. Sentences denoting manner.						144
62. F. Proportion						145
63. G. Concession. (Although, even if)	•					149
64. Verbs governing the Genitive .		•		•		151
65. Some Adjectives that govern the Ge	nitive					153
66. On the English Participial Substant	ive					155
67. On the particle au			•			159
68. On Word-building						161
69. Interrogative Sentences						163
70. Oblique Narration						165
71. The Relative Pronoun			•			167
72. The Accusative	_					172
73. Conjunctions (requiring a peculiar t	arn in	Gern	nan)			175
74, 75. Genders						178
76. Further Remarks on Pronouns .						180
77. Numerals						183
78. On Word-building						185
79. Some instances and peculiarities wit	h refe	rence	to Pk	ace		187
80. Omission of the particle au			•			189
81. Some useful idioms of werben .						191
82. Idiomatic phrases			•			193
oa, zazonimio parason	-	-	-	-		
Appendix.						
O. J. C. J of Cubetentines						F1
On the Genders of Substantives	•	•	•	•	•	[] [1]
On the Declension of Substantives .	•	•	•	•	•	LOU
Pronouns	•		•	•	•	[20
Verbs	•	•	•	•		[ib.
Irregular Verbs	•	•	•	•		[23
Principles of Word-building	•	•	•	•		[31
Differences of Idiom	•	•	•	•		[41
Cautions	•	•	•	•		[48
Index I. German-English	•	•	•	•	•	[59
II English-German	_					T 85

ON PRONUNCIATION.

Of the Letters.

In German, as in all other languages, the name of the letter is the letter itself pronounced with some other letter or letters. Thus in English the name of l is e-l.

TABLE OF THE GERMAN ALPHABET.

X	a	a s	ounds	like a in father, what [never as in wall or shame].
B	ь	b	99	b in English.
Œ	C	c	"	
D	Þ	d	"	d in English.
હ	e	e	99	e in there, bed.
& & &	f	f	"	f in English.
(§	g	g	"	g hard in gallop [never as in
		-		gem, ginger].
Ş	h	h	,,	h in English.
S S S S	i	h i	,,	i in bit; ee in deer.
\mathfrak{Z}	į	j	99	y in year (in North Germany
				like j).
R		$_{l}^{k}$.	,,,	k in English.
$\boldsymbol{\delta}$		l`	,,	the English corresponding
M		m	"	letter.
N		n	,,	J letter.
Ð	0	0	22	o in rose, God.

```
p sounds like
                          the English corresponding
D a
                ,,
R r
                              letter.
                99
G 1 8
                "
X t
         t
                        t in English.
Uи
                        u in bull, and oo in book.
         11.
                 ••
N v
                       f in father.
         v
                "
Ww
         u)
                        v in vine, even.
                99
æτ
                        x in wax, box.
         x
                 "
                        i [according to the German
N v
                 ,,
                             pronunciation].
3 %
                        ts in wants.
         z
                ,,
```

The following letters also express simple sounds.

```
å
         ä sounds like a in shame.
å
                        eu in French in fleur.
         ö
                "
ů
         ü
                        u in French in pur.
                199
         th
th
                           (almost).
                ,,
                           Sonly in words derived from
ph
        ph
                             the Greek].
đ
         ch
                        ch in the word Loch, in Scotch.
                "
(d)
         sch
                        sh in shame.
                ,,
```

Diphthongs.

```
ai almost as in eye, e.g. Hain (grove). au au as ou in house, sound.
```

ei ei as i in fine.

eu $\begin{array}{cc} eu & eu \\ au & \ddot{a}u \end{array}$ as oy + in joy.

ie ie as ee (the e lengthening the German i sound).
ou occurs in no true German word: in those
derived from the French it has also the power
of the French ou=oo in English, e.g. Tambour

^{*} Formed, however, more in the throat, and not in the roof of the mouth.

⁺ Some Germans, however, pretend there is a slight distinction between the sound of the au and the cu.

[Erommelfchläger] (drummer); Journal [Beitung] (Paper, journal).

Remark on the letter 't.' In words derived from the Latin where the syllable 'ti' is followed by a vowel, it has the power of a German '\(\frac{1}{2}\)' e.g. Nation (nation), Portion (portion), Portial (partial). Patient (patient), &c.; hence the reason of spelling such words also with '\(\frac{1}{2}\)' as Nation, &c., a practice which some Germans, at least, have introduced.

Of the Power of the German Letters.

a) Letters, the power of which does not differ from that of the English corresponding letters.

b, c, d, f, t, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t.

j like the English y in year: not j in jar.

- b) Letters, the power of which differs from that of the English.
 - a) Essentially:
 - We have the power of an f, e.g. Water (pronounce like fater, with the sound of a in father).
 - M has the power of the Eng. v, e.g. Mein (pronounce like Vine).
 - β) Not essentially:
 - A has the power of ks, e.g. Aenophon (pronounce like Ksenophon).
 - Y has the same power as the German i, e.g. Yop.
 - 3 has the same power as ts, e.g. 3ahl (pronounce like tsāl; a as in father).
- S has always the hard sound of the English g in gallant, gild, gossip, &c.: never the sound of g in gem, ginger.
- S = (nearly) the English 'z,' e.g. Sohn (son), like zone in English.

```
a = fa in father

e = fa in fate*

i = fee (physician's)

u = foo in fool

a = va, as in va-st, or in the French va-t-en

e = vey, as in con-vey

i = ve, as in ve-nous (blood)

u = vou, as in the French vous.
```

S, S, if they follow a vowel, change their power.

, \mathfrak{G} , after a vowel, takes a guttural sound like , $\mathring{\mathfrak{o}}$ +, e.g.

```
as, Tag (day).
eg Seg (way).
ig Ewig (eternal).
og Trog (trough).
ug Betrug (deceit).
```

Also, if preceded by an , I,' as Zalg (tallow). , &' after a vowel drops its aspiration (spiritus), and only renders the preceding vowel long; as,

	urse), nearly	like	the au in aunt,
Lehn (fief)	"	,,	a in lane.
ihn (him)	"	,,	ee in keen.
Ohr (ear)	"	,,	oa in oar.
Uhr (watch)	"	"	ou in your.

^{*} If short, fe in fen.

⁺ Some Germans, however, differ on this point.

FIRST GERMAN BOOK.

Lesson 1.

(Terminations of the persons of a regular verb.)

1. The full terminations of the persons are:

_	1.	2.	3,
SING.	e	est	et
PLUR.	en	et	en.

2. The personal pronouns are:

	1	3.		1)
1.	2.		1.	2.	3.
I	thou	he, she, it	we	you	they
ich	du	er, sie, es	wir	ihr	sie.

PRESENT. Ich reit-e
du reit-est
er reit-et
sie reit-en.

3. Vocabulary. To fatigue (ermüd-en). To ride (reit-en). To subsur (arbeit-en). To wait for, to expect (erwart-en). To comfort, console (tröst-en). To bind (binden). To lead (leit-en). To find (find-en). To find (send-en). To avoid, to shun (meid-en). To settem (fireht-en). To contemplate, to consider (betracht-en). To esteem (acht-en). To despise (veracht-en). To observe (beobacht-en, bemerk-en). To envy (beneid-en). To accompany (begleit-en).

Exercise 1.

4. (a) 1. Ich reite. 2. Du | 4. (a) 1. Ich reite. 2. Du bindest. 3. Er fürchtet. | bindest. 3. Er fürchtet.

- 4. Sie achtet. arbeitest. 6. Ihr leitet. arbeiteft. 7. Wir trösten. 8. Du 7. Wir troften. beobachtest. achtet. 10. Sie arbeiten. 11. Wir reiten. 12. Du tröstest. 13. Du sendest.
- 5. Du | 4. Sie achtet. 6. Ihr leitet. 8. Du 9. Er ver- beobachtest. 9. Er ver= achtet. 10. Sie arbeiten. 11. Wir reiten. 12. Du trofteft. 13. Du senbest. 14. Sie meiden. 15. Sie 14. Sie meiben. 15. Sie begleitet. 16. Er beneidet. begleitet. 16. Er beneibet.
- (b) 1. We ride. 2. You labour. 3. Thou labourest. 5. They esteem.6. You despise.8. We labour.9. She esteems. 4. She comforts. 7. You observe. 10. They bind. 11. Thou comfortest. 12. I despise. 13. I esteem. 14. You wait-for. 15. You find. 16. Thou ridest. 17. She rides. 18. We find. 19. We labour. 20. Thou labourest. 21. They esteem. 22. You envy. 23. Thou esteemest. 24. You avoid. 25. They send. 26. You accompany. 27. We fear.

Lesson 2.

(Article THE *.)

	м.	F.	N.
5. Nom.	der	die	das
Acc.	den	die	das.

- 6. When nothing is said on the subject, the pupil is to conclude
 - (1) that the accusative case of a substantive is like the nominative.
 - (2) That monosyllable substantives are masculine.
- 7. VOCABULARY. Friend (Fround). Father (Vater). (Mutter, die+). Physician (Arzt). Son (Sohn). Enemy (Feind). Death (Tod). Danger (Gefahr, die+). Daughter (Tochter, die). Advice, counsel (Rath).

See Less. 16.

⁺ The 'die' means that the noun is of the fem. gender.

Exercise 2.

- 8. (a) 1. Wir ermüden Freund. 2. Wir meiden die Gefahr. 3. Die Mutter tröstet die Tochter. 4. Der Vater beobachtet den Sohn. 5. Der Freund begleitet den Sohn. Der Sohn verachtet. Freund. 7. Der Freund achtet den Vater. 8. Ihr sendet den Arzt. 9. Der Sohn findet den Freund. 10. Die Mutter erwartet die Tochter. 11. Es tröstet die Mutter. 12. Er erwartet den Arzt. 13. Sie verachten den Feind. Er fürchtet den Vater.
- 8. (a) 1. Bir ermuben ben Kreund. 2. meiben bie Befahr. 3. Die Mutter tröstet die Tochter. Der Bater beobachtet den Sohn. 5. Der Freund bealeitet den Sohn. Der Sobn verachtet ben Kreund. Kreund achtet den Bater. Ihr sendet ben Urgt. 9. Der Sohn findet den Freund. 10. Die Mutter erwartet die Tochter. Es troftet die Mutter. Er erwartet ben Arat. Sie verachten ben Keind. 14. Gr fürchtet Bater.
- (b) 1. We are-waiting-for* the friend. 2. The friend consoles the mother. 8. We labour. 4. The son labours. 5. He avoids the enemy. 6. He despises death †. 7. She waits-for the physician. 8. The daughter comforts the friend. 9. The physician accompanies the friend. 10. He consoles the mother. 11. We despise the danger. 12. The son is-riding. 13. The friend esteems the daughter. 14. He avoids the danger. 15. We send the physician. 16. She envies the mother. 17. They fear death. 18. They despise the advice.

The German verb has no compound form of this kind: it is to be translated by the present tense.

Lesson 3.

9. An adjective following the article has an e appended to it through the nominative and accusative of all genders, except in the accusative masculine, which takes en.

(der schön-e Baum 10. die schön-e Blume das schön-e Feld (den schön-*en* Baum die schön-e Blume das schön-e Feld

the beautiful tree the beautiful flower the beautiful field the beautiful tree the beautiful flower the beautiful field.

11. Vocabulary. Old, aged (alt). Young (jung). Beautiful (schön). Ugly (hässlich). Strong (stark). Weak, feeble (schwach). Good (gut). Bad (schlecht). Learned (gelehrt). Little, small (klein). Great, large (gross). Child (Kind, das). Sick (krank). Matter (Sache, die). Man (Mann). Dutiful (gehorsam). Bold (kühn). Kind (gütig). Affectionate, tender (zärtlich, zart). Sincere (aufsichtic). richtig). Prudent (klug). And (und).

Exercise 3.

12. (a) 1. Die zärtliche Tochter tröstet die gütige Mutter. 2. Der aufrichtige Freund achtet den tige Freund gelehrten Sohn. 3. Der schlechte Sohn verachtet schlechte den guten Vater. 4. Die ben guten Bater. gute Mutter tröstet die kleine Tochter. 5. Wir den kühnen erwarten tigen Freund. 7. Der tigen junge Tochter. 8. Der junge Tochter. den schlechten Mann. ben

12. (a) 1. Die zartliche Tochter troffet die gutige Mutter. 2. Der aufrich= achtet ben gelehrten Sohn. Sohn verachtet 4. Die gute Mutter troftet bie kleine Tochter. 5. **W**ir erwarten ben Feind. 6. Der junge Sohn | Feind. 6. Der junge Sohn achtet den alten aufrich- achtet ben alten aufrich= Areund. gutige Vater erwartet die | gutige Bater erwartet bie aufrichtige Sohn verachtet | aufrichtige Sohn verachtet schlechten

- 9. Der gutige Freund | 9. Der gutige Freund begleitet das junge Kind. begleitet bas junge Rinb. tröstet die junge Mutter. troffet bie junge Mutter. 11. Er beneidet den ge- 11. Er beneidet ben ge= -lehrten Arzt. 12. Wir lehrten Urat. fürchten den kühnen fürchten ben Feind. 13. Sie erwarten Feind. 13. Sie erwarten 14. Tod. Der ben schlechte Sohn verachtet schlechte den klugen Rath.
- Das kleine Kind 10. Das kleine Kind 12. Wir Tob. 14. Sobn perachtet ben klugen Rath.
- (b) 1. The aged father accompanies the young child. 2. The little child is waiting-for the father. 3. They are waiting-for the learned friend. 4. The young child is riding. 5. The affectionate mother is accompanying the young daughter. 6. The bad daughter avoids the aged father. 7. The kind friend is leading the young son. 8. The prudent man avoids the danger. 9. The bold enemy despises death. 10. They envy the sincere friend.

Lesson 4.

13. 'This,' 'that,' are in German dieser, jener, respectively, which are thus declined:

14. N. M. F. F. dies-er dies-e dies-es jen-er jen-e jen-es dies-en dies-e dies-es jen-en jen-e jen-es. Nom.

15. An adjective after the nominative and accusative of dieser, jener, takes e, except in Acc. masc., which takes en (just as after der, &c. [10]).

16. Nom. dieser schön-e Baum; diese schön-e Blume; dieses schön-e Feld.

Acc. diesen schön-en Baum; diese schön-e Blume; dieses schön-e Feld.

Exercise 4.

Mutter leitet das junge Kind. 2. Jener alte Vater iunge begleitet dieses Kind. 3. Dieser junge Freund erwartet ienen Freund gelehrten Arzt. 4. Dieser schlechte Sohn verachtet schlechte jenen aufrichtigen Freund. 5. Wir verachten diesen 5. schlechten Sohn. 6. Jene Schlechten Sohn. Tochter achtet gute diese zärtliche Mutter. 7. Dieses junge Kind erwartet die gütige Mutter. lehrten Arzt. 10. Dieser lehrten Arzt. tigen Freund. 11. Jene tigen Freund. schlechte Tochter meidet schlechte schlechte Mann fürchtet schlechte den * Tod.

17. (a) 1. Diese zärtliche | 17. (a) 1. Diese zärtliche Mutter leitet bas junge Rind. 2. Jener alte Bater bealeitet dieses iunae Rind. 3. Dieser junge erwartet ienen gelehrten Arat. Sohn verachtet jenen aufrichtigen Freund. Wir verachten biefen 6. Jene gute Tochter achtet diese zärtliche Mutter. 7. Dieses junge Kind er= wartet die gutige Mutter. 8. Dieser gelehrte Freund 8. Dieser gelehrte Freund tröstet jenen alten Vater. troftet jenen alten Bater. 9. Sie senden diesen ge- 9. Sie senden diesen ge-10. Dieser Sohn meidet den aufrich- Sohn meibet ben aufrich= 11. Jene Tochter die alte Mutter. 12. Dieser | Die alte Mutter. 12. Dieser Mann ben * Rob.

(b) 1. This kind friend is t-accompanying the young child. 2. We are waiting for that learned physician. 3. This little child is riding. 4. We are-consoling this sincere friend. 5. They are-avoiding that danger. 6. You avoid that bold enemy. 7. This aged and prudent friend avoids that great danger. 8. This good daughter esteems that kind and learned friend. 9. He avoids that kind and sincere friend. 10. We fear death 2.

^{*} Leave out the article in English.

⁺ See Note, Ex. 2 (b).

Lesson 5.

18. Ein (properly 'one') is used for the indefinite article 'a.' Kein is 'no,' 'none.'

19. M. F. N. M. F. N. Nom. ein ein-e ein kein kein-e kein kein-e kein.

(the mascul. adj. has Nom. er: Acc. en After ein, { fem. — e: kein, es: es :

21. Nom. Acc. (mas.) ein schön-er Baum: einen schön-en Baum (fem.) eine schön-e Blume: eine schön-e Blume (neut.) ein schön-es Feld: ein schön-es Feld.

Exercise 5.

[Repeat the former Vocabularies.]

alten Mann. 2. Jene alten Mann. gütige Mutter leitet ein gutige Mutter leitet ein zartes und schwaches zartes und tigen Freund. 4. Eine tigen Freund. 4. Gine alten Vater. 5. Ein alten Bater. schlechter Sohn verachtet schlechter guten Vater. einen 6. Keine zärtliche Tochter 6. Reine gartliche Tochter verachtet einen tiger Mann beneidet einen tiger Mann beneibet einen Freund. 8. Ein junges Freund. 8. Gin junges

22. (a) 1. Ein aufrich- | 22. (a) 1. Ein aufrich= tiger Freund tröstet einen tiger Freund troffet einen **Schwaches** Kind. 3. Kein guter Mann Rind. 3. Rein guter Mann beneidet diesen aufrich- beneidet biefen aufrich= gute Tochter achtet einen gute Tochter achtet einen Sohn verachtet guten Bater. alten verachtet einen Vater. 7. Kein aufrich- Bater. 7. Rein aufrich= Kind erwartet die gutige Rind erwartet bie gutige

9. Ein alter | Mutter. Freund erwartet den ge- Freund erwartet ben ge= lehrten Arzt. kluger Mann meidet jene Gefahr. 11. Kein kluger Mann verachtet einen guten Rath. 12. Ein schlechter Mann fürchtet Schlechter Mann den Tod. 13. Kein gutes Kind fürchtet eine gütige Mutter. 14. Sie meiden fahr.

9. Ein alter 10. Ein lehrten Arat. 10. Gin kluger Mann meidet jene Gefahr. 11. Rein kluger Mann verachtet guten Rath. 12. Ein fürchtet ben Tob. 13. Rein gutes Rind furchtet eine autige Mutter. 14. Sie meiben und fürchten keine Ge- und fürchten keine Befabr.

(b) 1. A bad man envies a sincere friend. 2. An affectionate daughter comforts an aged mother. 3. A kind friend is accompanying that tender child. 4. He avoids a great danger. 5. He despises no prudent advice. 6. No good daughter despises an aged mother. 7. He is waiting-for a young friend. 8. That aged mother is comforting the young son. 9. This learned physician is accompanying a feeble little child. 10. We avoid no bold enemy. 11. No good man fears death 2.

Lesson 6.

(Some tenses of the verb To HAVE.)

23. Pres. Ich habe du hast er hat

Wir haben ihr habet sie haben.

IMPERF. Ich hatte du hattest er hatte

Wir hatten ihr hattet sie hatten.

24. When nothing is said on the subject, it is to be concluded that substantives ending in el, en, er, are masculine.

25. VOCABULARY. [See 6 (2.)] Courage (Muth). Fear (Furcht, die). Hope (Hoffnung, die). Comfort (Trost). Cloak (Mantel). Csp (Becher). Ring (Ring). Gold, adj. (golden). Silver, adj. (silbern). New (neu). Warm (warm). Not even (nicht einmal). Besides (überdiess). Neither—nor (weder—noch).

Exercise 6.

- 2. Er hatte einen guten 2. Er hatte einen guten silbernen Becher. 4. Er filbernen Becher. bernen Becher. keine grosse Hoffnung. feine 9. Der alte Freund. lichen Sohn.
- 26. (a) 1. Der kühne | 26. (a) 1. Der kuhne Feind hat grossen Muth. Feind hat großen Muth. warmen Mantel. 3. Der warmen Mantel. 3. Der kleine Sohn hat einen fleine Sohn' bat einen hat einen goldenen Ring hat einen golbenen Ring und überdiess einen sil- und überdieß einen fil= 5. Sie bernen Becher. 5. Sie haben keinen aufrichtigen haben keinen aufrichtigen Freund. 6. Wir haben Freund. 6. Wir haben große Hoffnung. 7. Dieser kühne Mann hat r. Dieser fuhne Mann hat keine Furcht. 8. Kein keine Furcht. 8. Kein schlechter Mann hat einen Schlechter Mann hat einen guten und aufrichtigen guten und aufrichtigen 9. Der alte Vater hat keinen zärt- Bater hat keinen gart= lichen Sohn.
- (b) 1. I have a silver cup. 2. This affectionate father has no good and sincere son. 3. That bold enemy has no fear. 4. They have no great courage. 5. The young son had a gold ring, and, besides, a beautiful silver cup. 6. That affectionate mother has no kind and sincere daughter. 7. We have no sincere and kind friend. 8. She has no kind and affectionate mother.

Lesson 7.

27. Ich werbe einen Wagen haben. I shall a carriage have.

- 28. In the Future tense the Acc. of the object precedes the Infinitive mood in German. Thus, if the Infinitive mood is meiben (avoid), finden (find), or any of the preceding verbs, the Acc. precedes those verbs in a similar manner, e.g. I shall the danger avoid, 3th werds die Gefahr meiben (I shall avoid the danger).
 - 29. Ich werbe haben bu wirst haben er wird haben

Bir werden haben ihr werdet haben sie werden haben.

Exercise 7.

[Repeat the former Vocabularies.]

- 30. (a) 1. Der Feind wird keinen Muth haben. 2. Sie werden weder große Furcht noch Hoffnung haben. 3. Der Gute * wird keine Furcht haben. 4. Der Schlechte * wird keine Hoffnung haben. 5. Dieser Gute wird Hoffnung haben. 6. Jener Schlechte wird weder Arost noch Hoffnung haben. 7. Die zärtliche Mutter wird eine gute und aufrichtige Aochter haben. 8. Er wird einen silbernen Becher haben. 9. Wir werden jene Gefahr meiben. 10. Sie werden den Tod verachten. 11. Wir werden keinen guten Rath verachten.
- (b) 1. The aged father will have no hope. 2. This affectionate mother will have a dutiful daughter. 3. The bold enemy will have great courage. 4. That bad man will have no comfort. 5. The young son will have a silver cup. 6. That aged father will have a sincere and dutiful son. 7. The prudent friend will avoid that great danger. 8. He will have no comfort and hope. 9. They will fear no danger.

^{*} An adj. substantively used with man (Mann) understood.

Lesson 8.

(Some tenses of the verb To BE.)

31. PRES. 3ch bin du bift er ist

Wir find ihr seid fie find.

Impers. 3th war du warst er mar

Wir waren ibr waret sie waren.

- 32. (1) Das Wetter ist marm. The weather is warm.
 - (2) Das Wetter ist warm und schon. The weather is warm and beautiful.
- 33. The adjective after 'to be' is not declined; and if there is a second adjective joined to the first by 'and,' that also is undeclined.
- 34. Vocabulary. Path (Pfab). Way (Beg). Storm (Sturm). Wind (Binb). Weather (Better, bab). Mountain (Berg). Hill (Hugel). Moon (Monb). Rain (Regen). Broad (Breit). Narrow (enge, schmal). Steep (steil). Short (surz). Long (lang). Bright (bell). Violent (bestig). Dreadful, searful (surchtbar). Cold (satt). Clear (flar). High (hoch). Lonely (einfam). Not (nicht). Very (fehr). Rather (siemlich, etwas). Two (zu). Almost (beinahe). Not near so -; not so - by a great deal (lange, or bei weitem nicht so).

Exercise 8.

35. (a) 1. Der Pfad ist nicht sehr breit. 2. Der Beg war ziemlich enge. 3. Der Wind ift heftig und kalt. 4. Du bift etwas zu heftig. 5. Das Better war marm. 6. Der Berg ift hoch und fteil. 7. Der Bind war falt. 8. Jener Beg ift lange nicht so enge. 9. Diefer Beg ift breit. 10. Der Mond ift hell. 11. Der Sturm ift furcht= bar. 12. Der Weg ift lang und einsam. 13. Es war nur fehr furg. 14. Diefes ift beinahe zu breit. 15. Jenes ift lang. 16. Es war furchtbar.

(b) 1. This hill is steep and high. 2. That path is rather long and narrow. 3. This is bright and clear. 4. The moon was bright. 5. The storm is violent. 6. The wind is dreadful. 7. The weather was rather cold. 8. The mountain is high and steep. 9. It is dreadful. 10. This way is broad. 11. That path is lonely and long. 12. This is short and that is long. 13. The rain is not near so cold and violent.

Lesson 9.

36. Ich werbe aufrichtig fein.

L shall sincere be. (I shall be sincere.)

Der Weg wird lang und einsam sein. The way will long and lonely be.

(The way will be long and lonely.)

- 37. Observe the position of the adjectives before the infinitive sein.
 - 38. Future of sein (or senn) 'to be.'

Ich werbe sein du wirst sein er wird sein Wir werden fein ihr werdet fein fie werden fein.

39. Vocabulary. Boy (Knabe). Artist (Künftler). Scholar (Schüler). Industrious (fleißig). Contented (zufrieben, befriebigt). Patient (gebulbig). Obedient (gehorsam). Quiet (ruhig, still). Modest (beschieben). Honest (ehrlich). Clever (geschickt). Agreeable, pleasant (angenehm). Attentive (ausmerksam).

Exercise 9.

40. (a) 1. Du wirst bescheiben sein. 2. Der Künstler wird geschickt sein. 3. Die gute Tochter wird gehorsam sein. 4. Der junge Sohn wird ausmerksam und fleißig sein. 5. Der Mond wird hell sein. 6. Wir werden ruhig und zufrieden sein. 7. Der Psad wird enge und steil sein. 8. Die alte Mutter wird geduldig sein. 9. Der

Wind wird kalt und heftig fein. 10. Sie werben ruhig und bescheiden sein.

(b) 1. He will be honest. 2. They will be industrious and patient. 3. The little child will be obedient. 4. The weather will be warm. 5. The young artist will be very clever. 6. This path will be steep. 7. That way will be long and lonely. 8. He will be quiet and contented. 9. The wind will be rather cold and violent. 10. The matter will be very dreadful. 11. You will be patient and attentive. 12. The enemy will be quiet.

Lesson 10.

41.	Has he?	If er? Is he?
	Had he?	War er? Was he

- 42. Obs. In questions the order of the words is inverted, as in English: that is to say, the nominative case follows the verb.
- 43. It is usual in German, in addressing persons, to use the third person plural, where we use the second * plural, whether addressing one person or more.
 - Sie is then always written with a capital letter.
 - (a) In the following exercises, when 'thou' is used, the second singular is to be used in German; when 'ye,' the second plural: when 'you,' the third plural, whether one person is addressed or more than one.
- 44. Vocabulart. Low (niedrig). Thick (bict). Thin (bunn). Slender (ichlant). Round (rund). Square (vierectig). Deep (tiet). Shallow (seich). Wide (weit, breit). Pointed (spisig). Tower (Apurm). Lake (See). Mast (Mast). Sword (Degen). River (Flus). Reed (Royr, das). Water (Wasser, das). Rapid (reisend). Or (oder). Stream (Strom). Merry, joyful (stoh, stöhlich). Scholar (Scholter).

In what cases bu and ihr are used, will be explained afterwards.

Exercise 10.

- 45. (a) 1. Ist der Thurm hoch? 2. Ist der See ettef?
 3. War der Weg breit? 4. Ist das Rohr schlank? 5. War das Wasser hoch oder niedrig? 6. Ist der Thurm rund oder viereckig? 7. Ist der Mantel lang oder kurz?
 8. War der Weg nicht* zu lang? 9. War der Masser schwichten? 10. War der Fluß tief oder seicht? 11. Ist der Degen lang oder kurz? 12. Waren Sie zusrieden?
 13. Sind sie gelehrt? 14. Sind Sie aufrichtig?
 15. Waren sie nicht fleißig und ausmerksam? 16. War der Fluß sehr reißend oder nicht? 17. War das gute Kind ruhig und geduldig? 18. Ist der geschickte Künstler nicht zusrieden? 19. Hat er einen fleißigen Sohn?
 20. Hat er ein gehorsames Kind? 21. Hatten Sie einen fleißigen Schüler? 22. Hatten sie kinen aufrichtigen Freund? 23. Haft du einen neuen warmen Mantel?
- (b) 1. Are you contented? 2. Are ye merry? 3. Art thou attentive? 4. Is the old man honest? 5. Are they not quiet and patient? 6. Was the little daughter industrious or not? 7. Was not the wind very violent? 8. Is the tower square † or round? 9. Is the path too narrow and steep? 10. Was not the young daughter very modest and quiet? 11. Are you not too merry? 12. Was it not very pleasant? 13. Is not the river very deep and rapid? 14. Are ye not attentive? 15. Is not the old physician very clever and learned?

Lesson 11.

46. (Will the pupil be industrious and attentive?) Bird ber Schüler fleißig und aufmerksam sein? Will the pupil industrious and attentive be?

[•] Observe that the nom. precedes the not.

⁺ See Note, Less. 11 (48, 49).

Observe the position of the predicative adjective or adjectives before the sein.

47. Birb er einen Mantel haben?
Will he a cloak have?
(Will he have a cloak?)

Observe the position of the accusative before the haben.

- 48. CAUTION 1. When 'one' is used in English as the representative of a substantive before expressed in the sentence, it must be omitted in German.
 - (Eng.) He has a long sword and his brother a short one (= sword).

(Germ.) He has a long sword and his brother a short.

(Er hat einen langen Degen, und sein Bruber einen furgen.)

- 49. CAUTION 2. In a question asked in the form "is it a (round tower? &c.)" the German idiom agrees with our own: but in the form "is the tower a round one?" the 'a' and 'one' must both be omitted.
 - (Eng.) Is the tower a round or a square one?

 Germ.) Is the tower round or square?

 (If ber Thurm rund over vieredig?)

Exercise 11.

(Repeat the preceding Vocabularies.)

50. (a) 1. Wird er fleißig sein? 2. Werden Sie zusfrieden sein? 3. Wird die gute Tochter nicht gehorsam und aufrichtig sein? 4. Hat er den filbernen Becher oder den goldenen? 5. Ift es der alte Mantel oder der neue? 6. Ist es das gute Kind oder das schlechte? 7. Haben Sie den großen Becher oder den kleinen? 8. Haben Sie keinen aufrichtigen Freund? 9. Haben sie einen gehorssamen Sohn und eine gute Tochter? 10. Wird der gute Vater kein bescheidenes Kind haben? 11. Wird der neue

Thurm rund ober viereckig sein? 12. Wird er nicht ruhig und zufrieden sein? 13. Wird diese zartliche Mutter keine bescheidene und aufrichtige Tochter haben? 14. Wird jene alte Mutter nicht froh sein? 15. Wird jener tiese Strom nicht reißend sein? 16. Wird jener hohe Mast nicht zu dick sein? 17. Wird dieses schlanke Rohr nicht zu dunn sein? 18. Wird ein treuer Freund nicht aus= richtig sein?

(b) 1. Shall you be contented? 2. Shall ye be sincere? 3. Will the good daughter be obedient and modest? 4. Will not the river be too deep? 5. Will not this deep stream be very rapid? 6. Have you the new cloak or the old one*? 7. Is it a great tower or a small one? 8. Is the tower a round or a square one? 9. Have they no industrious and attentive child? 10. Had ye the pointed sword? 11. Will the round tower be very high or not? 12. Will the lake be deep or shallow? 13. Will the weather be warm or cold? 14. Will that old friend be sincere? 15. Will the affectionate mother have an obedient little child? 16. Wilt thou be quiet and patient? 17. Will the rain be very violent? 18. Will not the storm be very dreadful?

Lesson 12.

- 51. (1) Furthtet er ben Zob?
 Fears, he the death?
 (Does he fear death?)
 - (2) Furchtet er nicht ben Tob?

 Fears he not the death?

 (Does not he fear death?)
- 52. The Germans have no compound form answering to the English interrogative and emphatic form

of the present with do. The simple present is, of course, to be used.

53. Vocabulary. Reputation (Muf). Treasure (Schat). To guard (huten). Question (Frage, bie). To answer (beantworten). Considerable (bebeutenb). To envy (beneiben). Why ! (warum?) Dangerous (gefährlich, gefahrvoll). Afflicted (betrübt). Easy (leicht). Difficult (schwer).

Exercise 12.

- 54. (a) 1. Uchtet er ben bescheibenen Sohn? 2. Meibet ber kluge Mann nicht bie Gefahr? 3. Sutet er nicht jenen bebeutenden Schat? 4. Leitet die gute Mutter nicht bas junge Rind? 5. Warum beantwortet ihr nicht jene leichte Frage? 6. Beantwortet er feine Frage? 7. Warum beantwortet er nicht eine* Frage? 8. Sat er feinen aufrichtigen Freund? 9. Sat er nicht einen* aufrichtigen Freund? 10. Erwarten Sie keinen Brief? 11. Berachtet jener schlechte Sohn die aufrichtige Mutter? 12. Trostet diese gute Tochter nicht die gartliche Mutter? 13. Beneidet ber fleißige Schuler ben gelehrten Arat? 14. Warum meibet ihr jenen treuen Freund? 15. Warum meiben Sie nicht jene gefahrvolle Sache? 16. Beneibet ihr den alten Vater? 17. Bemerken wir nicht den Schat? 18. Betrachtet er nicht die Sache? 19. Ermubet ber Urat ben Kranken +? 20. Achtet er nicht einen guten Ruf?
- (b) 1. Why do you not esteem the faithful friend?

 2. Why does not that prudent friend avoid the danger?

 3. Do ye not despise that bad son? 4. Does he contemplate the bright clear lake? 5. Does not the young child console the afflicted mother? 6. Does a good son despise an aged father? 7. Do they expect the enemy? 8. Do you not guard this considerable treasure? 9. Why does not the learned physician answer the difficult question? 10. Do

[•] One (= a single).

⁺ An adj. substantively used (= patient).

they not observe the bold enemy? 11. Does a good man envy a sincere and faithful friend?

Lesson 13.

(Past tenses of a verb. Modern form of conjugation.)

55. All derivative verbs are conjugated according to what is called the *modern* or *weak* form of conjugation.

It is called *modern*, because the old, primitive verbs of the language are not so conjugated; and *weak*, because it often introduces many short unaccented syllables together.

56. In the modern form of conjugation, the *Imperfect* tense is formed by adding et to the root, and then appending the personal terminations*: arbeit=en, to work; root, arbeit=:—

IMPERFECT. (I was working. I worked.)

arbeit=et=e arbeit=et=en arbeit=et=eft arbeit=et=et arbeit=et=e arbeit=et=en.

57. The past participle is formed in the same way by the addition of et, but prefixes ge:—

Verb. Root. Past Participle.
reb=en reb= ge=reb=et
arbeit=en arbeit= ge=arbeit=et.

58. Perfect. (I have worked. I worked.)

Ich habe gearbeitet | Wir haben gearbeitet bu hast gearbeitet | ihr habet gearbeitet er hat gearbeitet | sie haben gearbeitet.

59. PLUPERFECT. (I had worked.)

Ich hatte gearbeitet wir hatten gearbeitet er hatte gearbeitet fie hatten gearbeitet.

[•] Except the third person singular, which does not append t, to distinguish it from the second person plural.

- 60. The past participles are declined like adjectives: ber, bie, bas gerettet=e; ein gerettet=es.
- 61. Vocabulary. Brave, valiant (tapfer). Citizen (Bürger). Artillery (Geschüß, bas). General (General, Felbherr). Not yet (noch nicht). To direct (richten; of artillery, to point). To pray (betsen). To announce (melbsen). To save (rettsen). King (Konig). Soldier (Soldat). Rampart (Ball). The state (Staat). Nothing (Richts). Gate (Thor, bas). Wall (Mauer, bie). Vietory (Sieg). Arrival (Antunft, bie). Messenger (Bote). Place, passage (Stelle, bie). To knit one's brow (bie Stirn falten; litr. to fold). To fold up (falten).

I have the letter written. (I have written the letter.)

Exercise 13.

- 62. (a) 1. Der tapfere Solbat rettete* ben König.
 2. Sein (his) kühner Muth hat ben tapfern † Bürger gerettet.
 3. Das kleine Kind hatte die betrübte Mutter getröstet.
 4. Er hatte den Brief noch nicht gefalten ‡.
 5. Ist der alte Bater gerettet?
 6. Das gehorsame Kind hatte gebetet.
 7. Das Geschütz ist noch nicht gerichtet.
 8. Sie haben die Stelle nicht bemerkt.
 9. Der gerettete König beobachtete den tapfern General.
 10. Der Bote meldete einen bedeutenden Sieg.
 11. Hat der Bote den Sieg noch nicht gemeldet?
 12. Der tapfere General tröstete jenen alten Bürger.
 13. War das Geschütz noch nicht gerichtet?
- (b) 1. The good child was praying. 2. The brave general did not fear the danger. 3. He avoided that danger. 4. Did he not avoid this danger? 5. Have you saved nothing? 6. Why does he knit his brow

[•] Till further directions are given, construe the imperfect by our perfect formed by inflection (I loved); the perfect by our perfect definite (with have).

⁺ For topfersen. Observe that the acc. precedes the participle of a compound tense.

[#] Kalten forms its past part. in en, and not in et.

(say 'the brow')? 7. This valiant soldier saved the good king. 8. That good king has saved the state. 9. The brave general observed the high rampart. 10. He was observing the strong old gate. 11. Has he marked the place? 12. The soldier was observing the high wall. 13. Has not the messenger announced a glorious* victory? 14. This brave soldier announced the victory. 15. We were observing the gate. 16. The valiant citizen has saved the state. 17. He has folded up the letter. 18. He was-knitting his brow.

Lesson 14.

(On dropping or retaining the e of est, et.)

63. The e of eft and et is usually dropt in German, whenever this can be done from the nature of the characteristic (or, last consonant of the root).

Thus the English, for instance, leave out in pronouncing (though not in writing) the e in the word loved (lov'd); but we cannot pronounce wed'd, regret'd, &c. In similar cases now, where there is organic difficulty of pronunciation, the Germans retain the Binberocal (i.e. binding or connecting vowel) e.

64. It will be found, then, that after the t sounds (t,.b, th), &, ß, ſdh, z, gn, and chn, the st cannot be pronounced with the preceding syllable, and therefore the e is retained: bu reit=est, reb=est, speis=est, sließ=est, tanz=est, misch=est, segn=est, bezeichn=est.

Some exceptions will be mentioned afterwards, when the vowel of the tense is short i, or å; bu gilt ft, bu hålt ft, &c.

65. After the t sounds, gn and chn, the e in et is retained, because t cannot be pronounced with the preceding syllable or (in the case of the characteristic t) would merely double the first consonant.

^{*} Glangent (litr. shining); present participles are declined like adjectives.

66. The following table will be convenient for reference:

(1) e retained in both est and et.

(T sounds [t, d, th], s, gn, chn)					
t d th gn chn s	wart=en leib=en mieth=en fegn=en zeichn=en preif=en	wart=est leib=est mieth=est segn=est zeichn=est preis=est	wart=et leib=et mieth=et fegn=et zeichn=et preif=et	(to wait) (to suffer) (to hire) (to bless) (to draw) (to praise)	

(but sometimes gereis=t, reist=e for gereis=et, reiset=e).

(2) e retained in est; but mostly not in et.

38	genieß=en	genieß=eft	genieß=t	(to enjoy)
z	tanz=en	tanz=eft	tanz=t	(to dance)
sch	misch=en	misch=est	misch=t	(to mix).

(3) e mostly rejected.

[In many of these words to retain the t would be like pronouncing loved as two syllables. It may always be done in poetry.]

(P sounds)

p	fneip=en	. kneip=st	fneip=t	(to pinch)
H	reib=en	reib=ft	reib=t	(to rub)
f	fauf=en	tauf=ft	fauf=t	(to b uý)
		(K sounds)	
k	hink=en	hink=st	hink=t	(to limp)
g	frag=en	frag=ft	frag=t	(to ask)
ch	wach=en	wach=ft	wach=t	(to watch).
		(Liquids))	
l	hol=en	hol=ft	hol=t	(to fetch)
778	fåum=en	saum≥st	faum=t	(to hem)
n	nenn=en	nenn=st	nenn=t	(to name)
r	fůhr=en	führ=ft	führ=t	(to lead).

67. The same rules, of course, hold good for et, the termination of the participle: since we say lobt, we also say gelobt.

- 68. So the imperfect (its termination being etc) follows the same rules; because the laws of euphony or possible articulation, which decide whether a preceding consonant can be combined (possibly or easily) with t, determine this point alike for etc and ct.
 - a) For instance, since I can pronounce lobet, I can pronounce lobet; and as lobet becomes lobet, so lobett becomes lobet.
 - 69. Er lobt nie. Du reisest oft.

 He praises never. (He never praises.)

 Du reisest oft.

 Thou travellest often. (Thou often travellest.)

Er grußt immer. He salutes always. (He always salutes.)

70. VOCABULARY. To praise (loben). To suffer (leiben). To draw (zeichnen). To dance (tanzen). To mix (mischen). To be awake (machen). To wait for (marten auf). Count (Gras, gen. Grasen [83]). Blind (blinb). To guide, lead (fatren). To buy (tausen). To hope (hossen). To fetch (holen). To learn (lernen). To teach (lehren). To distress, to hurt [any one's feelings] (transen). To feed (speisen). To travel (reisen). To greet, to salute (grasen, begrüßen). To bless (segnen). To protect (schüßen). To lighten (blisen). Osten (oft). Always (immer). Never (nimmer, nie). Mathematics (Mathematit, bie). Music (Music, bie). Teacher (gehrer). To desend (vertheibigen). Disobedient (ungehorsam). Alone (allein).

Exercise 14.

[An ° prefixed means that the following word or words in italics are not to be translated.]

71. (a) 1. Es blist. 2. Er arbeitet. 3. Sie arbeitete.
4. Du schützest bas junge Kind. 5. Die gute Mutter lobt den gehorsamen Sohn. 6. Hat der alte Vater das gute Kind gelobt? 7. Lobte er die fleißige Tochter nicht?
8. Dieses schlechte Kind krankte jenen alten Vater. 9. Du reisest. 10. Reisen Sie nicht oft? 11. Sie hosst immer.
12. Hosst du nimmer? 13. Sie holte den Brief.
14. Der Vater schützt das Kind. 15. Der aufrichtige Freund segnete das kleine Kind. 16. Der gute König grüßte den alten General. 17. Du speisest den Kranken.
18. Er lehrt Mathematik. 19. Sie lernt Musik. 20. Er

taufte Richts. 21. Warum hat biefer große Felbherr jenen armen Burger verachtet?

(b) 1. The old friend is-guiding the blind count.

2. Does the young girl not dance?

3. He mixes the strong wine with cold water (mit faitem Baffer).

4. Do you buy no new book?

5. She is-fetching some fresh water.

6. The young child is now awake.

7. Why does the old man call* that clever physician an impostor?

8. The old father is-blessing his (sein) little child.

9. Thou art-suffering.

10. Is he not suffering?

11. She is-waiting in the garden (in bem Garten).

12. Is he waiting perhaps for me (auf mich)?

13. The beautiful girl is-drawing in the garden.

14. She had praised the good daughter.

15. He is travelling all the (ben ganzen †) day.

Lesson 15.

(Verbs, whose roots end in el or et.)

- 72. Verbs, whose roots end in el or er, drop the e from the termination of the infinitive: hence tabelen (not tabelen); wanderen (not wanderen).
- 73. In the present tense they drop e of the root in the first person; e of the termination in the other persons.

74.	Ich tabl=e	Wir tadel=n
	du tadel=st	ihr tadel=t
	er tadel=t	sie tabel=n.

75. So ich mandr=e; du mander=st, &c.

76. The Imperfect drops e from the et that is appended to the root of the present, to get the root of the Imperfect. Hence, tabel=t=e, not tabel=et=e; wander=t=e, not wander=et=e.

[•] Translate call by 'failt' (litr. scolds').

⁺ That is, 'the whole' (acc.).

- 77. So, to form the past participle, t (not et) is added to the root of the present. Thus getabelt, gewandert.
- 78. Vocabulary. To sail (segeln). To stroke (streicheln). To trifle, dawdle (tanbeln). To blame, to censure (tabeln). To wander (wandeln). To saddle (satteln). To row (rubern). To fan (sögeln). To smile (läckeln). To moan (winseln). To enrich (bereichern). To sumigate (räuchern). To glitter (slimmern). To dismember (zergliedern). Flame (Flamme, die). To blaze (lodern). Room (3immer, das). Star (Stern). Body (Körper). Tomb (Grab, das). In the (im, contraction of in dem). To darricade, to ram up (verrammeln). Animal (Khier, das). To torture (martern). Horse (Pseth, das). To shake (schütteln). Ship (Schiff, das). Boat, wherry (Kahn). Soon (bald). When (wann). Proud (stolz). Slave (Sclave). Wounded (verwundet). War (Krieg).

Exercise 15.

- 79. (a) 1. Ich table ben jungen Freund. 2. Warum tänbelst du? 3. Ich wandre allein. 4. Ich streichle das junge Pferd. 5. Der Schiffer segelt bald in dem * Rahn. 6. Sattelt er nicht ein junges Pferd? 7. Wann segelt das Schiff? 8. Ich ruderte in dem Kahn. 9. Iener treue Sclave sächelte den stolzen König. 10. Lächelst du? 11. Der verwundete Krieger winselte. 12. Kein Krieg bereichert den Staat. 13. Warum räuchert sie jenes hohe + Zimmer? 14. Ein heller Stern slimmert. 15. Die helle Flamme lodert. 16. Der Körper modert im Grade \(\). 17. Das junge Kind tändelt. 18. Sie zergliederten jenen Körper. 19. Der Feind verrammelte das Thor.
- (b) 1. I am-moaning. 2. Why does the animal moan? 3. Why does the young child smile? 4. When will the ship sail? 5. Does it enrich the state? 6. He blames the young physician. 7. The enemy barricaded the old strong gate. 8. Have ye fumi-

^{*} Dem is the Dative masc. in German. See 80.

⁺ Doch (high), which is declined as if it were hoh. Thus, der hohe Thurm, ein hoher Thurm; but, ber Thurm ist hoch (not hoh).

† Dative from Grap, see 81, 82.

QΛ

gated the lofty* room. 9. Thou art stroking the young horse. 10. Why do ye torture the animal? 11. I am shaking the high* tree. 12. The young daughter is fanning her (ihre) sick mother. 13. I am wandering alone. 14. I blame the young child. 15. I do not† blame the old mother. 16. I have not† blamed the young friend. 17. You never blame me (mid). 18. Has the enemy barricaded ‡ the strong old gate?

Lesson 16.

(Declension of the Article, and of Substantives.)

o	U.	SING.			PLUR.
	7 77.	f.		n.	m., f., n.
N.	ber	die	t	as i	die
G.	des	ber	t	ાલ	ber
D.	bem	ber	ŧ	oem	ben
A.	ben	die	i	oas	die.
		(Stro	ng Deci	lension.)	
8	1.	1.	2.	3.	(Weak Declen.)
SIN	G. N.	1		1	1
	G.	es or s	ŝ	es or s	en
	D.		•	e	en
	Ā.				en
PL	ur. N.	e		er	en
	G.	e		er	en
	D.	en	n	ern	en
	A.			er	en.

^{*} See note + in preceding page.

⁺ The negation not is the last in a simple tense, but precedes the past partic. in a compound: e.g. ich table—nicht; but, ich have—nicht getabelt.

[‡] The past partic. follows the Acc.

The vowel of the word is often modified in the plural. To modify a vowel is to change a, o, or u, into å, ò, ù. The diphtheng au, when modified, becomes åu. See further Rules, § 87.

Examples.

82.	(Strong	Declension.)
-----	---------	--------------

		(" "	,	
		(Son.)	(Spaniel.)	(Book.)
SING.	N.	der Sohn	ber Pubel	das Buch
	G.	des Sohn=es	des Pudel=8	des Buch=es
	D.	bem Sohn=e	dem Pudel	dem Buch=e
	A.	den Sohn	den Pudel	das Buch
PLUR.	N.	die Sohn=e	die Pudel	die Buch=er
•	G.	der Sohn=e	der Pudel	der Bůch=er
	D.	den Sohn=en	den Pudel=n	den Buch=ern
	A.	die Sohn=e	die Pudel	die Buch=er.

(Weak Declension.)

83.		SING.	PLUR.
	N.	ber Graf (the Count)	die Graf=en
	G.	des Graf=en	der Graf=en
	D.	dem Graf=en	den Graf=en
	A.	ben Graf=en	die Graf=en.

84. Obs. The dative plural always ends in n.

85. Obs. Feminine substantives are never declined in the singular, so that feminine nouns of the first strong form and of the weak form will be declined thus:

8	6. (Strong.)	SING.	(Wea <u>k</u>)
N.	die Nacht (the n	ight)	die Frau (the woman)
G.	ber Nacht	•	ber Frau `
\mathbf{D}	der Nacht		der Frau
A.	die Nacht		die Frau

PLUR.

	die Nacht=e	die Frau=en
G.	der Nåcht=e	der Frau=en
D.	den Nächt=en	den Frau=en
A.	die Nächt=e	die Frau=en.

Rules for modifying or *not* modifying the vowel* in the plural:

- I. All nouns that form their plural in er do modify the vowel: e.g. Buch, pl. Bücher (not Bucher).
- II. No noun of the weak declension modifies the vowel in plural: e.g. Graf, pl. Grafen (not Grafen).
- III. Most nouns masculine and feminine (if they form their plural in e) do modify the vowel: e.g. Sohn (m.), pl. Sohn=e; Nacht (f.), pl. Nächt=e.
 - Exception to Rule III. Nouns neuter (although with pl. e) remain mostly unmodified: e.g. Roß (n.), pl. Roße (not Röße). Most primitive nouns in el, er, en, remain unmodified.

The following lines may direct the memory:

Reflect, when to decline you try,
That the weak declension never,
But plural er doth ever
Its vowel modify.
With vowel modified one declines
Most feminines and masculines
With plural e; but neuters plural e
Unmodified should mostly be.
Nouns primitive in el, er, en,
Mostly unmodified remain.

88. Vocabulary. (1) Like Sohn: The physician (Arzt). The tree (Baum). The swan (Schwan). The storm (Sturm). The tower (Thurm). The boat (Boot, bas: pl. Bôte or Boote).

(2) Like Pubel: The eagle (Abler+). The garden (Garten, pl.

• See Remark, page 26, to 81.

⁺ When it is necessary to mention whether the plural of a word is or is not modified, (pl. mod.) or (pl. not mod.) will be added.

- mod.). The sword (Degen *). The sail (Segel, bas). The boar (Eber).
- (3) Like Buch: The man (Mann). The castle (Schloß, bas)-Herb (Kraut, bas). The nest (Nest, bas). Field (Felb, bas).
- Celebrated (berühmt). White (meiß). Wild (milb). Fresh (frisch). Green (grün). Not only . . . but also (nicht nur . . . sondern auch). Not yet (noch nicht). Two (zwei). The two (die beiden). Rare (selten). Give (geben Sie).
 - 89. Sat er nicht das Nest der alten Abler gesehen? Has he not the nest of the old eagles seen? (Has he not seen the nest, &c.)
- 90. Obs. The past participle stands at the end of an interrogative sentence.
- 91. In the *genitive* and *dative* singular and throughout the plural, an adjective following the article takes en; compare with 105, 106.

Exercise 16.

92. (a) 1. Sie erwarten die gelehrten Aerzte †. 2. Dem spisigen Degen. 3. Den jungen Sohnen des berühmten Künstlers. 4. Den starken Schlößern. 5. Jenes schone Kind beobachtete die jungen Schwäne. 6. Die weißen Segel des großen Schiffes. 7. Ein weißes Segel eines kleinen Bootes. 8. Den kleinen Boten (or Booten). 9. Diese furchtbare Nacht. 10. Die furchtbaren Nachte. 11. Nicht nur die hohen ‡ Bäume des schönen Gartens, sondern auch die frischen Kräuter der grünen Felder. 12. Ein junger Sohn des Grafen bemerkte die beiden Nester der alten Abler. 13. Die kleine Tochter hatte einen schönen weißen Schwan. 14. Die Nächte sind noch nicht sehr lang. 15. Jener alte Graf hat zwei sehr starke Schlößer.

The termination en does not admit of the characteristic n of the Dative plural: e.g. to the swords, ben Degen; and not with double n.

† If the vowel to be modified is to be printed as a capital letter, an e is printed after it: so that å is printed Me; d, De, &c.

The see note to Ex. 15 (b).

Acc. plural from flatt, 'ancient form' see 94.

(b) 1. To the younger eagles. 2. To the wild boar.

3. To the beautiful swans of the clear lake. 4. The little child observed the white swans of the young count. 5. Has he not observed * the large nest of the old eagles? 6. Has not this learned physician some very rare herbs in his (in seinen) gardens?

7. Give it to the old men. 8. To the high towers of the old strong castle. 9. Of the high trees and rare herbs of the old count's beautiful gardens †.

10. Do you see the nests of the young eagles? 11. Are not the storms very violent? 12. Are not the nights very long and cold? 13. Have not the two sons of the old count a very strong and beautiful castle? They have not only two castles, but a very beautiful garden.

Lesson 17.

93. Adjectives, like substantives, have two forms of declension: the ancient and the modern: but every adjective is declined either way, according to circumstances.

(Ancient form [gut, good].)

9	4.	S.		P.
	m.	f.	n.	m., f., n.
N.	gut=er	gut=e	gut=e8	gut=e
G.	gut=e8	gut=er	gut=es	gut=er
D.	gut=em	gut=er	gut=em	gut=en
A.	gut=en	gut=e	gut=e8	gut=e.

95. As a general rule, the ancient form is used, when the adjective stands before a substantive, without being preceded by the definite afticle (ber) or a pronoun declined after the ancient form; as, biefer (this), jener (that), &c. (106): and it is invariably used in the Nom. and Acc. with the indefinite article

[•] Verbs with the prefix be do not take the augment ge in the past part.; e.g. beobachtet (not gebeobachtet).

gin; but, in the Gen. and Dat., the modern form en is used (see 91 and 105).

96. In the masculine and neuter of the genitive singular the termination of the modern form en is almost always used instead of its proper termination es, except in the following expressions and in tein, ein, and the possessive pronouns: gutes Muthes sein, to be in good spirits; gerades Beges, 'straightway;' heutiges Zages, 'now-a-days.'

97. a) frischen (instead of frisches) Brodes, of new bread; rothen (instead of rothes) Beines, of red wine; kalten (instead of kaltes)

Baffers, of cold water.

98. The nominative and accusative cases of tin, Itin, have been given in 19. The complete declension is:

	M.	F.	N.	PL.
N.	L ein	kein=e	L ein	tein=e
G.	tein=e8	kein=er	kein=e8	kein=er
D.	tein=em	tein=er	te in=em	tein=en
A.	tein=en	tein=e	t ein	tein=e.

99. So ein (one) and the possessive pronouns mein (my), bein (thy), sein (his or its), thr (her), unser (our), ever (your), thr (their).—In unser, ever, the er belongs to the root; it is not a termination, like the er of guter.

100. Unfer, euer sometimes throw away the e of the root, sometimes the e of the termination: thus,

M.	F.	n.	PL.
N. unser	∫unsere {unsr=e	unser	unferse unfrse
G. {unfer=es unfr=es unfer=s	{unfer=er {unfr=er	unser=es unsr=es unser=s	unferser unfrser
D. {unser=em unsr=em unser=m	∫unser≠er Lunsr≠er	unser=em unsr=em unser=m	unsersen unsrsen unsersn
A. {unfer=erf unfr=en unfer=n	{unser=e {unsr=e	unser	{unfer=e {unfr=e.

101. After the genitive and dative singular of the pronouns, &c. given in 99, and after all the cases of the plural, the adjective takes the termination en*, as biefem schonen Felbe, &c. [For the nom. and acc. see 19.]

^{*} That is, declined after the modern form. See 105.

a) From this rule we must except the nom. and acc. plural of fein, after which the adjective takes c. See 107.

102. Vocabulaby*. Woollen (wollen). Handkerchief (Zuch, das). Joy (Freude, die). Circle (Areis). Dry (trocken). Bread (Brod, das: pl. Brode, loaves). Mind, temper (Gemüth, das). Cheerful (freudig). Serious (ernft). Speech (Rede, die: pl. Reden, conversation). Light-minded, wanton (leichtfinnig). Joke (Scherz). Fool (Thor, w.). Neighbour (Rachbat: gen. Rachbats: pl. Rachbatn for Rachbaten). Whole (ganz). Kind (gâtig). Parents (Aeltern or Eltern). Surely, doubtlessly (gewiß). To hear (hôren). Of (von, with dat.). With (mit, dat.). Without (ohne, acc.). Mostly (größtentheils). Than (als). Better (besser). Impostor (Betrüger). Much, adv. (schr). German (beutsch). Wine (Wein). To honour (ehren). To love (seben). Where (wo). Milk (Wild), bie). Costly (fossich). Food (Speise, bie). Loas (Berlust, ber). Duty (Psicht, bie).

Exercise 17.

103. (a) 1. Haben Sie neue Bucher? 2. Guten Weines (96). 3. Wo ist mein alter Freund? 4. Haben Sie wollene Tücher? 5. Ju + unserer Freude. 6. In unserem (or unserm) Buche. 7. In unserm Kreise. 8. Frisches Wasser mit trockenem Brode. 9. Sutes Muthes (96) sein ist besser als alter Wein und köstliche Speisen ichne ein freudiges Gemuth. 10. Ich höre lieber ernste Reden alter Manner als leichtsinnige Scherze junger Thoren. 11. Der junge Sohn unseres alten Nachbars hat ein neues Schloß. 12. Mit guten Büchern. 13. Mit wollenen Tüchern. 14. Euer altes Schloß. 15. Unserm (100) alten Schlosse. 16. Haben Sie noch Ihr altes

Till further directions are given, it is to be supposed (if no remark is made).

⁽¹⁾ that masculine substantives are declined like Sohn, except those in el, ex, en.

⁽²⁾ that the terminations el, er, en, chen, lein are declined like Subel.

⁽³⁾ that feminines are of the weak declension, like Frau.

⁽⁴⁾ that neuters are declined like Sohn if they end in a liquid; with plural er, like Buch, if they do not end in a liquid.

w means that a noun is of the weak declension; s that it is of the strong declension: pl. e, that it is declined like Sohn; pl. er, that it is declined like Sud. See 81.

^{+ &#}x27;To' with dat.

I The Germans use the plural in this instance.

- Schloß *? 17. Sie haben gewiß von meinem großen Berlufte gehort.
- (b) 1. She is fetching osome fresh water. 2. He mixes the strong wine with cold water. 3. The old father is blessing his little child. 4. Why does the old man call (fchilt+) that clever physician an impostor? 5. She is waiting in the garden. 6. Her old mother praises her much. 7. He is travelling all the day §. 8. The girl is drawing in ‡ the beautiful garden. 9. We have no (108) silver cups. 10. Has Charles no German books? 11. Where are my new books? 12. Good fresh water is better than strong wine. 13. Good and obedient children honour and love their kind parents. 14. Why has not that learned author any sincere friends? 15. He is mostly in good spirits. 16. Good friends are rare, but not impostors. 17. I am going straightway (96) home. 18. His young brother is very clever. 19. This is the duty of obedient children.

Lesson 18.

104. The modern form of an adjective takes en throughout, except in the nominative and accusative singular, which take e, with the exception of the accusative masculine, which has en.

(Madam Fam.)

		(Mouern Form.)				
1	05.	S.		Р.		
	m.	f.	n.	m., f., n.		
N.	gut=e	gut=e	gut=e	gut=en		
G.	gut=en	gut=en	gut=en	gut=en		
D.	gut=en	gut=en	gut=en	gut=en		
Α.	aut=en	aut=e	aut=e	gut=en.		

[•] When Sit (they) is used for you or thou; then Ihr (their), with capital I, is used for your, thy.

^{† (}Compare 163, 164.) ‡ (With dat.) § Say 'the whole day.' Use the accusative case.

- 106. The adjective always takes this form after the definite article ber: after biefer (this), jener (that), berfelbe (the same), jeber (every), berjenige (that = 'that there;' more emphatic than jener).
- 107. After einige (some = 'a few'), etsiche (some, indefinitely), viele (many), wenige (few), feine (no), mehrere (several), alle (all), manche (many), the adjective takes the ancient form in the nominative and accusative, the modern form in the genitive and dative.

108.

- N. etliche, viele, feine, mehrere, neue Bucher G. etlicher, vieler, feiner, mehrerer, neuen Bucher D. etlichen, vielen, feinen, mehreren, neuen Buchern A. etliche, viele, feine, mehrere, neue Bucher.
- 109. Derselbe and berjenige are compound words; the article is declined, and the selbe, jenige, appended, according to the modern form: thus,
 - 110. berselbe biefelbe dasselbe dieselben derselben desselben desselben berselben demfelben derfelben bemfelben benfelben benselben dieselbe daffelbe dieselben.
 - 111. So berjenige, biejenige, basjenige, &c.
- 112. Vocabulary. List, catalogue (Berzeichniß, bas: pl. e). English (englisch). Author (Schriftsteller). Doubt (Zweisel). Ungrateful (undankbar). Complete (vollständig). Merit (Berdienst, bas: pl. e). True, real (wahr). Cause (Urlache, bie). People (Leute, pl.). Ruin (Berberben, bas). Entertaining (unterhaltend). Shop (Laben). To preach (predigen). Chapel (Kapelle, bie). Behaviour (Betragen, bas). Instructive (unterrichtend). Folly (Thorheit, bie). Habit, custom (Gewohnheit, bie). Utter, entire (gånzlich). Truly, verily (wahrlich). Perhaps (vielleicht). Work (Mert, bas: pl. e). To keep (halten). House (Haus, bas: pl. er). Cloak (Mantel, pl. mod.). Stream (Strom).

Exercise 18.

113. (a) 1. Jeber gute Sohn achtet seine zärtlichen Aeltern. 2. Dieses ist wahrlich bas Betragen keines gehorsamen Kindes. 3. Hier ist ein Verzeichniß einiger beutschen und englischen Bucher. 4. Es ist ohne Zweisel

dasselbe unterrichtende Buch des gelehrten Schriftstellers. 5. Marum meidet ihr nicht undankbare Freunde? 6. Kann* ein gutiger Bater und eine gartliche Mutter jene undankbaren und ungehorsamen Rinder lieben? 7. Saben Sie vielleicht das vollständige Verzeichniß seiner (99) neuen beutschen Werke? 8. Jenes ist das Verdienst weniger gelehrten beutschen Schriftsteller. 9. Dieses ist ohne Aweifel die mahre Urfache des ganglichen Berberbens mancher (or vieler) jungen Leute.

(b) 1. The young count was riding (ritt) on a small white horse. 2. To the industrious pupil. 3. We keep + a young German in our large shop. 4. Do you live in this large house? 5. The folly of the old general. 6. He preached in the chapel of the count's old castle. 7. This is the habit of many old people. 8. Have you obedient sons? 9. To the industrious daughter. 10. From t the same causes. 11. To the old towers. 12. Of the modest children. 13. Of the same deep stream. 14. Of this thin reed.

15. Of thin reeds. 16. To the obedient children.

Lesson 19.

114. (a) In polysyllables the e of the genitive and dative is very commonly dropt when the last syllable is unaccented: as.

Konig (king) des Konigs dem Konig Monat (month) des Monats bem Monat.

- (b) The e may also be dropt from the gen. and dat. singular of monosyllables, especially if they have
 - (1) a long vowel or diphthong, and
 - (2) end in a liquid.

Can, see Less. 20. + Say: halten (litr. we hold). 1 Mus, with dat.

- 115. Hence (1) bes Throns, bem Thron; bes Schwans, bem Schwan; bes Seils, bem Seil; bes Stuhls, bem Stuhl, are right.
- (2) bes Stods, Betts, Arzts, Bilbs, Bergs \ are bem Stod, Bett, Arzt, Bilb, Berg \ harsh *.
- 116. Vocabulary. Throne (Thron). The chair (Stuhl). The rope (Seil, bas). Accident (Jufall, ber). Arrow (Pfeil). Herald (Herold). Steel (Stahl). Quick (finell). Unexpected (unerwartet). Soft (weich). Hard (hart). Royal (foniglich). On account of (wegen, with gen.). Made of (von . . . gemacht, or aus . . . versertigt+). Here is (hier ift). Duke (Herzog). Happy (glactich).
 - 117. Dieser Degen ist aus sehr hartem Stahl versertigt.
 This sword is of very hard steel made.
 (This sword is made of very hard steel).

Exercise 19.

- 118. (a) 1. Jenem hohen Thron des großen Königs.
 2. Sines schnellen Pfeils. 3. Hier ist der schöne Degen des alten Herzogs. 4. Sines furchtbaren Jufalls wegen.
 5. Er melbet die unerwartete Ankunft des königlichen Herolds. 6. Meldet er nicht die glückliche Ankunft des jungen Sohnes des Herzogs? 7. Dieses ist aus hartem Stahl + versertigt. 8. Des weißen Segels des kleinen Bootes. 9. Des dunnen Seils. 10. Sie erwarten noch nicht die Ankunft des Herolds.
- (b) 1. Of a long thin rope. 2. Here is the little daughter of the old duke. 3. Is the young son of the duke here? 4. Is not the duke's beautiful sword made of very hard steel? 5. To the soft clair. 6. Of the quick arrow. 7. On account of ‡ the unexpected arrival of a royal herald. 8. To the

^{*} But even here the t is sometimes dropt (as Reichs, Blicks). If the substantive is an abstract substantive or the name of a material, the t of the dat is frequently omitted when the word is used without an arrivele in a general and indefinite signification: e.g Stroas mit Fleiß thun, to do any thing on purpose; ein Ring von Golb, a gold ring; aus Jinn, of tin. Becker.

⁺ With dative of the substance a thing is made of.

^{# ,} Wegen, follows the subst.

beautiful swan. 9. The long rope of the wherry. 10. He announces the arrival of the herald. 11. To the high throne of the king. 12. Of the white sails of the little boat. 13. On account of the duke's unexpected arrival. 14. That is made of tin*.

Lesson 20.

(The auxiliary verbs konnen and durfen.)

119. INDICATIVE.

INFINITIVE.	Present.			Imperfect.
können dürfen	1. fann barf	2. kannst barfst	3. Fann darf	fonnte burfte.

The plurals of the present tense are regular, fonnen, burfen, &c.

Ronnen.

- 120. a) 1. Der Fisch kann schwimmen, the fish can swim.
 - 2. Ein gahmer kann nicht geben, a eripple cannot walk.
 - b) 1. Er kann es vergessen haben, he may have forgotten it.
 - 2. Er kann mich hintergangen haben, he may have deceived me.
 - 3. Er kann ein Betrüger sein, he may be a deceiver.
- 121. We see from (a) that fonnen, like 'can,' denotes physical possibility, the being able to do it; but we also see from (b) that it sometimes means a possibility granted by the speaker, where 'may' is used in English. Here er funn = 'it is possible that he may.'

^{*} See note + to 116.

(Durfen.)

- 122. a) 1. Karl barf spielen, Charles may (= is permitted to) play.
 - 2. Du barfst mit mir gehen, you may (= are permitted to) go with me.
 - 3. Wir burfen unsere Feinde nicht hassen, we may not (= are not permitted by the divine law to) hate our enemies.
 - b) 1. Er bürfte bir wol nicht alles gesagt haben, he may very likely not have told you all.
 - 2. Du dürftest dich wol geirrt* haben, you may very likely have made a mistake.
 - 3. Die Frage dürfte wol überflüßig sein, the question may very possibly be superfluous.
- 123. From (a) we see that burfen denotes permision conceded by the law or some person: its real meaning is 'to dare;' it implies therefore that even one who fears to do what is wrong, may dare or venture to do the thing in question.
- In (b) burfte, the conditional of burfen (a mood which will be spoken of hereafter) is used (often with the adverb wol or wohl), to denote what the speaker thinks probable or possible.
- 124. Vocabulary. Man (Mensch). Fruit (Obst, bas). To eat (essen). To drinken (trinken). To go (gehen). Hypocrite (Heuchlet). Newspaper (Zeitung, bie). Girl (Mäbchen, bas). To write (schrieben, schrieb, geschrieben). Work (Arbeit, bie). To speak (sprechen). To read (lesen). To list (heben). Weight (Gewicht, bas). Heavy (schwer). Wicked (schlech). To see (schen). To play (spielen). To hate (hassen). Useless (unnüs, nuslos). Mistake (Bersehen, bas). To be mistaken (sich irren). Truth (Wahrheit, bie). To conceal (verhehlen). Perhaps (vielleicht). To forget (vergessen).

[•] From fich irren (litr. to make-to-wander oneself =) to make mistake.

125. Er barf es lesen, wenn er Deutsch lesen kann. He may it read, if he German read can. (He may read it, if he can read German.)

> (Eng.) To be right. (Germ.) To have right. (Recht haben.)

Exercise 20.

- 126. (a) 1. Er barf ben Brief lesen. 2. Der 3 Mensch fann sprechen. 8. Darf ich ben Brief lefen? 4. Der alte Freund durfte wol ein Seuchler fein. 5. Er kann ein Beuchler sein. 6. Der Argt kann ein febr gelehrter Mann 7. Er kann die Zeitungen lesen. 8. Du barfft in sein. (into) ben Garten gehen. 9. Du barfft Dbst effen. 10. Das kleine Mådchen kann Deutsch sprechen. 11. Können Sie schreiben ? 12. Er kann sein Betragen getabelt haben. 13. Er durfte wol sein Betragen weder getadelt noch ge= lobt haben. 14. 3ch barf keinen Wein trinken. dürfte es wohl verhehlt haben. 16. Der alte Arzt dürfte wol die Wahrheit verhehlt haben. 17. Kann er die Sache nicht vielleicht vergeffen haben? 18. Kann die junge Tochter lefen? 19. Darf Karl vielleicht in ben Garten geben? 20. Es durfte wol unnut fein. 21. Darf ich bie Ankunft bes jungen Herzogs melben?
- (b) 1. Can you write? 2. Can Charles read? 3. Can the young man lift that heavy weight? 4. Cannot the young daughter console the afflicted mother? 5. The wicked * o man cannot be happy. 6. The blind o man cannot see. 7. He may have lost it. 8. May he not have lost † that letter of his is mother's? 9. You may be ‡ right. 10. I may be § mistaken. 11. The young child may be very clever.

^{*} When the adjective is substantively used, it is written with a capital letter.

t lost have perforen haben finishes the sentence in German.

[‡] See (125) the idiom.

[§] See note to 122 (b, 2).

12. The old physician may be a great impostor.
13. The little girl may now play.
14. We are not allowed to hate our enemies.
15. May * the little child play now?
16. He may * very likely have concealed the truth.
17. The old man may very likely have forgotten † it.
18. He may very likely have been mistaken ‡.
19. This work may very likely be useless.
20. Can Charles read the German letter?
21. May he read those German newspapers?
22. He may read them (fie), if he can read German (125).

Lesson 21.

(The auxiliary Verbs mogen and muffen.)

•	•		•	•••
127.	IN	DICATI	VE.	
INFINITIVE.	Present.			Imperfect.
	1.	2.	3.	1
mågen	mag	magst	mag	mochte
mussen	· muß	mußt	muß	mußte
Plu	ırals regu	ılar :	dgen, mù	sen.
	<u> </u>	•		• •

(Mogen.)

- 128. a) 1. Du magst ben Brief lesen, you may read the letter.
 - 2. Du magst bas Buch behalten, you may keep the book.
 - b) 1. Ich mag nicht tanzen, I do not like to dance.
 - 2. Er mag nicht mit uns gehen, he does not like to go with us.
 - 3. Der Träge mag nicht arbeiten, the lazy man does not like working.

^{*} Durfen, 122, a, b.

⁺ forgotten have vergeffen haben finishes the sentence in German.

[‡] See note to 122 (b, 2).

- 4. Er mag ihm (dat.) nicht widersprechen, he does not like to contradict him.
- c) 1. Er mag ein braver Mann sein, he may be a good man.
 - 2. Es mag wahr sein, it may be true.
 - 3. Es mochte* ihm schwerlich gelingen, it could hardly turn-out-well for him. (He hardly could succeed in it.)
- 129. We see from (a) that mogen expresses the speaker's permission; we see from (b), that it also denotes an inclination of the person spoken of; and from (c), that (like our 'may') it denotes a possibility granted by the speaker; i.e. what the speaker allows to be possible.

(Mussen.)

- 130. a) 1. Der Mensch muß fterben, man must die.
 - 2. In muste weinen $\begin{cases} I \text{ was obliged to cry.} \\ I \text{ could not but cry.} \\ I \text{ could not help} \\ \text{crying.} \end{cases}$
 - b) 1. Man muß nicht lügen, one must not lie.
 - 2. Du mußt aufmerksam sein, you must be attentive.
 - 3. Man muß nicht gleich verzagen, one must not immediately despair.
 - c) 1. Er muß noch nicht zurückgekehrt sein, he cannot + be returned already.
 - 2. Er muß schon abgereist sein, he must have set out already.
 - 3. Er muß fehr frank fein, he must be veryill.

^{*} The conditional of mogen. Er mochte, 'he might.'

[†] Er fann noch nicht zurück sein would state it as a real impossibility, the distance being too great, &c. Er muß noch nicht zurück sein, would express it as morally impossible, e.g. because, if he were, he would have called on me.

131. We see from (a), that muffen means physical (real) necessity; from (b) that it means moral necessity or duty (= ought); from (c), that it also denotes an inference which the speaker believes to be necessary.

Thus when I say: 'if a man have such and such symptoms, he must be very ill,' I mean that, if it is true that he has such and such symptoms, it necessarily follows, that he is very ill.

132. Vocabulary. Of use (von Rugen). Our neighbour (bet Rachste). Scholar (Schület). Hardly (schwerlich). Rich (reich). To pluck (pflückn). Lazy (saul). To remain (bleiben). Practicable (aussightbar). To fade (weiten, verweiten). All things (Alles, sing.). To perish (vergehen). To admire (bewundern). Courage (Muth). To flatter (schweicheln). Arrived (angekommen). Opinion (Meinung, bie). To chauge (andern). Else (sonft). Correct (richtig). Account (Rechnung, bie). To laugh (lachen).

133. Er muß seine Meinung geanbert haben. He must his opinion changed have. (He must have changed his opinion.)

> Es mochte bir schwerlich von Nuten sein. It might to thee hardly of use be. (It hardly could be of any use to thee.)

(Eng.) To live (= in order to live). (Germ.) For to live (um zu leben).

Exercise 21.

134. (a) 1. Du mußt die betrübte Mutter trösten.
2. Der Mensch muß essen um zu leben. 3. Ich mußte barüber * lachen. 4. Wir mussen zufrieden sein. 5. Ich mußte † jenen schlechten Sohn verachten. 6. Du mußt arbeiten. 7. Der junge Graf mag nicht reiten. 8. Mag sie nicht mit uns ‡ gehen? 9. Mag sie nicht tanzen? 10. Der alte Arzt mag ein sehr gelehrter Mann sein. 11. Die Sache mag vielleicht wahr sein. 12. Es möchte

bir * schwerlich von Nuten sein. 13. Man † muß seinen Rachsten 5 nicht hassen. 14. Der gute Schüler muß sleißig sein. 15. Er muß ‡ es noch nicht gehört haben. 16. Der junge Sohn bes reichen Grasen muß sehr geschickt sein. 17. Jener alte Kausmann muß sehr reich sein.

(b) 1. You may pluck that beautiful flower. 2. He may come. 3. The lazy oman does not like (128, b) to labour. 4. The young child does not like to remain alone. 5. The account may (128, c) be correct. 6. He may be a very good man. 7. It might perhaps be practicable. 8. The flower must fade. 9. All othings must perish. 10. I could but admire the courage of the young count. 11. We must (130, b) not flatter. 12. A good child must not only be industrious, but also obedient. 13. He cannot have arrived yet. 14. The old friend must have changed his opinion. 15. The old general must be a very brave man. 16. Do we** live to eat? 17. We eat to live, and do not live to eat.

Lesson 22.

(The auxiliary verbs follen and wollen.)

135. INFINITIVE.	INDICATIVE. Present.			Imperfect.
follen wollen	1. foll will	2. follft willft	3. foll will	follte wollte.
Ph	ural, wii	follen, r	vollen, &c	3.

^{*} Dat. of bu, 'thou.'

⁺ Man is 'one,' the French 'on,' used indefinitely for every body, people in general. It may be construed by 'we.'

[‡] To be rendered by 'he can;' see 130, c.

[§] Use neut. sing. Alles. \parallel Use the imperf. of muffen (130, 2). \parallel See note to 130, o. \parallel Use man (\equiv one or people).

(Sollen.)

- 136. a) 1. Er foll hier bleiben, he must (= is ordered to) stay here.
 - 2. Du follst nicht stehlen, thou shalt not steal.
 - b) 1. Sie fossen es schon befommen, you shall assuredly get it.
 - c) 1. Er foll frank sein, he is said to be ill.
 - 2. Sein Bruber foll tobt fein, his brother is said to be dead.
- 137. We see from (a), that follen (= shall or must) denotes an obligation imposed upon a person by the command of another; from (b), that it answers to the English future with 'shall,' and from (c), that it also denotes a statement that rests upon the assertion of others: = 'it is said;' 'people say.'
- 138. When 'must' means, that it is the speaker's will that the person should act in such or such a way, translate it by follen.
- 139. Sollte (est, te | en, et, en). This form is also the conditional; it answers to our 'should' = 'ought.' So wollte is both the imperf. and the conditional.

Ich sollte es thun, I should do it.

(Bollen.)

- 140. a) 1. Er will ein Haus bauen, he is going (or he means) to build a house.
 - 2. Bir wollen tanzen, we are going to dance.
 - b) 1. Er will in Italien gewesen sein, he says that he has been in Italy.
 - 2. Er will mich in B. gesehen haben, he says that he saw me at B.
 - 3. Die Leute wollen es in der Zeitung gelesen haben, people say that they have read it in the newspaper.

- 141. We learn from (a), that wollen expresses that the person spoken of has the *intention* of doing so and so; and from (b), that it also expresses an assertion made by the person spoken of, but implying at the same time a doubt on the part of the person who is told so.
- 142. Wollen (like our 'will') is also used to form a future, when volition on the part of the subject is to be expressed.

Thus, ich will ihm schreiben, I will write to him. But, ich werbe ihm schreiben, I shall write to him to-morrow (only foretelling the future event*).

143. Vocabulary. Such, such like (bergleichen, pl.). To see (sehen). To tell (sagen). Relation (Berwandter). Niece (Nichte). Merchant (Kausmann). Much (viet). To build (bauen). False (falsch). Intimate (genau). Noble (ebel). Family (Familie, bie). To descend (abstammen). Late, of a person deceased (verstorben). Known (gekannt). To hinder, prevent (versindern).

Exercise 22.

- 144. (a) 1. Ich follte (139) es meiben. 2. Man follte bergleichen (Sachen) meiben. 3. Ich werde die betrübte Mutter tröften. 4. Ich will es melben. 5. Er will reiten. 6. Sie wollen (140, a, 2) die betrübte Mutter sehen. 7. Ich werde es dem Vater sagen. 8. Ich will den alten Mann trössen. 9. Er will + ein Verwandter des alten Grasen sein. 10. Sie will + viel gereist sein \(\frac{1}{2} \) 11. Er will + den alten Feldherrn gekannt haben. 12. Sie will + eine Nichte des reichen Kaufmanns sein. 13. Wir sollten einen falschen Freund meiben. 14. Karl will Deutsch lesen. 15. Der alte Feldherr soll & krank sein. 16. Er soll & sehr reich sein. 17. Er durste (122, b) verhindert sein.
- (b) 1. I will comfort the old man. 2. She is said (137, c) to be very beautiful. 3. I shall avoid the

^{*} See Caution 27. Appendix LIV. + 141, b. ‡ Intransitive verbs of motion are usually conjugated with 'to be' ([sin]: not with 'to have' (haten). § 136, c.

bad oman. 4. The old general is going (140, a) to build a high wall. 5. We are going to ride. 6. Is he going to ride? 7. They are going to dance. 8. Is she going to dance or to labour? 9. The good son should avoid that false friend. 10. A good child should (139) be industrious. 11. I should avoid it. 12. He says * that he is an intimate friend of the old general. 13. She says * that she is a daughter of the late duke. 14. He says * that he descends from (von with dat.) a noble family. 15. He says * that he has been in Germany. 16. You should console the old man. 17. Are you going to write or to read? 18. He is said (137, c) to be a son of the old duke. 19. He does not like riding (128, b).

Lesson 23.

(On the ancient or strong conjugation.)

145. Verbs that are conjugated according to the strong form may be divided into three conjugations, each containing some subdivisions.

146. PAST PRESENT. IMPERFECT. PARTICIPLE.

1. α.	binden	band	gebunden	to bind
b.	brechen	brach	gebrochen	to break
c.	fliegen	flog	geflogen	to fly
d.	lesen	las	gelefen	to read
2. a.	reiten	ritt	geritten	to ride
b.	bleiben	blieb	geblieben	to remain
3. a.	fallen	fiel	gefallen	to fall
ь.	fclagen	fclug	geschlagen	to beat.

^{147.} VOCABULARY of some verbs of the ancient conjugation. (The third sing. of the Imperfect is like the first; the other terminations as given in Lesson 1).

a) To find (finben, fanb, gefunben). To succeed (gelingen, gelang, gelungen). To sing (fingen, fang, gefungen). To sink (finken, fank, gefunken). To drink (trinken, trank, getrunken).

- b) To spin (spinnen, spann, gesponnen). To begin (beginnen, begann, begonnen). To come (kommen, kam, gekommen). To take (nehmen, nahm, genommen). To speak (sprechen, sprach, gesprochen).
- c) To fight (fechten, focht, gefochten). To flee, to take to flight (fliehen, floh, geflohen). To flow (fliehen, floh, gefloffen). To lift-up (heben, hob, gehoben).
- d) To beg, to sue (bitten, bat, gebeten). To give (geben, gab, gegeben). To lie (liegen, lag, gelegen). To see (feben, fab, gefeben).
- 148. Sigen saß gesessen to sit Essen aß gegessen to eat.

A white-horse (Schimmel). Either or (entweber . . . ober). Neither . . . nor (weber . . . noch). By no means (keinesweges). Quite (ganz). Ripe (reif). Song (Lieb, bas). Well (gut, webt). Completely (völlig, gånzlich). Leave (Ubschieb, ber). At home (zu hause). Home (after a verb of motion: nach hause. Upon, on (aust, with dative, if denoting rest). Loud (laut). While, whilst (währenb).—Valiantly (tapser). Slowly (langsam). These are adjectives: the adjective without any added termination being used as an adverb.

- 149. Die Sache ist mir gelungen.

 The matter is to me succeeded.

 (I have succeeded [or been successful] in the matter.)
 - a) Wird er einen Brief geschrieben haben? Will he a letter written have? (Will he have written a letter?)

Exercise 23.

150. (a) 1. Der alte Felbherr ritt einen Schimmel. 2. Hat der reiche Kaufmann den deutschen Brief gelesen? 3. Sie haben weder die Zeitungen noch den Bericht des alten Felbherrn gelesen. 4. Wird der junge Schüler die Arbeit begonnen haben? 5. Dieser tapfere Felbherr hat den Feind völlig geschlagen. 6. Die kleine Tochter ist hier ganz allein geblieben. 7. Er muß + weder den alten Vater noch den Sohn gesehen haben. 8. Hat das kleine Kind vielleicht unreises Obst gegessen? 9. Die junge

^{*} E. g. to carry home, nach Hause tragen; but, zu Hause bleiben (to stay at home). + See note to 130, c.

Tochter sang ein beutsches Lieb. 10. Sat fie es gut* gefungen? 11. hat jener ftarte Rnabe biefes schwere Gewicht aufgehoben +? 12. Haben Sie Abschieb ge= nommen? 13. Ich habe weder die Mutter noch die junge Tochter zu Sause gefunden. 14. Ift ber Keind geflohen? 15. Der alte Konig faß auf einem hohen Thron. 16. Hat er ben ftarken Bein getrunten? 17. Er trant ein Glas Bein. 18. Der Freund bes alten Bergogs sprach immer febr laut. 19. Die fleißige Tochter faß gang allein und fpann, mahrend Rarl ein beutsches Lied fang. 20. Der Keind foll (137, c) geschlagen sein.

(b) 1. He must have read the old duke's letter. 2. Has the good mother seen her young child? 3. The women were spinning. 4. The enemy fought by no means very valiantly. 5. They fled. 6. Has not the young artist succeeded (or, been successful) in the matter? 7. The old man was drinking a glass of strong wine. 8. The broad river was flowing slowly. 9. Did the young child remain at home quite alone? 10. Have you not seen the brave general? 11. I saw the herald only. 12. They have neither eaten nor drunken. 13. The sick oman sat on a soft chair. 14. Did he not always speak very loud? 15. The young girl begged her mother to (21) comfort the old man. 16. He must have either seen the king or the old general. 17. The young daughter sang a very beautiful German song. 18. The enemy may very like 21 have taken to flight.

Lesson 24.

151. Biel Bein, much wine Sviel, wenig, are not Benig Bein, little wine declined when they denote quantity.

[•] Gut is here adjectively used, as bon in French: Cela sent bon (litr. good), instead of 'bien' (well).

+ Auf-heben (to lift up), is called a separable verb. The ge of the participle is inserted between auf and the verb. This will be more fully explained hereafter (Lesson 50).

152. Bie viel Bein? how much wine?

Bir fanden ihn lacherlich, we found (= thought) him ridiculous.

- 153. Obs. An adjective is never declined, except when it precedes a substantive.
 - 154. DAT. to me mir* | to thee bir | to him thm Acc. me mith | thee bith | him thn.
 - DAT. To himself, herself, itself; themselves acc. Himself, herself, itself; themselves

(Prepositions that always govern the accusative.)

- 155. Remember that th' accusative must come After durch, ohne, für, with gegen, wider, um.
- 156. To pray (sue or beg) for (any thing) is bitten um etwas.
- 157. Vocabulary. Through (burd). Without (ohne). For (fûr). Against (gegen, wider). About, around (um). Joy (Freude, die). Only (nur). Malicious (bochaft). Spiteful (gehäffig). Expectation (Erwarten, das). Poor (arm). Hope (hoffnung, die). Guide (Begleiter). Shameful (jhanblich). All any thing, (alles). A great deal (fehr viel). Any news (etwas Neues). Nothing at all (gar nichts). None whatever (gar keinser, se, ses). Peace (Friede, der). Soul, spirit (Seele, die+). To stand (flehen, stand, gestanden). Assistance (Beisfand, der).
 - 158. Es giebt Leute. Du irrst bich.
 It gives people. Thou makest-to-err thyself.
 (There are people.) (Thou art mistaken.)

Exercise 24.

159. (a) 1. Der alte Mann hat nur wenig Troft. 2. Es giebt Leute die sehr boshaft und gehässig sind. 3. Sie sandte (sent) mir jenen Brief ganz wider mein Erwarten. 4. Dieser alte Kaufmann ist durch jenen schändlichen Betrüger ganz arm geworden ‡. 5. Für dich

[•] The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are also used as reflexive: = myself, thyself (mid), bid).

⁺ The plural, Seelen, is sometimes metaphorically used for men, people; e. g. eble Seelen (noble-minded people).

‡ Ist geworden = has become. So, bin geworden, have become.

- thue ' ich Alles. 6. Ift jener deutsche Brief für ihn oder für mich? 7. Er ist weder für ihn noch für dich, sondern (dut) für den alten Feldherrn. 8. Um die Stadt. 9. Um den Garten. 10. Ist er für oder gegen dich? 11. Er hat sich geirrt. 12. Der alte Feldherr dürste sich wol " geirrt haben. 13. Er hat sehr viel Geld. 14. Geh' (go) ohne mich. Ohne dich? Ich gehe weder ohne dich noch ohne ihn. 15. Giedt es etwas Neues hier? Es giedt gar nichts Neues in der * Stadt. 16. Er ging (went) durch und um die ganze Stadt. 17. Durch ihn din ich glüdslich geworden †. 18. Es giedt noch ‡ eble Seelen.
- (b) 1. Has not your brother become † poor through him? 2. I shall go without him. 3. Go without the old physician! 4. Did he send (sanbte er) those German newspapers for me or for her? They are neither for thee nor for her, but & for the young German artist. 5. You are mistaken. 6. Is she not mistaken? 7. The old man has but little hope. 8. Has he but little money? 9. He went through that large town without a guide. 10. They stood round the high wall of the town. 11. Is not that letter for me? It is for your young friend. 12. Are you for him or against him? 13. I am neither for her nor against her. 14. Is this for me or for the young count? 15. Did you find him very spiteful? 16. I thought || that mother very ridiculous. 17. They are said T to have begged for ** peace. 18. They begged for assistance.

Lesson 25.

160. Verbs of the strong conjugation which have e in the root, usually change it into t in the second and

^{*} The dative.

† See note ‡ preceding page.

‡ Litr. 'it gives yet' (= 'there are still').

§ Sonbern.

§ Use 'found' in German.

Say: um (= about).

third persons singular in the present tense, and in the singular of the imperative. Thus spreaden (spread), gesprochen). Pres. tth spreade, bu sprichet, er spricht.

161. Those in the id (as firsten, gebaren), change the

ich stehle vu stiehlst er stiehlt ich gebare vu gebierst er gebiert.

- 162. The verbs gehen, lefen, sehen, geschehen, and others pointed out in the following vocabulary (167), likewise change the e of the root into it in the second and third person singular; e.g. ich gebe (I give), bu giebst*; ich lese (I read), bu liesest; ich sehe (I see), bu siehst (see particulars in List of Irr. Verbs, Appendix).
- 163. After this short i, there is sometimes thrown away from eff, even when the characteristic (or last consonant of the root) is t (thus, bu gift=ft, fchilt=ft); but not if the verb ends in ft, for then the omission of the e would bring ftft together, and produce what would be quite unpronounceable.
- 164. In the third singular the final t is itself thrown away after a t sound: thus not giltet, birst, shiltet, but gilt, birst, shilt.
- 165. This is, because one t sound cannot be prenounced after another: if the same t sound is doubled, the duplication makes no difference in the pronunciation.
 - 166. Sterben an (with dat.) of a disease.
 Sterben vor (with dat.) of hunger, cold, &c.

167. VOCABULARY. To command, order, rule (befehlen, befahl, befohlen +, with dat. of person \$\pm\$). To recommend (empfehlen, empfahl, empfohlen; bu empfiehlst, er empsiehlst). To die (sterben, starb,

^{*} Often gibft, gibt.

⁺ In verbs beginning with emp, ver, ent, ger, and be, The participle is without the qe.

[‡] Second and third pers. bu befieldly or befield; pl. regular, the same as in the following verbs, which change in the second and third person singular.

gestorben ; bu ftirbst, &c.). To be frightened or terrified (erschrecken, erschrack, erschrocken; du erschrickst. To terrify (erschrecken, erschreckt). To destroy, to spoil (verberben, verbard, verdorben; du verbirbst). To hit (tressen, trass, getrossen; du verbirbst). To hit (tressen, trass, getrossen; du vissen, verbard, genorsen; du wirst). To de worth (gelten, galt, gegolten; du gists [163]). To have great instinence with any body (viel gelten bei, with dat. of person). To read (kesen, las, geltsen; du lieses). To see (sepen; sal, gasten; du seissen; du gegeben; du gieds or gists). To happen (geschehen, geschah, geschehen; es geschieht). To sleep (schlen, schles, geschah, geschehen; es geschieht). To sleep (schlen, schles, geschah, geschen; de geschen, brack, ließ, lassen; du entläst). To break to pieces (gerbechen, brack, brocken; du gerbrickst). Strongly (start). Rascal (Schurte). What (was). When (wann). Just (gereckt). Judge (Richter). Cloudy (tribe). Wicked (bbs). Knave (Schem). Hunger (hunger). Cold (katte, bie). Stone (Stein). eridrad, eridroden; bu eridridft). To terrify (eridreden, eridredte, Schelm). Hunger (hunger). Cold (Adte, bie). Stone (Stein). Sky (Himmel). Indeed (awar). Wound (Bunde, bie). Beneficent (mohithatig).

168. (Enq.)To call any body a knave. (Germ.) To scold any body a knave. (Remanden einen Schelm ichalten.)

169. To be terrified at, &c., erschreden vor, with dat.

(But.)

- 170. The principal words for 'but' are: aher, fondern, and allein. Of these fondern can only follow a negative; e.g. nicht reich, fondern arm (not rich, but poor); allein is used, where we might use 'only,' 'but for all that,' 'but yet:' that is to say, when we demy what might seem likely to follow from what was asserted or granted: thus, 'he is rich, but for all that [he is not charitable, as you might suppose, but] miserly,' er ift febr reich, allein er ift geizig*.
- 171. The following lines may help the pupil to remember this:

Sondern for 'but' is never the right word Unless a negative preceded it, Illein denies what might have been inferred, 'But for all that' its meaning, or 'but yet.'

^{*} Sonbern implies separation, like sunder in a-sunder, to sunder. Mulein means 'only;' and in English, too, 'only' is often used in this way: 'He wished to hurt me, only (= but) he could not.'

Exercise 25.

- 172. (a) 1. Ich habe nicht geschlafen, sondern gearbeitet. 2. Er darf den Brief lesen, allein er kann nicht. 3. Der Knade kann lesen, aber nicht schreiben. 4. Der Himmel ist nicht trübe, sondern hell. 5. Er warf einen Stein nach * mir, aber er traf mich nicht. 6. Er ist von einem Pseile getroffen. 7. Was besiehlst du? 8. Er soll an dem Fieder gestorben sein. 9. Warum erschrickst du vor dem gerechten Richter? 10. Er empsiehlt mir diese Sache. 11. Der gelehrte Arzt hat mir die Sache stark empsohlen. 12. Er traf ihn mit einem Steine. 13. Warum schiltst du mich einen Betrüger? 14. Das arme Kind stirbt vor Hunger. 15. Der tapsere Feldherr starb an einer Wunde. 16. Er ist an einer Wunde gestorben. 17. Er ist reich, allein er giebt den Armen nichts.
- (b) 1. He hit him with an arrow. 2. He is very saving, but (for all that) he is not rich †. 3. He is not rich but poor. 4. He is rich, indeed, but not beneficent. 5. Why do you call ‡ me an impostor? 6. The poor child is dying of hunger. 7. A poor child has died of hunger. 8. That hypocrite may § probably have great influence with the judge. 9. He is very industrious, but not learned. 10. The young child was frightened. 11. Why do you frighten the little daughter? 12. He has great influence with the old duke. 13. What do you command? 14. When did the brave general die?

^{*} At: with dative.

^{+ &#}x27;As you might presume' is understood here (see note to 170).

Tuse second pers. sing. of schelten. With burfen, 122, b.

Lesson 26.

(Laffen *.)

173. The second singular of verbs of the strong conjugation, whose vowels are capable of modification, is modified.

174. Thus: bu fallft, schlafft, laufft, ftogeft, &c. But erloschen makes erlischet, erlischt.

(Laffen [bu lagt, &c.]; ließ, gelaffen.)

- 175. a) 1. Einen Bogel fliegen lassen, to let a bird fly.
 - 2. Laß ihn gehen, let him go.
 - b) 1. Er läßt ben Hund tanzen, he makes the dog dance.
 - 2. Sie lassen von London Uhren kommen, they get watches brought from London (or have them brought, &c.).
 - 3. Er läßt ihn seine Starke fühlen, he makes him seel his strength.
- 176. We see from (a) that laffen (like our 'let') expresses permission; and from (b), that it also denotes the causing a thing to be done; the getting it (or having it) done.
 - 177. c) 1. Sie haben ihm nichts gelassen, they have left him nothing.
 - 2. Das lift sich hören, that is something [in acceding to what a person proposes].
 - d) 1. Das läßt schön, that looks pretty.
 - 2. Das läßt nicht für meinen Stand, that does not suit my rank [perhaps for läßt nicht gut, does not look well for it].

[•] Irr. v. see Appendix.

Observe, besides, the following simple idioms:

Das läßt fich leicht benken, (litr. that lets itself easily think) that one may easily imagine (= no wonder).

Bu (or zur) Wer laffen, (litr. to let to-the vein) to bleed.

Das läßt fich nicht mit Gewißheit sagen, that cannot be stated with any certainty.

Etwas laut werben lassen, (to let any thing become loud) to let any thing out (= to divulge it).

Jemand grußen laffen, (litr. to let [= to cause] any body to be saluted) to send any body one's compliments.

178. We here see (from c), that lassen is also a transitive verb = 'to leave;' and (d) an intransitive one, meaning 'to look,' 'have an appearance.'

179. Vocabulary. Poem (Gebicht, bas). By heart (auswenbig). To catch (fangen, fing, gefangen). To hold (halten, hielt, gehalten). In one's hand (in ber dant). Bird (Bogel). To push (ftosen, sies, gestossen). To fall (fallen, sies, gesallen). Some goods (Guter). Station, position (Stant). Anger (Born). To seel (fühlen). Watch (Uhr, bie). From town (aus ber Statt). Unjust (ungerecht). Enraged or in a rage with (aufgebracht gegen).

180. (Eng.) To get or have a house built. (Germ.) Litr. to let (= to cause a house to be built).

(Ein Saus bauen laffen.)

Exercise 26.

181. (a) 1. Das kleine Rind läßt ben Bogel fliegen. 2. Sat fie das junge Rind allein gelaffen ? 3. Der reiche Kaufmann läßt viele Waaren aus London kommen. 4. Sat er ben Brief bes jungen Grafen hier gelaffen? 5. Jenes läßt gar nicht schon. 6. Der alte Relbherr läßt ben ungerechten Richter feinen Born fühlen. 7. Sie haben mir nicht einen* treuen Freund adassen. 8. Lag bas

^{*} Not one (= a single).

undankbare Kind gehen. 9. Er läßt euch grüßen. 10. Sie läßt und grüßen. 11. Der Arzt läßt den Kranken zur Aber. 12. Er ist aufgebracht gegen ihn. 13. Das läßt sich benken.

(b) 1. I will make the industrious scholar learn this beautiful poem by heart. 2. He got his new book bound. 3. He had a new house built*. 4. They sent for a teacher from town. 5. The rich merchant sent for some goods from B. 6. The young girl let the bird fly away. 7. She is catching a bird. 8. He let the watch fall. 9. That will not suit my station. 10. The young girl is-holding a beautiful flower in her hand. 11. The son of the old gardener was catching a young bird. 12. He sends you his compliments. 13. He is in a great rage with you. 14. No wonder †. 15. He ordered the patient to be bled ‡.

Lesson 27.

182.

- 1. Ich beobachtete ihn, als er arbeitete.
- 2. 3ch fang, mabrent er arbeitete.
- 3. Ich mied ihn, meil er stolz war.
- 4. 3d mied ihn, nachbem er zu viel gesprochen batte.
- 5. Ich bemerkte ihn, ehe er es erwartete.
- 1. I observed him, as he worked (or was working).
- 2. I sang, whilst he worked (or was working).
- 3. I avoided him, because he was proud.
- 4. I avoided him, after he had spoken too much.
- 5. I noticed him, before he expected it.

^{*} With machen lassen, preceded by sich (i. a. for-himself).

⁺ Render it by , sich benten lassen.'

- 183. We see here that the past tense is used to denote the relative time of two connected actions. It is both an historical past tense, and strictly an imperfect, denoting a continued action or state.
 - a) Observe that in the subordinate sentences beginning with the, well, nachtem, &c., the verb stands last. In the compound tenses, the participle precedes the verb (e. g. because he come was), and a predicative adjective precedes to be, &c. (e. g. because he proud was).
- 184. If the subordinate sentence (with weil, ehe, &c.) precedes the principal one, the verb of the principal sentence stands before its nominative case:

Als er arbeitete, bemerkten wir ihn.

185. If the conjunction is well, the principal sentence usually takes so, when it stands last.

Weil er folz war, so mieben wir ihn.

186. Radhem (after), ehe (before), als (as; of time, when), weil (because); are used just as the corresponding conjunctions in English. 187.

- 1. Bas für Better haben wir heute?
 (Eng.) What for weather have we to-day?
 (What sort of weather have we to-day?)
- 2. Bas für einen Fisch hast bu gefangen?
 (Eng.) What for a fish hast thou taken?
 (What sort of fish have you caught? or,
 What sort of fish is this which you have caught?)
- 188. Obs. In was für einer the einer is declined. Before the names of materials, and also before plural substantives, was für stands without einer.
- 189. The Dative Commodi is often used, in German, instead of the preposition for in English; e. g. Semanden Arznei verschreiben, to prescribe medicine for some one.
- 190. Vocabulary. Strange (seltsam). Arrangement (Einrichtung, bie). To make (treffen, traf, getroffen: literally 'to hit' [upon]). To please (belieben). Another (noch einer). Stupid (bumm). Ignorant (unwissen). Any body (Jemanb). To be of a different opinion

(anberer Meinung sein). To reap, to gather (ernten). Fruit (Frucht, bie; pl. e). Nightingale (Nachtigall, bie). Tree (Baum). To blossom (blühen). Some (einige). Usually (gewöhnlich). The other (ber Anbere). Lightning (Blis). Thunder (Donner). Task, lesson (Ausgabe, bie). School (Schule, bie). Ready (sertig). Into (in, with acc., if denoting motion). Right (recht). Medicine, physic (Arzenci, or Arznei, bie). To prescribe (verschreiben). To notice (bemerken). Dispatch (Bericht, ber). Tea (Thee). Every thing (Alles). To laugh (lachen). Husbandman (Candmann). To plough (psschu). To scatter (streuen). Seed (Saamen, ber). To tease (necken).

Exercise 27.

- 191. (a) 1. Bas für ein Heuchler er ist! 2. Bas für seltsame Leute das 27 sind! 3. Was für Einrichtungen haben Sie getroffen 26? 4. Was für ein Thier ist das? 5. Wir verachteten ihn, weil er nicht nur unwissend, sondern auch stolz war. 6. Durfen wir Jemand verachten, weil er anderer Meinung ift als wir? 7. Man erntete Die Fruchte, als fie reif maren. 8. Die Nachtigall fang, als bie Baume blubeten. 9. Die Mutter arbeitete, mahrend das Rind schlief. 10. Einige Schuler ichrieben, mabrend die andern lafen. 11. Man fieht gewöhnlich ben Blit, ehe man ben Donner bort. 12. Man bort ben Donner, nachbem man ben Blit gesehen hat. 13. Die Sache ist bem Urzte aut gelungen. 14. Rarl kann feine beutsche Aufgabe lesen, während seine kleine Schwester in der Schule ift. 15. Nachdem bu mit beiner englischen Aufgabe fertig bift 52, kannst bu in ben Garten geben. 16. Ift es recht ihn gu meiben, weil er arm ift? 17. Bas fur Arzenei bat ber alte Argt beinem franken Bruber verschrieben? 18. Man muß keinen Menschen verachten, weil er arm ift.
- (b) 1. We did not notice the count's son before he spoke. 2. I was there when the old general was writing the dispatch. 3. What a strange woman she is! 4. What a beautiful day this is! 5. Charles read the letters whilst I wrote. 6. Whilst I am writing the letter, you may read the dispatch of the old general. 7. Charles played, whilst his sister was accompanying the young child. 8. He told every

othing, after he had drunk a glass of wine. 9. He laughed, after he had read the letter of the old count. 10. The husbandman ploughs the field, before he scatters the seed. 11. Before he sends off the dispatch, he must* write the letter. 12. I avoided him, because he was not only ignorant but also a hypocrite. 13. We must neither despise nor avoid any body † because he is poor. 14. You must work, whilst you are in school.

Lesson 28.

192. Many instransitive verbs are in German conjugated with feta (to be), though the corresponding English verbs are conjugated with 'hava.'

Such are in general those that denote,

- 1) a change from one state to another,
- 2) motion from one place to another.

193. Thus, from bersten (to burst; which denotes a change of state), es ist geborsten (not es hat geborsten): es war geborsten (not es hatte geborsten).

From stegen (to fly; denoting motion): er ist ge= flogen; er war geslogen. From gehen (to go): er ist gegangen, er war gegangen.

194. In English (1) many verbs belonging to these classes are still conjugated with to be: (2) others are conjugated sometimes with to be; sometimes with to hore: (3) and others, that now regularly take have, were formerly conjugated with to be.

195.

- a) 1. Die Lerche hatte gefungen, als ich spaziren ging.
 - 2. Der Bogel war bavon geflogen, als ich mich ihm nabern wollte.
 - 3. Der Hund hatte gebiffen, weil der Knabe ihn geneckt hatte.

^{* (}Obs. 184.)

[†] The German idiom here is, Nitmant (no body), consequently a double negation, since weber — noth is used.

- 4. Das Gras war gewachfen, nachbem es geregnet hatte.
- 5. Der Feind war gefloben, ehe man baran bachte.
- 6. Der Bater war abgereifet, ebe bie Sonne auf= ging.

1. The lark had sung, when I went out a

walking.

- The bird had flown away, when I was going to draw new it [basen, therefrom = thence].
- 3. The dog had bitten, because the boy had teased him.
- 4. The grass had grown, after it had rained.
- 5. The enemy had taken to flight, before any one thought about it [baron, thereon = about it].
- 6. The father had set out, before the sun arose.
- b) Sobalb der Frühling herannahet, kommen die Jugvögel wieder zu uns, as soon as the spring approaches, the migratory-birds come to us again.

196. Vocabulary. To go (gehen, ging, gegangen). To go a-walking; to go out walking; to take a walk (spaziren or spazieren gehen). To sing (singen, song, gesungen). To sing (singen, song, gesungen). To draw near (sich nähen: preperly, 'to near anseelf; with dat of person). It rains (es regnet). To grow (machien, muchs, gewachsen). To think (benten, bachte, gebacht). Since, of time (seithem +). To go into the country (auss [= aus bas] land gehen). To feed (suttern = give food to). Ice (Sis, bas). To break, of ios (bersten, borst, geborsten). The last time (bas lette Mal). To drive, to go in a earriage (saven, suhe, gesahen: gehen, when opposed to salven, = to walk). Presumptuous (aumaßens). Towa (Stabt, bie). To prepare (bereiten). To recover [from illness] (genesen, genas, genesen), genesen, genesen).

197. To think about or of any thing; benten an (with ace.).

198. (Eng.) He does not like to be. (Germ.) He not willingly is. (Er ift nicht gern.)

^{*} This is an infinitive mood: the Latin spatiari.
† The order of words after seithers will be as in 183.

(Eng.) He is liked.—He is not liked.
(Germ.) One has him willingly.—One has him not willingly.
(Man hat ihn gern.—Man hat ihn nicht gern.)

Exercise 28.

- 199. (a) 1. War Ihr Herr Bruber* geftern gur Stadt gegangen, ebe Sie es erwarteten? 2. Der junge Bogel flog ihm aus ber Hand", als er ihn futterte. 3. Mein Lebrer war ichon aufs Land gegangen, als ich ihn holen wollte. 4. Ift Ihre Frau Mutter zu Sause? 5. Nein; fie ist mit meinem kleinen Bruber spaziren gegangen. 6. Sind Ihre Baume im Garten gewachsen, feitbem ich Sie das lette Mal gesehen? 7. Das dunne Gis ist ge= borften, weil zu viele Leute barauf + ftanben. 8. Das kleine Madchen ift febr gewachsen. 9. Er geht nie ohne feine beiben jungen Tochter spaziren, weil er nicht gern allein ift. 10. Sind Sie gefahren ober gegangen, nachbem Sie Ihren Bruber gesehen batten? 11. Weil ber junge Deutsche keinesweges weber gelehrt, noch unterhaltend mar, so mieden wir ihn. 12. Man hat ihn nicht gern, weil er anmaßend ift. 13. 3ch habe ihn nicht gefeben, feitbem er von seiner Krankbeit genesen ift.
- (b) 1. He is not liked, because he is ignorant. 2. He is not liked, because he is not only ignorant, but also proud. 3. He is liked, because he is not only entertaining, but also learned. 4. The messenger was gone, before any-one thought about it (195, 5). 5. He had prepared the field, before he scattered the seed. 6. He had seen the lightning, before he heard the thunder. 7. He heard the

+ Darauf (thereon =) on it.

^{*} When a person is not very intimate with another, he says, 'the gentleman your father, brother,' &c.; 'madam your mother,' &c.: Ihr herr Bruber, Ihre Frau Mutter. So in French, Monsieur votre père, Madame votre mère.

thunder, soon after he had seen the lightning (i)*. 8. As soon as he saw the lightning he heard the thunder. 9. As soon as he had written the letter he folded it up. 10. He had recovered from his illness, before we thought about it (195, 5). 11. We had blamed him, because he was idle.

Lesson 29. (Subjunctive Mood.)

200. Modern form †. Ancient form ‡.

PRES. Er rede Er spreche

PERF. Er habe geredet Er habe gesprochen

Fur. Er werbe reben Er werbe fprechen

Fur.- \ Er werbe gerebet Er werbe gesprochen haben. PERF. \ haben

201. In the conjugation the full terminations are retained throughout, but the third singular is e not et.

202. It is obvious that the present subjunctive is often identical in form with the present indicative (except in the third singular). But for the sake of distinction, the e is retained in the second singular and plural, where it would be dropt in the present indicative.

lobe lobst lobt loben lobt loben lobet loben.

203. The third singular of the present subjunctive is used to supply the imperative with a third person: er gehe, let him go.

The (i) means that the order of the sentence is to be inverted; that is, that the accessory clause is to precede the principal one. Begin the sentence with 'Soon after ke kad,' &c.

+ See Lesson 13 (55, note).

‡ See Lesson 23.

- 204. The third plural is also used imperatively for the second singular (as we have before seen). The Sie is then printed with a capital letter, and follows the verb. Seben Sie mir, give me.
- 205. Damit, 'in order that,' governs the subjunctive.
 - a) Er spricht laut, bamit ein jeber ihn verstehe, he speaks loud, that every body may hear (or understand) him.
 - b) Ich nehme Arznei, damit ich genese, I take medicine (in order) that I may recover.

206. Vocabulary: A student (Student; pl. en). To travel (reisen). Pleasure (Rerguügen), das). To instruct (belehren; belehren sich = improve himself; i. e. in learning). To play (spielen). To refresh, recruit (etholen). To make-better, to correct (besern). To manure, to dung (büngen). Field (Act; pl. er and mod.). To bear (tragen, trug, getragen). To punish (strasen). Bookshop (Buchhandlung, die). Map (Candiarte, die). To take (nehmen, nahm, genommen). To understand (verstehen, verstanden). To study (studiren):

Exercise 29.

- 207. (a) 1. Der Student reiset, damit er ein Vergnügen habe. 2. Der Schüler liest*, damit er sich belehre. 3. Der Bater liest die Zeitungen, damit er sich erhole. 4. Das gute Kind betet, damit die Mutter wieder genese. 5. Ich tadle ihn, damit er sich bessere. 6. Man ist †, damit man lebe. 7. Man dungt den Acker, damit er Früchte trage. 8. Ich strase ihn, um 30 ihn zu bessern (or damit er sich bessere). 9. Ich will in die Buchhandlung gehen, um 30 mir eine Landkarte zu kaufen. 10. Du kannst nichts lernen, weil du nicht ausmerksam bist. 11. Sie läst 31 die Kinder zu sich kommen.
- (b) 1. I punish him, that he may correct himself.
 2. The patient takes medicine, that he may recover.
 3. The pupil is attentive, that he may learn much.

^{*} Third person of lesen.

⁺ Third person of effen.

4. You must speak loud, oin order that every body may hear you. 5. We* study, that we may learn.
6. The boy is said 2 to have improved himself.
7. He pretends 2 that he has improved himself.
8. Let him die. 9. The poor child is said 2 to have died of hunger. 10. She is attentive, that she may understand.

Lesson 30.

- 208. After a verb of wishing, commanding ‡, advising, permitting, heping, fearing, &c., a verb in a dependent sentence beginning with baß (that) stands in the subjunctive mood.
 - a) Ich wünsche, daß er hier bleibe, I wish that he may remain here.
 - b) Sch haffe, 3 haf er hier bleibe, $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} I \text{ hope} \\ I \text{ fear} \end{array} \right\}$ that he will remain here.
 - c) Er will (erlaubt, gestattet, rath, wünscht) nicht, daß du nach Paris gehest, he does not choose (permit, allow, advise, wish) that you should go to Paris.
- 209. (a) But if the subject \S of the subordinate sentence is either the *subject* or the *object* of the principal sentence, these verbs are not usually followed by a relative clause with $\mathfrak{da}\mathfrak{g}$, but by the infinitive with \mathfrak{gu} . (b) This infinitive with \mathfrak{gu} is also used when no particular person is meant, so that the

the Verbs of permitting, commanding, forbidding, advising, take a dative of the person. The thing permitted, &c., will be in the acc.

^{*} Say: 'one studies, that one may learn.'
+ Translate by 'oorrested kimself.'

[§] The subject is the nominative case; the object, the accusative after the verb; or (if the verb governs the gen. or dat.) the gen. or dat. after the verb.

nominative of the relative clause with baß would be the indefinite man *.

- 210. a) 1. Er fürchtet (baß er ben Prozeß verliere

 =) ben Prozeß zu verlieren, he is afraid
 of losing the law-suit.
 - 2. Ich befahl ihm (baß er schweige =) zu schweigen, I ordered him to hold his tongue.
 - b) Es ift nothig (bas man wache =) zu wachen, it is necessary to watch.

211. In German, verbs of the ancient form (or that once followed that form) are the roots from which other words are derived.—The termination en does not belong to the root.

The simplest derivative substantives are either the root of the verb itself, or the root with its vowel altered, nearly as in the imperfect and

past participle.

212. Examples of some primary derivatives of the ancient form. Primary derivatives, as a general rule, are masculine.

(Radical vowel unaltered, especially (Radical vowel altered.) from verbs whose radical vowel is not changed in the participle.) 1. {werf=en Wurf to throw s fall=en to fall Fall a throw a fall schlagsen to strike 2. {brech=en Bruch to break a blow; a clap (of Schlag a breach thunder) 3. {reit=en Ritt to ride fana=en to catch a ride a catch Kang 4. | fpring-en to spring to hold halt=en a hold **Eprung** a spring (leap) Salt 5. {schreit=en to steppreis=en to praise Preis praise.

To take a ride (einen Ritt thun or maden). To take a step (einen Schritt thun).

213. VOCABULARY. [See note ‡, p. 63.] Soon (balb). To command (gebieten, gebot, geboten, with dat.). To wish (wünschen). To hope (hoffen). To forbid (verbieten, verbot, verboten, with dat.). To permit (erlauben, with dat. of the person). To advise (rathen, rieth, gerathen, with dat.). To allow (gestatten, with dat. of the person). To lose (verlieren, verlor, verloren). Cause = lawsuit

^{*} So in English, we should not say 'I begged him that he would come,' but 'I begged him to come.'—'I hope that I shall succeed,' and 'I hope to succeed,' are nearly equally common in English.

(Prozeß, ber). A single (einzig). Rest (Aube, bie). To take his departure (abreisen). First (erste). Paris (Paris, bas). To call upon (besuchen). Sun (Sonne, bie). False (falsch).

214. (Eng.) To take a ride, step, leap.
(Germ.) To do a ride, step, leap (thun: also, einen Ritt machen).

(Eng.) To get or have a fall. (Germ.) To do a fall (einen Fall thun).

Exercise 30. .

- 215. (a) 1. Ich rieth ihm, hier zu bleiben. 2. Ich rathe dir, dem Rathe des treuen Freundes zu folgen *.

 3. Ich hoffe, daß er und bald sehe. 4. Ich hoffe, dich bald zu sehen. 5. Ich fürchte, daß er den Prozeß verliere.

 6. Ich habe ihm gerathen, einen kleinen Ritt zu machen.

 7. Haben Sie noch nicht den ersten Schritt zethan? 8. Ich habe ihm verdoten, einen einzigen Schritt zu thun. 9. Er rath nicht, daß du nach Paris gehest. 10. Er soll 32 sich keine Ruhe gestatten. 11. Lebt der Mensch, damit er nur esse, trinke, und schlafe? 12. Ich bitte dich, dieses zu thun. 13. Er besahl (daß man wache =) zu wachen.

 14. Ich wünsche, daß er bald genese. 15. Wenn er doch noch lebte!
- (b) 1. I wish you would soon call-upon me. 2. I wish you may succeed in it. 3. I advised him to take a short ride. 4. I advise you to speak sincerely. 5. I hope that he may arrive before sunset. 6. I advised him to learn much by-heart. 7. I wish that he may come soon. 8. I hope that he may get³¹ the house built. 9. I advised him to take no step whatever⁵³. 10. I wish that he may not be mistaken (158). 11. I advised him to take his departure soon. 12. After he had seen the lightning, he heard the thunder. 13. He advised him to avoid † the danger.

^{*} Folgen and gehorden govern the dative. + To be rendered by a relative clause with has (see 209, 210) with subjunctive.

14. I wish that he may accompany the aged friend.
15. He permitted him to accompany * the young son of the old count. 16. He ordered him to follow * the sincere friend, but to avoid * the false one.

Lesson 31.

216. The subjunctive is also used in a (subordinate) sentence beginning with daß ('that') after such expressions as, It is time, it is expedient, necessary, proper, right, fair, important, &c., and after the opposite adjectives, It is inexpedient, &c.

```
es ist wichtia,
                         it is important
es ift nuglich,
                         it is expedient
es ift rathfame
                         it is advisable
                                                baß en space, that he
es ift gerathen: +7 )
es ift unnug,
                                                      should save.
                         it is of no use
                         it is necessary
es ift nothig,
                                                   Obs. The verb is to
es ift beffer,
                         it is better
                                                stand last, if there are
es ift gerecht,
                         it is just
                                                dependent cases, &c.
es ift unmahrscheinlich, it is improbable
                                                (baß er
                                                              XII
es ift Beit,
                         it is time
                                                bleibe).
es shift or ziemt sign } it is becoming
es paßt,
es liegt baran,
                         it is of consequence.
```

217. (Eng.) It does not become you to do this.
(Gorm.) It fits not for you to do this.
(Cs [dict: fid nicht für: bidy, biefes zu thun.)

218. (Eng.) It is of no consequence.

(Germ.) There lies nothing thereon: or there has lain nothing thereon (Es liegt nights baran: or Es ist nights baran gelegen). So, It is of great consequence, Es liegt viel baran, or Es ist viel baran gelegen.

219. Vocabular. Fair, just (bilig). Good = salutary (heilfam). To endure, to bear (ertragen, ertrug, ertragen). To marry (heirathen). This very day, before to-morrow (noch heute). Labour, industry (Fleiß): A thousand times (tausendmal). To enjoy (genießen, genof, genofien). Sunset (Sonnemuntergang, der). Sunrise (Sonnemuntsgang, der). Sunrise (Sonnemuntsgang, der). To surrender (übergeben, gab, geben). To accomplish (vollenden). Work (Werk, das; Arbeit, die). To leave (verlaffen, ließ, lassen).

^{*} See note + in preceding page.

⁺ Really a participle, from rathen (to advise).

Baercine 31.

- 220. (a) 1. Es ist nothig, daß man wache. 2. Es ist dem Kranken heilsam, (daß er reise =) zu reisen. 3. Es ist erlaubt, daß man sich nach ober Arbeit erhole. 4. Es ist Zeit, daß er nach Hause gehe. 5. Es ist mir sehr viel daran gelegen (218), daß er zu * rechter (or zur rechten) Zeit komme. 6. Es ist tausendmal bester zu sterben, als dies zu ertragen. 7. Es liegt mir daran, daß er noch heute den Brief schreibe. 8. Es ist wichtig, daß er den Bewicht des alten Feldherrn noch heute erhalte. 9. Es ist billig, daß der Fleißige, die Fruchte seines Fleißes genieße. 10. Es liegt daran, daß er noch heute das Werk vollende.
- (b) 1. It is time, that your (bu) should go + home. 2. It is necessary, that he should read the letter. 3. It is not necessary, that she should drive home. 4. It is time, that he should drive home. 5. It is of great consequence, that he should not leave the town but ‡ stay. 6. He is not liked ", because he is not sincere. 7. It is time, that he should correct himself. 8. It is advisable, that he should leave the town before sunset. 9. It is of importance, that he should receive the dispatch before sunrise. 10. It is improbable that the old general should surrender the town.

Lesson 32. (Imperative Mood.)

- 221. The imperative has the same root as the present indicative.
- 222. The termination of the second person singular of the imperative is e: spring-e.
- 223. In verbs of the strong conjugation δ , the second person singular of the imperative (a) follows

^{*} Litr. 'to-the' (= at the right time).

⁺ Should and the following core in italies to be rendered by the subjunctive mood.

[‡] See note 170. §: Compare with Less. 23 (146—148).

the second and third singular of the present *, when they change the radical vowel + (b), but not when they modify it.

a) b)	fprechen lefen werfen backen ftoben	fprach las warf but fties	gesprochen gelesen geworfen gebacken gestoßen	2nd sing. (Ind. bu sprichst, &c. bu liesest, &c. bu wirst, &c. bu båckt, &c. bu ståbsest, &c.		Imperative. (speak) (read) (throw) (bake) (push).
	feebess	leceb	Selephen	I am leahelet once	feabe	(Paner).

224. Vocabulary. To get out of the way; retire (weichen, wich, gewichen). Sentimental (empfinbsam). To pardon, forgive (verzeichen, verzeich, verzeichen: but prez. ich verzeiche, du verzeiches de. It governs the dat. of the person). Octogenarian, eighty years old (achtzigiährig). Old-man (Greis). To greet (grüßen). Farewell (teke wohl: that is, 'live well or happily'). To find oneself = to be [of health] (befinden sich). Or else, else (sonst). For the last time (zum ‡ letten Male). Manners (Gitten, f.). Evil (Bos, das). To keep, preserve (bewahren). To love (lieben). World (Welt, die). Vain (eitel). To despair (verzagen). Chain (Kette, die; pl. n). Any thing but (nichts weniger als, lite. nothing less than, &c.).

(Eng.) To think any body absurd; or, look upon him as absurd. (Germ.) To hold any body for absurd (halten—für).

225. The article ber is also a relative pronoun, 'who,' 'which',' but then the genitive is beffen, beren, beffen; pl. beren; the dative plural, benen. The verb is to be placed at the end of the relative sentence.

226. a) Der Mann, beffen sohn gestorben ist.

Die Frau, beren sohn gestorben ist.

The man
The woman whose son is dead.

Die Lehrer, beren Grundsätze gut sind, teachers whose principles are good.

Exercise 32.

227. (a) 1. Gehorche, sonst & straf ich bich. 2. Geh mit mir, sonst bleibe ich auch zu Hause. 3. Sprich laut. 4. Weiche von mir. 5. Rede. 6. Meibe das Bose. 7. Bewahre ein gutes Gewissen. 8. Ich spielte, als ich

Compare Less. 25 (160—162).

⁺ It then drops the final e: fprid, lies, wirf.

^{‡ =} ju bem letten Male.

[§] Observe that after foult the nom, case follows the verb.

- klein war. 9. Ich befand mich besser, ehe ich diese Arznei genommen hatte. 10. Bitte, daß man dir verzeihe. 11. Glaube nicht, daß er dir dies je verzeihe. 12. Halte ihn nicht für empsindsam: er ist nichts weniger als daß. 13. Lebe wohl! 14. Grüße alle Freunde: ich gehe jeht einen achtzigjährigen Greis, der mich sehr liebt, zum letzen Male zu sehen. 15. Es sind Manner, deren Grundsäte ich achte. 16. Es ist ein Mann, dessen Sitten man tadeln muß.
- (b) 1. Forgive* the poor man. 2. He may very likely 11 have forgiven him. 3. Take the medicine, in order that you may recover. 4. Do not hate your neighbour 5. 5. Comfort your aged father, or you are a bad son. 6. Flatter not: it is allowed to nobody to flatter. 7. Wait in the garden. 8. Do not despair. 9. Do not think 14 him a flatterer: he is not that in the least 12. It. Fly the vain pleasures of this world. 11. Do not throw the stone. 12. Speak louder. 13. Give it to your young brother. 14. Read slowly. 15. Do not call the old man a knave. 16. Break your chains, O slave! 17. Carry the young child home †.

Lesson 33.

- 228. For the imperative of the third person, the Germans use either the present subjunctive, or the auxiliary verb foll.
 - a) Er fomme [qu'il vienne] } let him come.
 b) Er soll fommen
- 229. For the plural of the first person, the German language exactly agrees with the English.

Lasset (or laßt) uns gehen, let us go.

+ See note to 148.

^{*} The pupil is here referred to the list of irr. verbs (Appendix XXIII.), to find whether these verbs change the radical vowel in the imperat. and 2nd and 3rd person sing., or merely modify it.

- 230. Observe, the second plural is here used because the speaker is addressing others. As the third person may be used for the second, ,2cffcn Sie une gehen' may also be used.
- 281. When a command is to be expressed very positively, the indicative is used.

Dugehft fogleich, go directly.

- 232. To express a submissive request, the subjunctives of wollen and magen are used; which are wolle (wolleft, wolle, &c.); magen (mageft, mage, &c.).
 - a) Du wollest mir verzeihen, pray pardon me.
 - b) Mogen Sie meiner gebenken, may you romember me.
 - 233. (Eng.) Pray pardon me; have the goodness to pardon me, &c. (Germ.) [That] yes would pardon me (bu wallest mir versgeihen).
- 234. Many primary substantives prefix the augment, gc. They are mostly nester; but the following

Gebraud, Genuß, Geruch, Geftant, Gewinn, Gefdmack, Gefang, Gebant', are masculine.

- 235. VOCABULARY. Use, custom (Gebrauch). Enjoyment (Genuß). Smell (Geruch). Song (Gesang). Taste *, flavour (Geschmack). Bad odour (Gestant). Gain, profit (Gewinn). Thought (Gebante).
 - 236. To make use of, Sebraudy maden von, with dat.
 - To make profit by, Gewinn machen an, with dat.
 - To have no taste for teinen Geschmad finben an, with dat.
- 237. The personal pronoun is often repeated in German after a relative; e.g. ith, ber ith (litr. I who I, for I who); so, bu, ber bu (theu who); Shr, bie Shr (ye who), &c.
- 238. Vocabulany. 'Farther (weitet). 'To 'baptize (taufen). Of any thing (an etwas). Immediately, directly (logicid). To doubt (zweifeln). Immortality (Unfterbliditeit, bit). 'To haste (eilen). Over-hastily (voreilig). Bold (tühn; used also for 'boldly'). To judge, decide, pronounce sentence (uttheilen). Church (Riene, bit).

^{*} Also of a critical taste, &c.

To make haste (sich * beeilen). Thing (Ding, bas; Sache, bie). Merchandize, goods (Waare, bie). To act (handeln). Sincerity (Austrichtigkeit, bie). Hanna (a proper name).

259. To judge of any thing, or any person, is urtheilen von, with dat.: to pronounce sentence upon it, is urtheilen uber, with acc.

Exercise 33.

- 240. (a) 1. Er komme sogleich. 2. Du wollest nicht zu voreilig handeln. 3. Er soll nicht voreilig über Dinge urtheilen. 4. Lasset und gute Gebräuche beobachten. 5. Hanna, du bleibst. 6. Ihr sollt nicht weiter gehen. 7. Wirf den Stein nicht: sonst strafe ich dich. 8. Der Genuß des Wassers ist für Anaben besser ich der Genuß des Wassers ist für Anaben besser in der Kirche zu tausen. 10. Er soll \(\frac{1}{2} \) vielen Gewinn an seiner Waare gehabt haben. 11. Karl, du lernst \(\frac{1}{2} \) beime deutsche Ausgabe sogleich. 12. Sie wollen || mir verzeihen. 13. Mögen Sie nicht an meiner Auswichtigkeit zweiseln. 14. Zweiselt nicht an der Unsterblichkeit der Seele. 15. Urtheile nicht voreilig über Menschen und Sachen. 16. Du, der du immer tabelst, urtheile nicht voreilig. 17. Er sindet keinen Geschmad an der Russt.
- (b) 1. Do not judge over-hastily. 2. Pray ³⁶ do not decide, before you have heard all. 3. Charles, come directly. 4. This fruit has lost its flavour. 5. He is said ³² to have much taste for music ¶. 6. It may very likely ³¹ have lost its flavour. 7. He may very likely have no taste for astronomy ³. 8. Let us not judge over-hastily. 9. He is a very learned man, but he judges over-hastily. 10. He may probably (122, b) have judged over-hastily. 11. That was a bold thought. 12. You who (237) judge so boldly**, do not

^{*} Litr. to hasten oneself (see note to 154).

censure over-hastily. 13. Hannah, make haste: do you hear *? 14. He is not liked **, because he pronounces sentence so over-hastily upon men and things. 15. Do not judge ill + of your neighbour. 16. Pray pardon us. 17. May you not (232) doubt of my sincerity.

Lesson 34.

(On the Conditional.)

241. The present of the conditional is formed, in the ancient form of conjugation, by adding ϵ to the imperfect, the vowel (if capable of *modification*) being *modified*.

Infin. Imperf. Partiop. Conditional. 242. fpringen gesprungen fprånge (spring) fprang fliegen log geflogen flöge (fly) brechen brach aebrochen brådie (break) tråge tragen trug getragen (bear, carry).

243. In the weak conjugations the present conditional is identical in form with the imperfect.

INFINITIVE. reben Imperf.

Particp. gerebet

Conditional. rebete.

244.

Conditional.

Modern Form. Ancient Form.
PRESENT. ich rebete ‡ fpråche.
(I should or would speak.)

† Obs. The third persons singular are without t:-3. språchen foracie spracheft språche fpråchet språchen würbe würdeft wurde murben mürbet mürben håtte håtteft håtte båtten håttet båtten.

It will be seen that id, fpråde and id, wurde spreden are both, I would speak. It need hardly be remarked, that I should do it = I ought to do it, must never be translated by the conditional. The present conditionals of sein, baten, are ware, batte.

^{*} To be rendered after the example of 231; the intensive clause, Do you hear? is implied in German by the peculiar structure of the sentence.

⁺ übel.

PLUPERF. ich håtte gerebet ich håtte gesprochen (I should or would have spoken)

Future. ich würde reben ich würde sprechen (I would speak)

FUTURE- ich würde gerebet haben ich würde gesprochen haben perf. (I would have spoken)

- 245. (a) Wishes uttered with an implied notion of their possible fulfilment are expressed in the subjunctive. (b) Wishes uttered without any implied notion of their possible fulfilment (whether such fulfilment be really possible or not) are expressed in the conditional.
 - 246. a) Lang lebe ber Konig! Long live the king!
 - b) Lebte boch (nur*) mein Bruber noch! Were my brother but still alive!
 - c) 1. Daß er boch språche! O that he would but speak!
 - 2. D baß boch mein Bater kame! O that my father would come!
 - 3. Benn sich nur bei Marcus Neigung zur Beschäftigung mit Buchern zeigte, if there did but appear in Marcus any inclination to employ himself with books.
- 247. 'As if' is translated, (a) by als ob with the subjunctive, if it is implied that the supposition is possible or probable; (b) by als ob or als wenn with the conditional, if it is not to be implied that the thing is probable. In other words, the conditional expresses a mere supposition; the subjunctive, a possibility that the supposition may be the true one.

Colloquially the indicative is also used in many cases.

248. a) Er fieht aus, als ob er frant sei, he looks as if he were sick (= and very possibly he is).

^{*} When is 'if;' nut, 'only:' both is 'yet,' or 'but,' referring to something said before.

- b) 1. Er fieht aus, als ob er frant mare,
 - 2. Er fieht aus, als wenn er frank ware, he looks as if he were sick (i.e. as he would look if he were sick).

These sentences are elliptical: er fieht fo aus, daß es scheint, als ob er trant fei, he looks so, that it appears as if he were sick.—Er fieht aus, als er aussehe murbe, wenn er trant wate, he looks as he would look if he were sick.

(Eng.) To put to flight.

(Germ.) To atrike into the flight (in die Flucht ichlagen).

249. Primary substantives of the middle form: these, heaides changing the radical vowel, assume one of the terminations t, b (te, be), ft, or e. Of these, t, b, ft mostly follow a final vowel or liquid: e a final mute; gt, bt become dt, ft, respectively; the middle mutes (g, b) being changed into the corresponding aspirates d), f.

1. { tennen	te know	5. Saet	te sew
Kunb=e	knowledge		seed: also seed-time
2 { jagen	to hunt	6. fliegen	to fly
Sag=b	the chase		Might
3. Egonnen	to grant	7. Echlagen	to strike
Gun=ft	favour		battle
4. { sprechen	to speak	8. {graben	to dig out
Sprach=e	language	Grufst	pit, grave.

- 250. Substantives of the middle form are (as a general rule) feminine, and of the weak declension; of course, therefore, not modified in the plural. Ot those in the preceding vocabulary, his Gruft has pl. e.
- 251. Vocabulary. To think (benken, bachte, gebacht). As [=like] (wie). Queen (Königin). To live (leven). Out of [one's] mind (unfunig). Pius (fromm). Probably (vermuthitich). Battle (Echlacht, bie). Thief (Dieb). To insimuate oneself into any body's good graces (sic) in Zemandes [any body's] Gunst einschleichen). To slip or steal in (einschleichen, schick, geschlichen). To lose (verlieren, verlor, verloren). To win (gewinnen, gewann, gewonnen). Astronomy (die Stentunde = star knowledge). Geography (die Erdunde = earthknowledge). To go a hunting (auf die Jagd gehen). To be out hunting (auf der Jagd sein or seyn). To return from hunting (von der Jagd sommen).

Semand, G. Zemandes, D. Zemanden [or Zemand], A. Zesmanden [or Zemand].

Exercise 34.

252. (a) 1. Dachten boch Alle wie bu und ich. 2. Bare er boch aufrichtig! 3. Daß er boch meinem Rathe folgete!

- 4. Bufte er boch Miles. 5. Lang lebe die Konigin! 6. Daß ber gute Konig noch lebte! 7. Der Knabe liegt ba, als wenn er schliefe *. 8. Er liegt ba, als ob er schlafe t. 9. Es war, als ob er unfinnig mare. 10. Der Beuchler spricht, als ob er fromm mare. 11. Der alte Arzt geht, als ob er lahm fei t. 12. Er foll & auf ber Jago fein. 13. Er foll & fich in die Gunft bes alten Ronias eingeschlichen haben. 14. Saben fie bie Feinbe noch nicht in die Flucht geschlagen?
- (b) 1. He looks as if he were a hypocrite. 2. O that he were but sincere! 3. I should like to go a hunting. 4. The old general is said to have lost the battle: the old citizen asserts | that he has read it in the newspapers. 5. He is returned from hunting. 6. O that our general had put the enemy to flight! 7. Would that he had won the battle! 8. He has neither won the battle nor lost oit. 9. It is of great consequence \(\text{that we should ** win this battle.} \) 10. No thief has stolen in. 11. I am afraid that that hypocrite may insinuate himself into the king's good graces.

Lesson 35.

253. The present tenses conditional of fein and haben are ware, hatte.

(Conditional sentences.)

- 254. 1. Wenn er etwas hat, so ++ giebt er, if he has any thing he gives ---.
 - 2. Wenn er etwas haben follte, so wird er geben, if he should have any thing he will give -.

^{*} Implying the notion of 'he may or may not' (see 247, b).

^{**} Implying the notion of probability.

† Probably he is lame.

| See 140, b, 141, b; also note to Dif. of Id. (Appendix XLIV.)

| With , baran liegen (218).

** With conditional.

⁺⁺ So = 'on that supposition.'

- 3. Wenn er etwas hatte { so gabe er —, or fo wurde er geben —, } if he had any thing he would give —.
- 4. Wenn er etwas gehabt håtte, so wurde er gegeben haben —, if he had had any thing he would have given —.
- (Eng.) If he had any thing he would give it. (Germ.) If he should have any thing, so (= on that supposition) he would give it, wenn er etwas hatte so gabe er's * [or wurde er's geben].

Another turn may be taken, by way of inversion, that is to say, by leaving out menn (if), and placing the verb before its nominative, e.g. hatte er (if he had); mußte er (if he knew), &c.; hatte er gehabt, gemußt, &c. (if he had had, known, &c.).

- 255. Obs. That when the consequent clause has 'would,' the conditional must also be used in the preceding clause.
- 256. Instead of als ob er (sie, &c.) frant sei, als ob or wenn er (sie, &c.) frant ware (247, 248), we also find als sei er frant, als ware er frant: where, observe, the order is that of a question.
- 257. Vocabulary. To invite (ciniaben +). To starve (barben). To cover (bebecken). Road (Lanbstraße, die). To shovel (schauseln). To burn (trans. verbrannen, verbrannte, verbrannt). Spectacles (Brille, die). To waste, consume [of time] (vergeuden). To allow of (gestatten). Something (etwas). Snow (Schnee, der). To dread (schuen). Certainly (gewiß, sicher). In good health (gesund [litr. sound]). Eye (Auge, das). Truth (Wahrheit, die). Out of [one's] mind (unstinig). Devout (fromm).

258. Even if, wenn—auch. Even if he, wenn er auch. (Observe the position of the pronoun.)

Exercise 35.

259. (a) 1. Wenn ich ihn einladete, so kame er (or Er kame, wenn ich ihn einladete). 2. Er kommt nie, wenn ich ihn einlade. 3. Wenn ich gesund ware, so ware ich

^{* =} er e6: e6, it.

⁺ A separable verb.

aufrieden. 4. Wenn bu fleißig bist, so wirst bu nicht barben. 5. Wenn ich ihn gefehen hatte, so wurde ich ihm etwas gegeben haben. 6. Er murbe nicht gludlich fein, wenn er auch reich mare. 7. Der Schnee murbe die gange Landstraße bebeckt haben, wenn nicht geschaufelt mare *. 8. Wenn du den auten Richter siehst, so sage ihm die Wahrheit. 9. Wenn ich ihn sehen sollte, so will ich die Mahrheit sagen. 10. Wenn Kinder fich verbrannt haben, so scheuen sie bas Feuer. 11. Es war, als ware er un= finnia. 12. Er fieht aus, als ware er ein Beuchler. 13. Lies + nicht unnute Bucher, bamit bu feine Zeit veraeudest.

(b) 1. If I saw him ! I would salute him. I had a horse I would take a ride. 3. If he were here I would call upon him. 4. If he had asked me I should have told him the truth. 5. I would not hinder you from going-out-hunting if the weather would & but || allow of it. 6. May (123) I go out hunting? 7. Certainly, if the weather does but | allow of oit. 8. He speaks as if he were devout.

Let the pupil now make himself familiar with such of the irr. verbs as either change or modify their radical vowel, pointed out by numerals at the foot of the list (Appendix XXIII.).]

Lesson 36.

- 260. a) Ich befehle, daß er weiche, I order that he should retire.
 - b) Ich befahl, daß er wiche, I ordered that he should retire.
 - c) 1. Er fagt, er habe, he says that he has.
 - 2. Er fagt, er sei, he says that he is.

^{*} A German idiom, impersonal with passive form.

⁺ See 223, b, the foot note. ‡ Insert here , [0' in German (254, 3).

[|] Rur: to follow the wenn (if). § Conditional of wollen. E 3

- d) 1. Er sagte, er hatte, he said that he had.
 - 2. Er fagte, er mare, he said that he was.
- 261. The imperfect and pluperfect of the indicative are usually followed, in dependent sentences, by the present conditional (usually called the imperfect subjunctive).
- 262. We see from the examples (d, 1, 2), that the imperfect of the indicative is followed by the present conditional, even when the assertion quoted was by the original maker of it expressed in the present tense. This (as far as the tense is concerned) is in accordance with the English idiom: if a person said to me this morning, 'my father is ill,' I relate it thus: 'he told me this morning that my father was ill.' It is not, however, uncommon in German to find the present subjunctive after the imperfect of the indicative: Er fagte, er habe, er fei*, &c.
- 263. In the following forms of the present conditional, the vowel is not the same as that of the imperfect +.
 - 264. Remomber halfe, and verbarbe,
 Burbe, wurfe, wurbe, ftarbe;
 Befohle, borfte, and begonne,
 Empfohle, golte, and besonne,
 Schölte, sponne, ftohle, and gerönne:
 Gewinnen, schwimmen a or o may take:
 So heben hube may or hobe make,
 And stehen too may a for û forsake.

265. Vocabulary. To help (helfen, half, geholfen; Cond. hülfe). To destroy (verberben, verbarb, verborben; Cond. verbürbe). To become (werben, wurde or ward, geworden; Cond. würbe). To throw (werfen, warf, geworfen; Cond. würfe). To die sterben, starb, gestorben; Cond. stürbe). To command, order (besehlen, beseschlen; Cond. beschle). To burst (bersten, bark, geborsten; Cond. börste). To begin (beginnen, begann, begonnen; Cond. begönne).

^{*} The German practice is so unsettled, that Dr. Becker, in the English edition of his grammar, makes the subjunctive the rule, the conditional the exception. But in his latest German edition, he makes the conditional the rule, the subjunctive the exception.

† See the form of the imperfect in list of irregular cerbs (Appendix).

To recommend (empfehten, supfahl, empfohlen; Cond. empfohle). To be worth (gelten, galt, gegolten; Cond. gölte). To recollect (sich besinnen, besonnen; Cond. besonne). To scoold (schetten, schotten, schotten). To spin (spinnen, spann, gesponnen; Cond. spönne). To collect one's thoughts, or to compose oneself (besinnen [sich], besonnen; Cond. besonnen). To steal (sichlen, stabl, gestohlen; Cond. stöhle). To curdle, congeal (gerinnen, gerann, geronnen; Cond. gerönne). Loss (Berlust, ber). To lose (verlieren, bersonnen). Lite (keben, bas). To be a pity (Schabe sein). Excellent (vortresssilla). Time (3eit, bie). To be as well (eben sout sein). Flax (slacks, ber). Money (Getb, bas). Even if (selbst worn). Conscience (Gewissen, bas). Desirable (wünschenswerth). Delay (Berzug, ber). Exercise, task (Ausgabe, bie). Country (Lanb, Staterlanb, bas).

To lift up, heben, hob, gehoben; Cond. hobe or hube. To stand, stehen, stand, gestanden; Cond. stande or stunde.

To win, gewinnen, gewann, gewonnen; Cond. gewonne or (soldom)

To swim schwimmen, schwamm, geschwommen; Cond. schwomme or schwamme.

266. (Eng.) To take one's leave.
(Germ.) To recommend oneself (empfehlen fich).

267. (Eng.) It is all over with him.
(Germ.) It has happened about him (es ift um ihn geschehen).

Exercise 36.

268. Deserve aller, e, es, loses its termination, when it immediately precedes a pronoun or article. Bon all bem. All mein Gelb.

269. (a) 1. Was für' ein Verlust würde es sein, wenn er stürbe! 2. Bas hülse mir all sein Reichthum, wenn ich tein gutes Gewissen hatte! 3. Selbst wenn er ihn empsihle, so würde ich ihm doch nicht helsen. 4. Wenn das Eis dörste, so wäre es um uns geschehen. 5. Es wäre Schade, wenn etwas davon verdürbe. 6. Ich wünschte, er empsöhle sich. 7. Es wäre wünschenswerth, daß er ihn bei dem alten Herzoge empsöhle ". 8. Es wäre mir lieb [or würde mir lieb sein], wenn Karl seine deutsche Aufgabe ohne Verzug begönne. 9. Sie dat die Tochter, daß sie den Flachs spönne [or den Flachs zu spinnen]. 10. Er dat ihn, daß er sich besönne. 11. Wenn er hier wäre, so

hulfe er mir. 12. Es ift zu munichen, baß er bie Schlacht gewonne.

(b) 1. If he were to die, it would be a great loss for the country. 2. Many lives would be lost*, if the ice were to break. 3. It would be a pity, if this excellent fruit, which he has sent us, were to spoil. 4. It is time that he should begin his work. 5. It is to be wished 39, that he should recommend the young artist. 6. He said that his brother had great influence with 15) the old duke. 7. He requested us to give his young brother a letter of recommendation to the German count. 8. It is necessary that she should spin half this † flax. 9. I should not wonder ‡ if she called 37 him an impostor. 10. She feared that the milk might curdle. 11. He sent him to help his poor relation §.

Lesson 37.

270. Merben, 'to become,' 'to grow.'

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Conditional.
Present	werbe	werbe	würbe
Imperfect Perfect	wurbe or warb bin geworben	(none) sei geworben	(none) wåre geworben
PLUPERFECT	war geworben	(none)	(none)
FUTURE	werbe werben werbe geworben	werbe werben	würbe werben I würbe geworben
PECT .	fein	sein	fein
INDICATIVE P	resent werde wirst	wirb werben	werbet werben.

^{*} Say: Biele Menschen wurden ums (= um bas) Leben kommen (literally: many people would come about [= to a question of] life).

[†] Say: 'the half of this flax ' (bie Balfte).

‡ Say, litr.: 'it should not wonder me' (es sollte mich nicht wundern).

[§] Say: 'in order that he might help' (bamit er, &c.).

"Barb is rather antiquated: wurde is more common," (Becker.)

- 271. (Eng.) Thou wilt come to want, unless thou savest.
 - (Germ.) Thou wilt come to want, it be then that thou save, or, thou wilt come to want, thou save then.
- 272. { Du wirst barben, es sei benn, baß bu sparest. · or, —, bu sparest benn.

273. Vocabulary. Autumn (Herbst, ber). Disagreeable (unangenehm). Rain (Regen, ber). Green (grün). Resolution (Entschus, ber). Old man (Alte, ber; Mann understood). Difficult (schwer). To bring an action against any body, to summon (vertlagen). To pay (bezahlen). Temperately (mäßig). Master, preceptor (Lehrer, ber). To counsel, to advise (rathen). To be of opinion, to think (meinen). To deceive (täuschen). To correct, to improve (besser). To know or be initiated in any thing (um etwas wissen). Secret (Geheimnis, bas; pl. e). To prosper (gut gehen, literally, to go well, with dat. of person*). Wicked (böse). To fall ill of (trant merben an, with dat, or ertranten). Improbable (unwahrscheinlich). Idle (träge). Prudent (verstänbig, tiug). Return (Mückelt, bie). Weak (schwach).

Exercise 37.

- 274. (a) 1. Der Herbst wird nun kalt und unangenehm.
 2. Nach dem Regen ist alles wieder grun geworden. 3. Der Entschluß wurde dem armen Alten schwer. 4. Ich versklage dich, es sei denn, daß du bezahlest. 5. Du wirst krank werden, du lebest denn mäßig. 6. Deine Lehrer können dich nicht loden, es sei denn, daß du sleißiger werdest. 7. Ich rathe dir, sleißiger zu werden. 8. Er meinte, es wäre gut; (or, es sei gut). 9. Ich hosste es allein sich sand mich getäuscht. 10. Ich lasse | dich nicht, du segnest mich denn. 11. Er sagt, er wisse um das Geheimniß. 12. Es ist unwahrscheinlich, daß dieser dose Mensch je tugendhaft werde. 13. Er ist verständig und mäßig geworden.
 - (b) 1. He fell ill of 11) a fever. 2. It is improbable,

[•] To be preceded by £6 (it), e.g. It goes well to him (i.e. he prospers or is prosperous).

⁺ Comparat. 'more industrious.'
\$ (170.)
\$ (178, c.)

that an idle pupil should become an industrious man.

3. He is become my friend. 4. What is become of 11) your young brother? 5. It is said* that he has fallen ill. 6. If he were † but become prudent!

7. You will become learned, unless you grow idle.

8. He has become very proud since his return from town ‡. 9. She has grown very prudent since the death of her old mother. 10. Has she not grown very old and weak, since we saw her last §? 11. I should praise you, indeed, if you would but improve ||.

12. He has grown very tall, since I saw ¶ him last §.

13. Has not her little child become very disobedient?

14. If your brother does not soon become more industrious, **I must pumish him. 15. We do not grow wise, unless we take †† pains to become so ‡‡.

(Additional Exercises on the Conditional Mood.)

275. VOCABULARY. By it = by means of it (babei). Arm (Arm). To dislocate (verrenten). Thankful (bantbar). Indeed (mayrlich). Nothing less (nichts weniger). Just now (gerade jest). Gold, adj. (golden). Wrong (unsteht). In a manner (auf eine Beise). Instead (anstatt). There (bort). Prize (Preis, ber). Any thing (streat, itgend etwas).

276. (a) 1. Er sprach, als ob er besöhle. 2. Wenn er fleißig ware, so wirde ich ihn loben. 3. Sende der armen Frau den Flachs, damit sie ihn spinne. 4. Ich würde es thun, wenn ich etwas dabei gewönne. 5. Wir fürchteten, daß das dünne Eis börste. 6. Es ware zu wünschen 30, daß jener hohe Baum hier stände (or stünde). 7. Wenn er jenes schwere Gewicht habe (or hübe), so würde er sich gewiß den Arm 1 verrenken. 8. Wenn ich all dieses Geld gewönne (or gewänne), so (254) würde ich mir ein neues

^{*} Man sagt, daß, &c.; or, er soll, with infin. (see 137, c.)
+ Either with , daß....boch, '&c., or , wate....boch, '&c., or
, wenn....boch, '&c. (246.)

[#] Say: from the town. § Say: sulest or bas leste Mal. || Say: 'improve yourself,' using second pers. sing. in German. || Use past part. in German. || ** Insert here , fo' (254).

⁺⁺ Say: give to ourselves pains (uns Muhe geben). ## Say: to become it (es zu werben).

Haus bauen lassen*. 9. Er that als ob er sich empfohle. 10. Ich fürchtete wahrlich, daß der Schurke es stöhle †. 11. Es ist wichtig ‡, daß er den Brief zu schreiben beginne. 12. Es ist besser, daß er sich erst besinne. 13. Es wäre nothig, daß er ihn ben meinem Freunde empfohle. 14. Es wäre unnüt, daß man ihn deswegen schölte. 15. Es schickt ‡ sich nicht, daß man es verderbe. 16. Der alte Mann hatte gehosst, daß sie sich besinne §. 17. Die Mutter besahl der jungen Tochter, daß sie den Flachs spinne (or spönne ||). 18. Sie hatte ihm verdoten ¶, daß er das Gewicht hobe (or hübe).

(b) 1. It would-be (ware) a great loss, if he wereto-die ** just now. 2. I fear the ice may break. 3. I feared he would-dislocate ++ his " arm, if he were-to-lift ** that heavy weight. 4. Were you not afraid (or Did you not fear) that he might-steal ** your money? 5. The old duke ordered that they should-help ** the poor child !!. 6. It would-be wrong, if one were to call 37 ** him a knave. 7. He spoke, as if he was commanding ** it. 8. It is of consequence (218), that you should give him a letter of recommendation " to your father. 9. It would-be (mare) a pity, if this beautiful fruit && were to spoil **. 10. It is time that she should spin || the flax. 11. I wished that he might win ** the prize. 12. It was improbable, that he should make ¶¶ any gain by it. 13. It would be better, that you should-throw ** it out of the window. 14. It was of great importance that the old general might win || || the battle. 15. He feared that he might not win the prize.

|| See the note to 262.

^{*} Translate by 'have-built' (see 180).

⁺ See note to 262.

‡ See the expressions, 216.

[§] Or befonne. ¶ Berbieten governs dat.

^{**} Use the present conditional (see 255. 261, 262).

⁺⁺ Use the present subjunctive (262, the note).

^{##} Say: 'that one (man) should help.' Helfen governs the dat.

^{§§} Objt, bas; is used in sing. only.

We the present subjunctive or conditional (see 262 and note).

E 6

Lesson 38.

The verb sein, 'to be,' throughout (in the	first person).
--	----------------

277. Indicative.	`Subjunctive.	Conditional.
Pres. bin	fei [or fen]	måre
Imp. war	(none)	(none)
Perf. bin gewesen	fei gewesen	mare gewesen
PLUP. mar gemesen	(none)	(none)
Fur. werbe fein	werbe fein	warbe fein
Fur. \ merbe gewesen PERF. \ fein	werbe gewesen sein	wurde gewesen sein
PART. PRESENT	feienb P.	art. gewesen.

- 278. a) Ich glaubte, er ware frank, I thought (or believed) he was ill.
 - b) Er will es nicht glauben, daß sein Bruder gestorben ist, he will not believe that his brother is dead.
 - c) 1. Du fagst, bu seiest gesund, you say that you are in good health.
 - 2. Er erzählt, der Baum blühe, he tells (me) the tree is in blossom.
 - 3. Er berichtet, er sei in Paris gewesen, he relates that he has been in Paris.
 - d) 1. Er felbst hat gesagt, bas er gesebst hat, he himself has said that he has been in fault.
 - 2. Er seibst hat gestanden, daß er gesehlt hat, he himself has confessed that he has been in fault.
- 279. We see from (a), (b), that glauben is sometimes followed by the subjunctive, sometimes by the indicative. It is followed by the indicative when the thing believed or not believed is to be represented as certainly true. The word 'believe' is then emphatic: thus in the sentence in (b), the meaning is, that 'though his brother is dead, yet (strange to say) he will not believe it.' When glauben is followed by the subjunctive it is less emphatic, and may generally be translated by 'think.'

280. In the exercises, the believe', say', confess', &c. (with accent over them, to mark them as emphatic), are to be followed by the indicative; and observe, that the predicate (whether participle, adjective, or acc. case, &c.) precedes the verb, when the baß is expressed. When baß is omitted (after glauben, fagen, &c.), the sentence takes the regular order of a principal sentence:

Thus, 1. { Er glaubt, baß er frant fei. Er glaubt, er fei frant.

- 2. Er glaubt, baß er gefehlt habe. Er glaubt, er habe gefehlt.
- 281. With verbs of knowing, discovering, seeing, acknowledging, being convinced, showing, &c., the subordinate clause of the sentence with baß is usually in the indicative.
- 282. When a sentence with baß is the subject (nom. case), it is represented by cs (as in English by 'it'); and the verb is in the indicative when a fact is stated. The subjunctive is used when a wish, fear, &c., is to be expressed. The English will here be a nearly certain guide *.
- 283. Vocabulary. To relate (berichten). To tell (etzählen). To believe (glauben). To know (wissen, mutte, gewußt; pres. ich weiß, bu weißt, er weiß, wir wissen, &c.). To discover (entecten). To acknowledge (erkennen, erkannte, erkannt; irreg.). To be convinced (überzeugt sein; from überzeugen, to convince). To consess (gestehen, gestanden). To show (zeigen). Essential (wesentlich). Manly (männtich). Selish (eigenntigh). Unselish, disinterested (uneigennüßig). Period (Zeitraum, der). Behind (hinter, with dat. if denoting rest). Troubled, gloomy (trübe). Dark (sinster).

284. (Eng.) To keep your word. (Gorm.) To hold word (Wort halten).

Exercise 38.

285. (a) 1. Ich rathe euch, ihr Schuler, daß ihr fleißig seid. 2. Das Erste und Wesentliche + ist, daß eine Nation mannlich, uneigennütig, edel sei (or sen). 3. Eine lange für und beibe trübe Zeit liegt hinter mir, als ware sie ein kurzer sinsterer Zeitraum. 4. Er hat gestanden, daß er

Thus we say: 'it is certain that he did it' (indic.); 'it is fair that he should do it' (subj.); 'it is desirable that he should do it,' &c. + The adjectives are here used (in the singular number, neuter geuder) as substantives. 'Thing' may be supposed understood.

- eigennützig ift. 5. Ich weiß, daß er krank gewesen ist. 6. Ich weiß, daß du Wort halten wirst. 7. Ich habe es ihm gesagt, damit er es wisse. 8. Er hat gestanden, daß er daß Geheimniß entdeckt* (hat). 9. Sei mäßig in deiner Jugend, damit du gesund seiest im [= in dem] Alter. 10. Er glaubt, ich habe daß Geheimniß entdeckt. 11. Er gesteht, daß er es gethan hat.
- (b) 1. I know that he was ill. 2. I know that the old physician was unselfish. 3. I know that he has been ill. 4. I knew that he had been ill. 5. He believes 'that he is unselfish. 6. He will not believe', that the artist is unselfish. 7. I will tell it him, in order that he may know. 8. I know that he is a good son. 9. He has shown that he is unselfish. 10. He acts as if he were selfish. 11. The gentleman whom you saw here, has confessed' that he discovered the secret*. 12. The essential 'thing is, that a youth should be modest and sincere. 13. It is certain that he has been ill. 14. He does not like riding. 15. If he were here he would tell 'it all.

Lesson 39. 286. Baben, 'to have.' Indicative. Subjunctive. Conditional. er habe Pres. er bat er båtte IMP. er hatte (none) (none) Perf. er hat gehabt er habe gehabt er håtte gehabt Plup. er hatte gehabt (none) (none) First Fur. er wird haben er werde haben er würde haben Fur. Ler wird gehabt er werbe gehabt er würde gehabt Perf. | haben haben baben Imperative, habe

Infin. Pres. haben
Perf. gehabt haben
PART. Pres. habenb
Porf. gehabt.

287. 1. Er hat einen schweren Kampf zu be=

fiehen, he has a hard battle to fight (properly: to maintain).

^{*} After certain conjunctions, such as baß, &c., the auxiliary may also be dropped in the indicative.

2. Ich habe zu fludiren, arbeiten, &c., I have to study, work, &c.

288. (Eng.) Will you have the goodness (kindness), &c.?

(Germ.) Will you well (= perhaps) have the goodness, &c.? Wollen sie wol* (or wohl) bie Gite haben, &c.?

Bas have id, bavon? Er hat es gut.
What have I of it? He has it good (= well).
(What good will it do me?) (He lives well.)

289. Vocabulary. Just (or quite) as much (eben so viel). Avaricious (geizig). For a long time (seit lange). Unfavourable (unganstig). To like any body (Ismanden sieb haben). Illness (Kranstett, bie). To request [= command] (haben wollen+). Report (Bericht, ber). Message (Botschaft, bie). Kindness (Güte, bie). Knowledge (Kennteniß, bie). Concerning it (barüber, lite. thereover). In a different way (anders). Detestable (abschulid). To make a proposal (einen Borschlag machen). Heretosore, before (zuvor). Many things (Bieles, lite. much). Pen (Feber, bie). To-morrow morning (morgen früh). Marriage (History, bie). Family (Kamilie, bie). Certainly (sinderslich, gewiß). Property (Bermdgen). To lend (leiten, lieh, geliehen). Permission (Erlaudniß, bie). The first, second (ber erste, zweite). Volume (Band, ber). Full-moon (Bollmond, ber). Within a day or two (in einigen Tagen). Date [day of the month] (Datum, bas; also ber miewiesses (Psete-rennen, bas). Christmas (Beihnacht, bie). Aunt (Zanste). To call [= name] (nennen, nannte, genannt).

Exercise 39.

290. (a) 1. Er wurde eben so viele Kenntnisse als sein Bruder haben, wenn er so fleißig ware wie er. 2. Wir haben seit lange sehr ungunstigen Wind gehabt. 3. Ich hatte ihn sehr lieb, weil er uneigennützig war. 4. Nein kleiner Bruder hat dieselbe Krankheit gehabt. 5. Hätten Sie mir nur gesagt, daß Sie jene Botschaft nicht erhalten haben! 6. Wolken Sie wol die Güte haben, mir einen Bericht darüber zu senden? 7. Wenn ich Zeit hätte, so würde ich meinen Bruder sehen. 8. Dein Bater will es

Or, Wollen Sie vielleicht, &c., but mohl or mol implies a greater degree of probability respecting a compliance with the request.

^{*} A enphemistic term for 'to command,' 'to order.'

¹ Agreeing with Sug (day), understood.

- haben. 9. Bas habe ich bavon? 10. Ich will es fo, und nicht anders baben. 11. Wir murben feinen Sohn jum (for a) Freunde gehabt haben, wenn Sie nur Gebuld gehabt hatten. 12. Wer (whosoever) es so haben kann wie Sie, kann fich gludlich nennen. 13. Er hat nicht nur zu leben, sondern er ift reich. 14. Was haben Sie ba in ber Sand? 15. Er fagt, er habe abscheuliches Wetter ge= habt. 16. Hier haft bu bas Buch. 17. Ich habe Ihnen einen auten Vorschlag zu machen. 18. Ich habe bir vieles zu fagen. 19. Er wird nimmer einen guten Ruf haben, es fei benn, daß er ganz anders handele, als zuvor. 20. Bas für ein Datum haben wir heute*? 21. Morgen werden wir Oftern haben. 22. Nachste Boche werden wir ein Pfer= berennen hier haben. 23. Weihnacht + werden wir unsere Xante bier haben.
- (b) 1. He has nothing, and never will have any thing, because he is not industrious. 2. What are you carrying there under your " arm? 3. If I have time, I shall send it you to-morrow morning. 4. We shall soon have a marriage in our family. 5. If she were here, she would have quite as much as her sister. 6. If I have had much pleasure in 10) the country. 7. If I had known that §, I should have had quite a different opinion of || him. 8. Her brother would certainly have more property, if he were as industrious as she is herself. 9. He would, indeed, have had money, but very few sincere friends. 10. You will never have my permission, unless you become ¶ more industrious **. 11. Will you have the kindness to lend me this book? 12. Have you had the first or the second volume of the new German work? 13. The moon will be at full in a few days ++.

++ Say: 'we shall have full moon in some days.'

^{*} Colloquially also: Den wievielsten haben wir heute?

⁺ The time is put in the acc. when it is expressed definitely.

Use haben in German.

§ Insert so (254), and invert the order thus: wurde ich, &c. ** Fleißiger. M Du werbest benn. | Bon, with dat.

Lesson 40.

291. (1) Verb with haben. (Reben, to speak.)

	Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Conditional.
or se { Pres.	er rebet er rebete	er rebe	er rebete
PERF. PLUP. lst FUT. FUT. PERF.	er hat gerebet er hatte gerebet	er habe gerebet	er håtte gerebet
Ag lst Fur.	er wird reben	er werbe reben	er wurde reden
S FUT. PERF.	er wird gerebet haben	er werbe gerebet haben	er würbe gerebet haben
	Infinitive.	Participle.	Imperative.
PRESENT.	reben	rebenb	rebe
Perfect.	gerebet haben	gerebet	
Participial for	${f m}$ signifying ${\it duty}$,	necessity, possibility	, &c., zu rebend=er

" Participial form signifying duty, necessity, possibility, &c., ¿u tebenb=et (=e, =e6).

292. (2) Verb with sein. (Springen, to spring.)

		MAC (MD9.	
		Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Conditional.
Simple tenses.	PRES. IMPERF. (aorist)	er springt er sprang	er fpringe	er språnge
	PERF.	er ift gesprun-	er fei gesprungen	er ware gesprun- gen
Compound tenses.	PLUP.	{er war ge=		
É E	lst Fur.	er wird springen	fer werbe fprin=	er würbe sprin= gen
•	FUT. PERF.	er wird gesprun= gen sein	er werbe ge= fprungen fein	er wurbe ge= fprungen fein
		Infinitive.	Participle.	Imperative.
	Present. Perfect.	fpringen gesprungen sein		springe

293. (Eng.) The letter which must be written before post-time. (Germ.) The before post-time to-be-written letter.

This example shows that a participle with dependent notions may be used in agreement with a substantive, where in English it is necessary to use a relative sentence.

294. Der zu rebenbe, die zu rebenbe, bas zu rebenbe.

This form answers to the Latin participle in dus; bie zu hoffenbe Ernte, the harvest to be expected.

295. Vocabulary. Lark (terche, bie). Dog (hund). Grass (Gras, bas). To return (hurûctehren). Abundant (reichlich). Harvest (Ernte, bie). Husbandman (tandmann). To reward (belohnen). To fill (erfüllen). Mind (Gemüth, bas; pl. er). Danger (Gefahr. bie). Over [= past] (vorüber). To make, to deliver [a speech] (halten). Bitter (bittet). Every three hours (alle brei Stunben, acc. of time). To assure (versichen). Meritorious (verbienstvoll). In a certain respect (in gewiffer hinsich). Even (selbs). With the single exception that; only, set apart (nur bas, live. only that). Foot (Fus, bet). Coachman (Rutscher). To ride [in a carriage] (fabren with sein [to be]). To drive [to take the reins] (fabren with haben [to have]). Ditch (Graben, ber). To spring, to jump over, to crack (springen). Industry (Fleis, ber). Weakness (Edwäche, bie). Leg (Bein, bas). Right (recht). Left (lint). Physic, medicine (Uranei, bie).

Exercise 40.

- 296. (a) 1. Die Lerche wird gesungen haben, ehe ich auf das Keld kommen werde. 2. Der Wogel wird bavon geflogen fein, ehe ich mich ihm nahere. 3. Die zu hoffende* reichliche Ernte macht ben Landmann autes. Muthes (96) und froh, und belohnt ihn für feinen Fleiß. 4. Die zu erwartende * gludliche Unfunft unserer geliebten Ronigin erfüllt alle Gemuther mit Freude. 5. Sat ber Schuler die an haltende * Rebe bereits auswendig gelernt ober nicht? 6. Der alte Arat hat eine alle brei Stunden zu nehmende * bittere Arenei fur beinen jungen Bruber biefen Morgen gesandt. 7. Ich versichere Sie, er ist wirklich ein zu empfehlender * und felbft in gewiffer hinsicht ein verbienstvoller Mann, nur daß er leiber bann und wann jene Schwäche hat. 8. Sind Sie zu + Fuß gekommen ober gefahren? 9. Saben Gie felbst gefahren, ober Ihr alter Ruticher? 10. Mein Bruder ift nach B. gefahren, und fein Freund hat ihn fahren muffen i, ba ber Ruticher fich ben linken Urm verrenkt " und bas rechte Bein gebrochen hat.
- (b) 1. He has jumped over the ditch. 2. The glass is cracked. 3. He says he has seen the good physician. 4. The trees will have grown, before my father returns. 5. The danger to-be-avoided is

[•] Liter. the to-be (=that is to be) hoped for, expected, &c. (see 294.) + 'On foot.'

\$\pm\$ See 299, b.

not yet ever. 6. Did you come on foot, or in a carriage *? 7. He says he has not yet read the letter. 8. Where is the letter othat is to be folded up? 9. The boy owho is to be punished? 10. Have you seen the boy owho is to be punished? 11. Do you understand the speech othat is to be learnt by heart?

	Less	on 41. Ti	he Mood	Lesson 41. The Moods of the Auxiliary Verbs.	luxiliary	Verbs.	
297.		Indi	INDICATIVE.				
INFINITIVE.		Present.		Imperfect.	Imperfect, Subjunce.	Condit.	PAST PART.
	Į.	લ્ડ	80				,
burfen	barf	barfst	Darf	Purfte	burfe	durfte	geburft
fonnen	fann	Kannst	Farin	Ponnte	Ponne	Ponnte	gekonnt ,
mogen	triag	magft	Tha g	mochte	moge	môchte	gemocht
muffen	muß	mußt	muß	mußte	müße	migte	gemußt
follen	foll	four	noj	folite	folie	follte	gefollt
wollen	min	wills	noill	wollte	noon	wollte	gewout
					ł		
wiffen	rweiß	welßt	welß	welß wußte	wisse wüßte	wûßte	gewußt.
			•				
sqo	erve the	identity	of the f	orms with	spaces l	etween t	Observe the identity of the forms with spaces between the letters.
The pr they are [as odi; n	esent ter old impe remini, b	The present tenses of these verthey are old imperfects that have [as odi; memini, have in Latin].	ese verb it have atin].	s have the assumed	third sin the mean	gular like ing of th	The present tenses of these verbs have the third singular like the first: they are old imperfects that have assumed the meaning of the present [as odi; memini, have in Latin].

^{*} Gefahren; since gefahren kommen (past part.) is to some in a carriage.

- 298. When the compound tenses of the verbs have an *infinitive* dependent upon them, the *past* participles take the form of the present infinitive.
 - 299. Thus (a) Ich have gefount, I have been able. Ich have gemußt, I have been obliged.
 - (b) 3d habe es thun konnen, I have been able to do it.
 - Ich have es thun mussen, I have been obliged to do it.
 - (c) 1. Ich hatte gehen konnen, I should have been able to go.
 - 2. Ich hatte gehen bürfen, I should have been allowed to go.
 - 3. Ich hatte gehen follen, I should (= ought to)
 have gone.
 - 4. 3d hatte geben mogen, I should have liked to go.
 - 5. Ich hatte gehen mussen, I should have been obliged to go.
- 300. The verbs helfen (to help), heißen (to order), horen (to hear), sehen (to see), senen (to learn), sehen (to teach), have the same peculiarity as the auxiliaries: that is, the tenses compounded with 'have' take the infinitive instead of the past participle, when they have another infinitive grammatically dependent upon them. The verbs that have this peculiarity are those which are followed by the infinitive without zu. Heyse gives them in the following lines.

können, mögen, wollen, bürfen, müffen, follen, laffen; belfen, heißen, hören, fehen, lernen, lehren.

301. Vocabulary. To invite (einsaben). To send for, to have [any body] called (rusen sassen). Anger (Jorn). To hurt, to injure (schaben). To stay at home (zu Hause bleiben). To take [physic] (einnehmen).

Exercise 41.

302. (a) 1. Wer (who) hat dich gehen heißen? 2. Ich habe ihm arbeiten helsen. 3. Ich habe ihn singen hören. 4. Er hat mich tanzen lehren*. 5. Ich habe das Buch

^{*} Some authors would, contrary to the above rule of Heyse and other Gramm., use the past part., and write tangen gelehrt, &c.

noch nicht lesen können. 6. Ich habe es nicht kaufen mögen. 7. Er hat die Arznei einnehmen sollen. 8. Ich habe mit ihm sprechen wollen, aber ich habe ihn nicht sinden können. 9. Er hat nicht bleiben dürfen. 10. Wenn er hier wäre, so hätte er bleiben dürfen. 11. Er hat mich einladen lassen. 12. Er läßt den Arzt rusen. 13. Der Vater wird den Arzt müssen rusen lassen. 14. Der Sohn hat kommen sollen. 15. Der Kranke hat keine Arznei nehmen wollen: aber er hat müssen. 16. Das kranke Kind hätte Arznei nehmen müssen. 17. Er hat weinen müssen. 18. Haben Sie den Brief lesen dürfen?

(b) 1. He has not chosen* (to do it). 2. He has not chosen to call-upon me. 3. Have you had † the old general invited? 4. You should ‡ have invited the old judge. 5. The old general has been obliged §. 6. Have you been obliged § to read a German letter? 7. Have you been obliged § to learn the old book by heart? 8. They ought ‡ to have learnt the whole book by heart. 9. I have seen her dance. 10. I have heard him speak. 11. Have you seen the young girl dance? 12. I wished* (to do it), but I was not allowed ||. 13. I did not wish*, but I was obliged §. 14. He has not been allowed || to visit the patient. 15. He has made † him feel his anger. 16. They have been obliged § to work all the day.

Lesson 42.

303. 'To be going to do any thing' is translated in various ways, principally by wollen, sollen, im Begriffe sein, gerade daran sein, Willens sein. It is translated by (a) wollen when it denotes the purpose or intention of the speaker; (b) by sollen when it denotes what was fixed and intended by another: (c) these verbs

^{*} With the verb wollen. + With the verb laffen (176, b).

[‡] With the verb sollen (299, c. 3). § With the verb mussen (299, b). || With the verb burfen.

are frequently used in the imperfect (wollte, follte) when followed by a sentence with als (as, when).

- 304. a) 1. Er will fo eben verreisen, he is just going to set out (on a journey).
 - 2. Er wollte sprechen, he was about to speak.
 - b) Er sollte hingerichtet werden, he was to be executed.
 - c) 1. Die Bunde wollte eben heilen, als sie wieder aufgerissen wurde, the wound was just going to heal, when it was torn open afresh.
 - 2. Er sollte eben hingerichtet werden, als die Nachricht von seiner Begnabigung ankam, he was just going to be executed when the news of his pardon arrived.

805. Im Begriff or im Begriffe sein is 'to be on the point of,' 'to be just going to.' Stehen auf bem Punkte is 'to be on the point of.'

- d) Er war im Begriff mit großer Heftigkeit zu antworten, he was about to reply with great warmth.
 - Ich stehe auf bem Puntte zu verreisen, I am on the point of setting off (on a journey).
- 306. Er war gerade baran (i.e. he was exactly thereupon) is 'he was just going,' 'he was beginning' to do any thing: followed by als ('when').
 - Er war gerade daran und du sagen, daß er in dem Augenblicke aus Herrn Alworthy's Hause kame, als, &c., he was just going (just beginning) to tell us, that he was that moment come from Mr. Alworthy's, when, &c.
 - 307. Ich bin Willens (gen. from Wille, inclination)

is 'I am minded,' 'I have a mind:' hence 'I intend,' 'I am going.' Sch bin nicht Billens, I have no mind.

Ich bin Billens zu verreisen, I intend to set out.

306. Vocabulary. Haste (Eile, bie). Counsellor (Rath, also sonate, if collectively taken). Bath (Bab, bas). Franco (Frantrich, bas). To commit (begehen). Folly (Thorheit, bie). Hostile, beonging to the enemy (feinblich). To surrender (ergeben, ergab, ergeben [fich]). To sit down to table (fich zu Tifche segen). Suddenly (plòglich). To be taken ill (unwohl werden). India (Indian, bas). To hear, to receive the intelligence of (vernehmen, vernahm, vernammen). At my house (bei mir). To bleed (zur Aber (affen; Aber, die, vein). Heavy [of artillery] (grob). Provided (vorausgeset). Consideration, discretion (Ueberlegung, die). Token, sign (Zeichen, bas). From below (von unten). Exhibition (Runft-Masselfulung, die). To correct (nachsehen, corrigiren). Almost, nearly (fast). To do (thun, that, gethan). To reach (erreichen, erreichte, erreicht). To knock (Hopfen). Door (Thur, bie). Immediately after (gleich darauf). To interrupt (unterbrechen, unterbrach, unterbrach). Fortress (Heftung, bie). Inhabitant (Himpohner, ber). Village (Dotf, das) pl. er). Composition (Zussa), dee.

Exercise 42.

809. (a) 1. Als ich im Begriff war, an meine Thur zu klopfen, war alles still. 2. Der Rath war im Begriff, in schwellster* Eile nach der Stadt zu sahren. 3. Ich wollte eben in das Bad gehen. 4. Ich din Billens, eine Reise nach Indien zu machen (or zu unternehmen). 5. Ich din Willens nach Frankreich zu reisen. 6. Ich din nicht Willens zu ihm zu gehen. 7. Ich stand auf dem Punkte eine Ahorheit zu begehen. 8. Das seindliche Geschütz sollte so eben auf die Stadt gerichtet werden, als der General sich ergad, und gleich darauf einen Boten (courier) absandte i. 9. Man wollte sich so eben zu Atsche setzen, als der junge Graf die unerwartete Ankunst des Königs meldete. 10. Wir standen gerade auf dem Punkte nach Hause zugehen, als mein Bruder plötzlich unwohl wurde. 11. Waren Sie nicht gerade zu iener Zeit im Begriff nach

· Superlative from fonell (quick).

^{+ &#}x27;Despatched,' from absenden (liter 'to send off') a separable verb.

Indien zu gehen, als Sie den Tod Ihres Vaters vernahmen? 12. Als ich ihn das letzte Mal bei mir sah, war er gerade daran nach Frankreich zu reisen. 13. Er sollte zur Aber gelassen werden, als ich ihn das letzte Mal sah. 14. Das grobe Geschütz sollte gerade auf die Festung gerichtet werden, als ein königlicher Bote den Frieden melbete. 15. Ich war (or stand) eben im Begriss den Brief zu senden, als man (they) mir Ihre glückliche Ankunft melbete. 16. Ich din Willens dich thun zu lassen, wie du willst*, vorausgesetzt daß du mit Ueberlegung handelst. 17. Er war sast auf dem Punkte von der Mauer herab (down) zu sallen, als ich ihm von unten ein Zeichen gab, daß er in Gesahr sei. 18. Der alte Feldherr wollte eben die Stadt verlassen, als der Bote einen glänzenden Sieg meldete.

(b) 1. Do you intend (307) to go to (set our for) France? 2. He told me that his father had a mind to see the exhibition of the two young German artists, if you would go with him. 3. I was just about † correcting your German composition, when he interrupted me by his questions. 4. He is just going to do it, but I fear it will be too late now. 5. Were you not going to send that letter to the old general, when my brother brought you the news of & his arrival? 6. I had a mind to call-upon him. but my father did not wish it, since his reputation | is not so good as might be wished \(\bar{\Pi} \). Is it possible, that you should be on the point of leaving your country, without ** taking leave of your most intimate ++ friends and relations? 8. Was not the brave general just going to point the heavy artillery

As thou wilt, i. e. as you like or choose.

⁺ Daran fein.

‡ Eben wollen.

[§] Not with gen. in German, but with non, with dat.

^{||} Verb in the affirm. with 'fein' (no); say in German, litr. 'no such good reputation.'

[¶] $\tilde{S}ay$: 'as one might wish' (als man wünschen möchte, or als zu wünschen wäre).

^{**} Say: 'without to take.'

⁺⁺ Superlat. genauesten.

against * the strong fortress, when the news † of the late glorious victory arrived (antam)? 9. We were just about ‡ setting out for France, when the intelligence of a new war reached us. 10. I was just going to answer your letter, when he told me that you intended to call-on me. 11. The despatch was just going § to be (310) read \parallel to us, when the town surrendered. 12. The victory was just going § to be announced, when the brave general died of his wounds.

Lesson 43.

(The Passive Voice.)

310. The passive voice is in German formed, not with 'to be,' but with merben ('to become').

311. It must be remembered that in the imperfect the form wurde (est, e, &c.) is used, not ward, and that in the perfect and pluperfect tenses the participle drops its ge=; id bin gelobt worden, &c.

312.	Indicative.	Conjunctive.	Conditional.	
IMP.	er wird gehört er wurde gehört	(none)	er würbe gehört (nono) er wäre gehört worden	
Perf.	er ist gehört worden	worden	er ware gehort worden	
PLUP.	fer war gehört worden	(none)	(none)	
Fur.	fer wird gehört 1 werben	er werbe gehört werben	er würde gehört werben	
Fur.	ser wird gehört worden sein	er werde gehort	er würde gehört worden sein	
Imperative. 1			Infinitive.	
			. gehört werben . gehört worden sein	
,	Participles.		Supine.	
	Perr. gehort	Pres.	gehört zu werben	
	Fur. zu hörenb	PERF	. gehört worden zu sein.	

^{*} Say: 'upon,' with acc. + Die Nachricht.

† With , wollten gerade.'

§ With follen (304, b).

§ Borgelesen, past part. of vorlesen, a separable verb.

- 313. Obs. In German the supine is the infinitive with zu. It answers, in some measure, to our participial substantive. The agent after the passive verb is expressed by von with the dative.
- 314. In English 'the good' is used to denote 'good men:' in German it is often used in the singular, Mann' being omitted*. The adjective is declined as it would be after ber if the substantive were expressed: but a capital letter is used, as if it were a substantive. Der Gute, bes Guten, bem Guten, &c.; pl. bie Guten, &c.
 - 315. (Eng.) Without doing it. (Germ.) Without it to do (ohne es zu thun).

Exercise 48.

316. (a) 1. Ich werde geliebt. 2. Der Schlechte wird von den Guten verachtet. 3. Er wird mehr gefürchtet als geliebt. 4. Das junge Kind wird von ber auten Mutter geleitet. 5. Wir find von bem aufrichtigen Freunde ge= troftet worden. 6. Der Keind ift von uns ermubet worden. 7. Das Betragen des Sohnes ist von dem Freunde be= obachtet worden. 8. Der gute Bater wurde von bem schlechten Sohne verachtet. 9. Er ift von meinem Lehrer fehr gelobt worden. 10. Wir wurden von allen guten Menschen gehaßt werden, wenn wir jenen rechtschaffenen Mann verachteten. 11. Biele Leute werben gehaft, ohne es zu verdienen. 12. Er murbe von feinem Bater getabelt worben fein, wenn er es une gesagt batte. 13. Der junge Runftler wurde von allen feinen Freunden bewundert. 14. Wir find verhindert worden. 15. Barum wird er so febr gehaft? 16. Wenn bas Obst reif ift, so wird es gegessen. 17. Wurde jener alte Kelbberr nicht von bem Konige gelobt worben fein? 18. Der junge Sohn bes Berzoges wird heute bier erwartet. 19. Er mar schon seit lange in biefer Stadt erwartet worden. 20. Der Ronig wurde von einem tapferen Solbaten gerettet. 21. Das

^{*} In a similar manner, ber Schlechte, ber Weise, ber Arante (the bad, the wise, the sick [man]).

† Literally, 'since long' (Zeit, 'time,'is understood, 'a long while').

Geschütz auf dem Walle ist gerichtet worden. 22. Jener glanzende Sieg wurde von einem königlichen Herold gemeldet.

(b) 1. We are praised by our sincere friends. 2. What is the reason "that he is so hated? 3. Hasnot the enemy been beaten? 4. The afflicted mother was consoled by her little daughter. 5. Had she not been consoled by her young friend *, she would have been much afflicted. 6. Has not the been observed by any body? 7. Would he not have been praised by every body, if he had acted sensibly 1? 8. Is the royal messenger expected to-day? 9. The poor old man was led by a little child. 10. He was (310) tied to & a tree. 11. The old general was both | loved and feared. 12. The duke's young son is expected here to-day. 13. These letters might have been sent to him yesterday. 14. If they had been sent yesterday, he would have received them this morning ¶. 15. The learned physician is esteemed by all the inhabitants of this little village. 16. No old father will be despised by a good son. 17. He had been censured by a sincere friend. 18. Swords are made of 11) hard steel. 19. The old count's messenger was saluted by the citizens of this large town. 20. Why had the poor woman been envied? 21. Why has not his letter been answered to-day? 22. If the question had been answered by him, he would have been considered ** very learned. 23. Was not our general saved by that brave old soldier? 24. The state will by no means be enriched by this fearful war. 25. The strong gate of the for-

A female friend (Freundin).

⁺ Say: 'las he been observed by nobody' (von Riemanden), and leave out 'not.'

[¶] Say: 'to-day morning' (heute Morgen) or diesen Morgen.

tress had been barricaded by the enemy. 26. Was not that old soldier wounded in ¹⁹ his right arm? 27. The enemy was protected by a very high wall. 28. The old man has been much distressed by his disobedient child. 29. Has the count's white-horse been saddled? 30. How does it happen ⁴⁵ that he is so much hated by his poor relation?

Lesson 44.

- 817. The use of the passive voice is less common in German than in English, there being two idioms that are frequently used where we should use the passive.
 - (1) The first, the use of the indefinite, man' [the French 'on'].

So that 'I am loved' = { ich werbe geliebt, man liebt mich.

- (2) Reflexive verbs are frequently used where we should use passive verbs. Thus,
 - The key has been found— Der Schluffel hat sich gefunden. (The key has itself found.)
 - The tool is easily managed— Dieses Werkzeug handhabet sich leicht. (This tool handles itself easily.)
- (3) A virtually passive form is made of lassen with the infinitive active. The subject is here represented as allowing the action which it suffers.
 - Er läßt sich überreben (he allows himself to be persuaded =), he may be persuased, or is persuaded.
- (See also the idiom, das läßt sich hören, &c., 117, 2.)

- (4) After fehen and horen the infinitive active is used passively [not after other verbs of similar meaning].
 - 1. Ich hore erzählen, I hear it said * [audio narrari].
 - 2. Ich fah ben Konig begraben, I saw the king buried.
- 318. To express a completed action and a continuing state, the verb 'to be' (sein) is used with the past participle, as in English [so, domus ædificata est in Latin]. The past participle here often denotes a quality or property of the subject.
 - a) Er wirb geliebt, he is loved (i.e. by such or such a person).
 - b) Er ift geliebt, he is beloved (i.e. generally; from his amiability).

The gates of the town are shut:

- a) Die Thore der Stadt b) Die Thore der Stadt werden geschlossen (denoting ing habit = clauduntur).

 b) Die Thore der Stadt ind geschlossen (denoting an actual state = clausæ sunt).
- 319. Vocabular. To be found (finden sid) +). To be managed (handhaden sid). To spread, intrans. (verbreiten sid). To be answered (beantworten sid). To become eclipsed (versinstern sid). Second (zweiter, e, 6). To open, intrans. (dssness dversinstern sid). Recollection, reminiscence (Erinnerung, die). To revive (wieder beleben sid). To be duilt (bauen sid). Twig, bough (zweig). To decorate, to ornament (schudten sid). May (Mai, der; pl. en; i.e. the tree). Rumour (Serüdt, das). To kill, to slay (morden). Force (Sewalt, die). Cunning (List, die). Willingly, readily (zern). Deliberation (Bedacht, der). To be sound, to present itself (sinden sid). To kill [of a dutcher] (schlachten, litr. to slaughter). Gist (Sade, die; Seschent, das). Rejection (Berwersung, die; Ablehnung, die). To reject with soorn (versichmähen). Opportunity (Gelegenheit, die). Hatchet (Beil, das). Key (Schlässel, der). To clean (pugen, reinigen).

* For which 'I hear say' is sometimes used colloquially.

^{+ ,} Sid) has been placed here after its infinitive to make the German idiom more obvious. It follows the verb in the present and imperfect tense, see the Exercise (a), but precedes, in grammatical structure, the infinitive and the past participle.

Open-hearted, sincere (offenherzig). Testimony (Zeugniß, bas). Express (ausbrücklich). To adduce (anführen, barbringen). Sock (Sock, bie). Stocking (Strumpf). To foresee (poraus-sehen, sah, gesehen.). Harp (Harfe, bie).

320. To make the subject emphatic, place it after the verb, using the pronoun, et'(=it), to represent the subject.

Ein Komet ist erschienen, a comet has made its appearance. Es ift ein Komet erschienen,

321. (Eng.) A thing is obvious (or too obvious to be mentioned, or self evident).

(Germ.) A thing understands itself by itself (perficht fict you felbit).

Exercise 44.

[An accent over a word shows that it is emphatic.]

322. (a) 1. Diese Frage beantwortet sich leicht. 2. Das versteht sich von selbst. 3. Die Sonne ver= finftert fich. 4. Die Thore offnen fich. 5. Die Erin= nerung belebt fich wieder. 6. Die Pforten bauen fich aus grunen Zweigen. 7. Alle Bute fcmuden fich mit grunen Maien. 8. Das Gerucht verbreitet fich in ber Stadt. 9. Das Gerücht wird in der Stadt verbreitet. 10. Dem Nachsten muß man helfen. 11. Man'hat mich von meinen besten Freunden getrennt. 12. Nicht Ihr habt ihn gemorbet 46. 13. Mich rettet weber Gewalt' noch 14. Er ist von Euch ermordet worden. 15. Was (whatever) man wunscht, glaubt man gern. 16. Es riemt fich +, was man thut, mit Bedacht zu thun. 17. Es fant fich eine schone Gelegenheit. 18. Er lagt fich auf ber Harfe horen t. 19. Er lagt fich bewegen. 20. **E**r laßt fich überreden. 21. Ich kann keinen Feind, und viel weniger einen Freund mighandeln feben. 22. Sat fic bas Buch gefunden? 23. Das wird fich finden, or Das findet sich &.

§ Litr. 'that will find itself' (='we shall see about that').

^{*} A separable verb (see Lesson 50), also rendered by ,im Boraus separate (litr. 'to see in advance' = beforehand).

⁺ See the phrases (216).

‡ Litz. to let oneself hear (= to perform) on an instrument.

(b) 1. The whole village is about being decorated with green boughs. 2. The rejection of this gift may be foreseen. 8. There are (found*) people who reject-with-scorn the small gifts of the poor. 4. A good opportunity presented titself. 5. If a good opportunity presented itself. I would do it without hesitation. 6. This hatchet is easily managed. 7. You may not go home, unless the key is found. 8. Has the silver cup been found? 9. This open-hearted child is much beloved. 10. Is manna (say: the manna) still found in the desert? 11. Express testimonies may be adduced ! from holy writ . 12. I hear that the long-lost book is found §. 13. My little girl saw the good queen buried. 14. The little girl is beloved by her parents, because she, is good and open-hearted. 15. Would that such a favourable opportunity might | present itself!

Lesson 45.

(Further Remarks on the Auxiliary Verbs.)

323. From the great deficiency of forms possessed by our can, may, must, &c., the translation of them into German requires great attention. The following remarks may be of use.

324. As a practical rule always turn the form 'can,' 'could,' &c., into the corresponding form of 'to be able: 'must' into the form 'to be obliged:' this will help you to discover the tense and mood.

325. 1. Could is often the past tense of the indicative: in translating it, then, consider whether the imperfect (founts), or the perfect (habe gekonnt or habe [thun] fonnen), is to be used.

Translate litr. 'find themselves,' es finden sid; remember also the idiom, es giebt' (litr. it gives; see 158).

+ Use finden.

‡ Trans. litr. 'lets itself adduse' (317, 3).

^{§ (317, 2.)} 245, 246, c. 1, 2.

F 4

- 2. Could often depends upon a preceding verb of saying, &c., 'he says that he can;' 'he said that he could.' Here, if the verb of the principal sentence is in the present, 'could' will be translated by the present subjunctive: but, after a past tense of the indicative, either the present subjunctive is used or the present conditional.
 - Er fagte, er konne, muffe; or er konnte, mußte.
- 326. But 'could,' is often conditional: if he could he would = if he were able [but is is uncertain or undecided, whether he is able or not]. Here, wenn er konnte, so wollte er.
- 327. If the conditional 'could' is followed by the perfect infinitive ['could' have done it], the perfect conditional must be used: er hatte es thun konnen.
- 328. 'May' is often used for the expression of a wish, as in English: Möget ihr gludlich leben! may you live happily!
- 329. Ich mochte or ich mochte gern = I should like; ich hatte gemocht, I should have liked; ich hatte es thun mogen, I should have liked to do it.
- 330. Vocabulary. Unhappy (unglücklich). To say, to tell (sagen). Virtue (Augend, die). To practise (üben). Yesterday (gestern). Business (Geschäft, das). To concentrate, to draw-together (zusam-menziehen). Troops (Aruppen). Attack (Angris, der). World (Welt, die). Chance, accident (Busall, der). To make [= oreate] (sudsen, soul, succeeding the succ

Under similar circumstances, unter so bewandten + umstånden. Ground = reason, Grund. To break one's word, sein Wort brechen.

^{*} Nouns ending in heit, teit, are of fem. gender. + Litr. 'thus turned out :' from menben (to turn).

831. (Eng.) I cannot help, forbear, avoid, &c., telling you this.

I cannot but, or choose but, tell you.

(Germ.) I cannot round-about, to tell you this. (Ich kann nicht umbin, bir biefes zu erzählen.)

So: 3ch konnte nicht umbin: er hat nicht umbin gekonnt.

332. To speak or understand French (Franzossisch fonnen, to be able French = to be able to speak French). To speak, know, &c., a language (eine Sprache können). To know his lesson (seine Lektion können).

Exercise 45.

333. (a) 1. Glaubst bu, daß die Guten unglücklich sein konnen, wenn fie arm find? 2. Kannst bu mir fagen, warum bein Bruber heute nicht zu mir kommen kann? 8. Nein: ich weiß nicht, warum er nicht fann. 4. Geftern konnte er wegen vieler Geschäfte nicht. 5. Wenn wir bie Tugend übten, fo konnten wir immer gludlich fein. 6. Die Keinde hatten noch nicht ihre Truppen zusammenziehen fonnen [= gekonnt *], als Cafar einen Angriff auf fie 7. Wer glaubt daß die Welt durch Zufall habe geschaffen werben tonnen [= gekonnt]? 8. Wenn unsere Solbaten ben Berg befeten tonnten, fo murbe ber Sieg nicht zweifelhaft fein. 9. Das find Leute, bie uns Gutes thun konnen. 10. Das kleine Kind kann bie Buchstaben. 11. Einen beffern [= befferen] Lehrer wurden wir nicht leicht erhalten tonnen, als Gofchen. 12. Wenn fie ausgegangen mare, fo batte er fie feben muffen. 13. Der Baron hatte unterbeffen fleifig arbeiten muffen. Sollten 18) Sie's glauben, baß die Berberbtheit ber Menschen so weit gehen konne! 15. Er kann (= versteht) Franzo= fifth, aber nicht Deutsch. 16. Er hatte bie Frage leicht

^{*} See 298, 299.

beantworten können, aber hat nicht wollen (= gewollt). 17. Er- fagt, er musse ihn meiben. 18. Er fagte, er muste (or musse) sich ergeben.

(b) 1. If he had not been here, I should have been obliged * to remain. 2. If you had not lived temperately, you would have been obliged to take medicine. 3. He said he could + not stay here all day, but that he was obliged to see his old friend. 4. He said he must + take his leave. 5. He says that he has been obliged * to work all night io. 6. Would that (245) a letter from (von) you might (828) soon set ome at ease ! 7. Hitherto I have been obliged * to be silent on (uber) the subject. 8. It seems to me impossible (216), that he can have it ready to-morrow. 9. It seemed to me impossible. that he could work all day. 10. He may 16) have forgotten it. 11. I have not felt inclined & to walk today. 12. He could not help (331) telling the secret. 13. She says she cannot help telling the secret. 14. She said she could t not help despising such advice. 15. He says he is obliged to be silent. 16. He said he was obliged to avoid the danger.

Lesson 46.

334. Adjectives ending in el, en, er, frequently drop the e before the termination: thus,

edl=er edl=e edl=e8 } for { edel=er edel=e edel=e8 ebn=er ebn=e ebn=e8}

335. a) In adjectives that end in er, the e of the root is sometimes retained, the e of the termination rejected: thus,

heiter=m, schoner=m, bitter=m.

[•] See 298, 299. + Use the present subj. or conditional (325, 2).

To set at ease, berubigen.

\$ Mogen.

b) So also in the case of adjectives that end in el, er, it is best to retain the e of the root, and reject the e of the termination before en: thus.

beiter=n ebel=11 beffer=n (ebl=en beitr=en beffr=en, not good).

- c) But adjectives in an reject the radical e before the termination en: as volltommn=en. ebn=en.
- d) The e of the root or termination is by no means always rejected from adjectives in el, en, er; e.g. wollene Adder; verschiebene Ursachen; ein bescheibener Jüngling; bittere Worte; bie Aeltere (Lied), ben Betruntenen (Tied).

336. Vocabular. Of cloth, made of cloth (tuchen). Dark (finster). Sour (fauer). Safe (sicher). Of oak (eichen). Of or made of a beechtwee (buchen). Open (ossen). Of silk (seiben). Various, disserent (versichieben). Happiness (Glück, bas). Present (gegenwärtig). Collar (Kragen). Dangerous (geschirtich). Cotton (baummossen sichen). Asylumplace of refuge (Jussichen). To choose (wählen). Asylumplace of refuge (Jussichen). Vain (eitet). Dress (Ungug verz Kleid, bas). Generous (großmüthig). Exploits (Thaten). Port, harbour (Hafen). To encourage (ermuthigen, Muth geben). Serene, bright (heiter). Look (Blick). A clothes-press (Schrant). Action (Handlung, That, vie). Colour (Farbe, vie). To obtain (erhalten, bielt, basten). bielt, halten).

Exercise 46.

337. (a) 1. War das nicht eine sehr eble Handlung? 2. 3d habe jenem ebeln Manne gang allein mein gegenwartiges Glud zu banken. 3. Bollen Gie ben filbernen ober ben goldnen Becher haben? 4. Satte er nicht einen warmen tuchnen (tuchenen) Mantel um 12)? 5. Es ist wahrlich gefährlich in einer folden finftern (finfteren) Nacht zu reisen. 6. Sie faß an einem beitern Tage vor bem offnen (offenen) Fenfter und fang. 7. Wollen Gie biefes warme wollene ober jenes baumwollene Kleib an= ziehen? 8. Er ist ein tapfrer (tapferer) Helb. 9. Das Glud eines heitern (heiteren) Gemuths. 10. Wir haben einen recht heitern Lag. 11. Ich mable jenen sichern (sicheren) Zufluchtsort für uns. 12. Die eitle (eitele) Tochter bes alten Grafen wird eben so verachtet, als ihr ebler Bater geachtet wird.

(b) 1. She gave her sister a beautiful gold ring and silk dress. 2. What a beautiful oak table you have there (Sie ba haben)! 3. He stood at * the open window when I saw him. 4. That really was a very noble and generous action. 5. I never like to set out (on a journey) in a dark night like (wie) this. 6. Water mixed with sour wine. 7. A beech-wood press. 8. The exploits of a brave warrior. 9. The hope of arriving t in a safe port encouraged us. 10. The friends of modest young people. 11. Let the vain woman go. 12. To a serene look. 13. They obtained a complete victory over the enemy. 14. I hope you may soon arrive in a safe port. 15. They are of different opinions. 16. I must avoid him from various causes.

Lesson 47.

(Degrees of Comparison.)

338. The terminations of the comparative and superlative degrees are respectively et, eff; and a, o, u, are modified, if the adjective is a primary derivative 1. But the vowel is not modified in the following, which are given in the comparative.

> Bunter, falber, faber: flacher, frober, glatter, Geraber, hohler, holber: kahler, knapper, fatter, & Ranger, laffer, lofer: matter, plumper, platter, & Rober, rinnber fodden fatter Rober, runber, fachter: fanfter, fchlaffer, lahmer, Schroffer, ftarrer, ftolzer: ftraffer, ftumpfer, gahmer, Add those in au with diphthong: as rauber, tauber,—toller, Gesunder, blasser [or gesünder, blässer]—voller.

^{*} Bor with dat.

⁺ Say: 'to arrive' (angulommen).

That is, if it has no significant termination, as ig, icht, isch, bar, fam.

- 339. Falst and morst are for fal-ist, mor-ist, and (being secondary derivatives) are unmodified.
- 340. E is dropt from the eft of the superlative, unless the adjective ends in a t sound (t, b) or b, β , (d), δ . But in participles it drops it even after b, t. If the adjective ends in a vowel or double liquid, the e is dropt or retained.
 - a) ber ichonfte, ber reinfte, ber bicffte.
 - b) ber mubefte, ber schlechteste, ber sußeste.
 - c) der reizenbste, ber gebildetste.
 - (Also größester is mostly contracted into größter.)
 - d) ber freieste or freiste, ber robeste or robste, ber starreste or starrite.
- 341. In the comparative degree of adjectives in ef, en, er, the vowel of the termination is usually dropt; e.g. ebler (from ebel), bitterer (from bitter), ebener (from eben).
- 342. Comparatives and superlatives are declined like other adjectives.
- 343. Vocabulary. (Of adjectives with vowel not modified.) Speckled, spotted, party-coloured (bunt). Fallow (falb). Insipid (fabe). Flat (flach). Straight (gerade). Hollow (hohl). Favorable (hoh). Bald (tahl). Close (fnapp). Stingy (targ). Lame (lahm). Tired (laß). Loose (lofe). Wearied (matt). Flat (platt). Clumsy (plump). Raw (roh). Slow, soft (facht*). Soft (fanft). Satisfied (fatt). Slack (fchlaff). Precipitate, abrupt (fchroff). Stiff (ftarr). Tight (ftraff). Dumb (flumm). Blunt (flumpf). Mad (toll). Full (voll). Tame (3ahm). Rough (rauh). Deaf (taub). Pale (blaß, blaßer, or blaßer). Sound (gesund, gesunder, or gesünder). Form, shape (Gestalt, bie). Oak-tree (Giche, bie). A small tree (Baumschen, bas). Convenient (bequem). Reason (Bernunst, bie). Advantage (Borgus, ber). All on a sudden (aus einmal). Dreadful (fchrectiid). Stag (frich, ber). Brook (Bach, ber). Spring-water (Duell-Basister) bas). Skin (fout, bie). Hide (Fell, bas). Ass (Gsel). Attractive (reigend). Accomplished (gebildet). Free (frei). Merry (frob). Every day (täglich or tagtäglich).

^{*} Of gentle imperceptible motion: then, of similar gentle action, &c.

344. The—the, je—beste, or je—je.

Se hoher ber Berg, besto tieser ist bas Thal, the higher the hill, the deeper the valley.

Exercise 47.

- 345. (a) 1. Die Zanne ift hoher, als die Eiche. 2. Das Baumchen hat einen ich machern Stamm, als ber Baum. 3. Der gerade Weg ift immer ber furgere, aber nicht immer der bequemere. 4. Die schonfte Blume hat nicht immer ben angenehmften Geruch. 5. Die Bernunft ift ber größte Borzug bes Menschen vor dem Thiere. 6. Je langer ber Zag, besto furzer ift bie Nacht. 7. Der größte Mann ift nicht immer ber ftarkfte. 8. Gebt boch etwas fachter! 9. Auf einmal fah ich mich an bem schroffsten Theile bes schrecklichsten Felsen. 10. Der hirsch hat eine schlankere Geftalt, als bas Pferd. 11. 3m Binter find bie Tage kurzer, als im Sommer. 12. Die Haut bes Pferbes ift glatter, als das Fell des Efels. 18. Ein Fluß ist tiefer und breiter, als ein Bach. 14. Gutes Quell= Waffer scheint im Winter warmer zu sein, als anderes Baffer.
- (b) 1. The shorter the night is, the longer is the day. 2. The straightest way is not always the shortest. 3. That is a round tower. 4. This tower seems to me to be rounder than that. 5. The most learned man is not always the wisest. 6. He seems to me to be more stingy than his brother. 7. The old general appears to me to grow * more wearied every day. 8. Do you think that the more party-coloured the gown, the more beautiful it is? 9. The learned father has a still more learned son. 10. The more lonely the way is, the longer it appears to be. 11. Fetch me a still slenderer reed. 12. The more industrious the pupil is, the more † he will learn. 13. He speaks more softly ‡ than his brother. 14. A

^{*} Say: 'to become,' werden.

⁺ Mehr.

[#] Use the comp. of fact.

stronger stream I never saw. 15. It seems to me, that he becomes prouder every day.

Lesson 48.

(Degrees of Comparison continued.)

- 346. There are also (as in English) compound forms of comparison; mehr ('more') being used for the comparative, and am meisten (= an bem meisten, 'at the most,' 'most') or hochft ('highest') for the superlative.
 - 347. The simple comparative may be used in the case of secondary as well as primary derivatives, with the exception of those in iso, where it would be offensive to euphony.
 - 348. The compound comparative must be used when the comparison is between the degree in which two properties belong to the same subject.
 - e) Er ift mehr tapfer, als gelehrt, he is more brave than learned, braver than he is learned (or 'he is rather brave than learned').
 - 849. The compound superlative is the superlative of eminence (= in English, a very, extremely, exceedingly, most learned man). Besides hother, we find also fehr (very), außerst (extremely), überaus (exceedingly).
 - a) Ein hochst langweiliges Buch, a very tedious book. Ein außerft bummer Mensch, an extremely stupid man. So. Ein fehr kluger Menfch, ein überaus kluger Mensch.
 - 350. The superlatives, both of comparison and of eminence, are often strengthened by the gen. of alle (all): e. g. ber allerreichfte Menfch im Lande, the richest

man in the country. Ein allerliebstes Kind, a most lovely child.

(Comparison of Adverbs.)

- 351. (a) The comparative adverb is the unaltered comparative adjective.
- 352. The superlative of eminence * is (b) either the unaltered superlative adjective, or (c) the superlative adjective in the accusative governed by the preposition auf; or (d) in a few words, the superlative with the termination ens.
- 353. The superlative of comparison is the superlative adjective in the dative governed by the preposition an.
- 354. Obs. The article being used, the forms become am (= an bem); and aufs (= auf bas); am freundlich=ften; aufs freundlichfte.
- 355. In höchstens, 'at the most;' wenigstens or minbestens, 'at least;' spätestens, 'at latest;' långstens, 'at longest:' the form in ens denotes the exclusion of any higher degree.
 - a) Er spricht lauter als bu, he speaks louder than you.
 - b) Er grußt freundlichst, he salutes in the most friendly manner.
 - c) Er grußt mich aufs (= auf bas) freunds lichste, he salutes me in the most friendly manner. Man spielt aufs schändlichste mit dir, they are trisling with you in the most shameful manner (or most shamefully).
 - d) Er bankt ich onftens.

356. Obe. Er rebete mich am höflichsten an, would mean that he addressed me the most politely of all: er rebete mich aufs höflichste

The superlative, that is, which expresses a very high degree, without any comparison with others.

an, would imply no comparison with others.—In English, 'he addressed me in the most courteous manner,' means 'in the most courteous manner possible or conceivable,' = 'in a very courteous manner,' and may therefore be the superlative of eminence.

357. Obs. The form with auf should only be used with reference to a person. One should not say, for instance, bic Rose blubet aufs schould not say, for instance, bic Rose blubet aufs schould not say, for instance, bic Rose blubet aufs schould not say, for instance, bic Rose blubet aufs school not say, for the superlative of eminence are not very common, the adverbs ungemein (uncommonly), außerst (extremely), sehr (very), außerorbentsich (extraordinarily), being frequently used instead of them.

Exercise 48.

- 358. (a) 1. Der Wind ist mehr heftig, als kalt. 2. Es ist ein überaus heftiger Wind. 3. Er war am höchsten erfreut. 4. Der alte Graf grüßte den rechtschaffnen Bürger am freundlichsten. 5. Er verrichtet sein Geschäft auß gewissenhafteste. 6. Das junge Mädchen singt ungemein schön *. 7. Der Wind wehet außerordentlich heftig *. 8. Er soll der allerreichste Mann im Lande sein. 9. Neben sich hatte sie zwei allerliebste Kinder. 10. Sie singt allerliebst *. 11. Er ist mehr geliebt als sein Bruder. 12. Er beträgt sich höchst anständig *. 13. Der Borfall hat ihn auß empsindlichste gekränkt. 14. Er erfüllt seine Psicht auß gewissenhafteste.
- (b) 1. The road is more lonely than dangerous.

 2. The young artist is more industrious than clever.

 3. He has performed this duty most (= very) carefully.

 4. He is said to have managed the business very conscientiously.

 5. The path is extremely narrow.

 6. He is said to be an exceedingly brave man.

 7. She culls the most beautiful + flowers in the garden.

 8. He looks as if he were extremely dull.

 9. He is freer than I.

 10. He has received me in the most friendly omanner.

 11. You must at

Adjectives, adverbially used here.

⁺ Die allericonften Blumen.

least promise to come again. 12. He is said to be exceedingly contented. 13. He travels very rapidly. 14. The German artist draws very beautifully oindeed. 15. He has just shown me the most beautiful drawings that I ever saw. 16. He saluted him in the most friendly omanner. 17. He saluted her in the most friendly manner of all. 18. He executed the work most carefully 19. He executed the work most carefully = more carefully than any one else to

Lesson 49.

(Degrees of Comparison continued.)

359. The degree by which one thing exceeds or falls short of another is expressed in German by um (with the accusative), or by adverbs.

(Adverbs, &c., by which comparatives and superlatives are modified, &c.)

360. Vocabulary. By one-half (um bie Histe). By several hours (um mehrere Stunden). Somewhat (etwas). Considerably (beträchtich). Little (um weniges or wenig). A little (ein wenig). Not at all (um nichts). Somewhat too (etwas zu). Still (noch). Much (viel or um vieles). As much as possible (so viel als moglich). As cautiously as possible (so vorsiditig als moglich). As many troops as possible (so viel Aruppen als moglich). The greatest possible (moglichst groß). As secretly as possible, in the most secret manner possible (auf moglichst geheime Weise). By a great deal (um ein Großes or Bedeutendes, um vieles, bei weitem).

Germany (Deutschlee) and olice, bet bettell).

Germany (Deutschlee) the olice, bie). Winter (Winter). Almond (Manbel, bie). Nut (Auß, bie). Youth (Jugend, bie). Therefore (baher). Young man (Jüngling). To apply (anwenden). Diligence (Fleiß). Manners (Sitten). Polish (Politur). Heart (Petz, bas). Maxim (Marime, bie). To form (bitben). Acute (fdarf, sein). Cunning (Lift, bie). Straightness (Gerabheit, bie). Simple (einsach). Peasant (Bauer, ber). Blunt (Linsaltig, stumps). Wolf (Bolf, ber). Frequent (häusig). Work, production (Wert, bas). Mind (Geist). Hazel-hen (haelhuhu, bas). Pigeon (Taube, bie). Precipitate, over-hasty (voreilig). Sleep (Schlaf). To show,

^{*} Aufs forgfältigfte.

⁺ Um sorafaltiaften.

[#] Superlative of moglid) (possible).

[§] That is, with reference to character, manners.

to evince (dußern). Love (Liebe, bie). Ever (je). Comparison (Bergleich, ber). Asiatic (astatisch). Elephant (Elephant, ber). African (astatisch). Object (Gegenstant, ber). Art (Kunst, bie). Figure (Figur, bie). Circle (Birkel). Geometrical (geometrisch). Precious (kostber). Last (vergangen, lest). To keep the house (bas Haus haten). Loquacious (geschwäßig).

361. (Eng.) { No more—than. Not any more—than.

(Germ.) Just as little as (eben so wenig als).

Exercise 49.

- 362. (a) 1. Italien ift um die Salfte kleiner als Deutschland; aber Deutschland ift um vieles kalter. 2. Im Winter find die Tage um mehrere Stunden furger, als im Sommer. 3. Mein Bruder ift um zwei Jahre junger als meine Schwester. 4. Die Konigin ift um einen Zag älter als ber Konig. 5. Die Wolfe find in Frankreich weit häufiger, als in Deutschland. 6. Die Werke bes. Geistes sind um vieles größer, als die des Korpers. 7. Das Safelhuhn ift etwas großer, als eine Taube. 8. Meine Tochter, bu bift zu voreilig gewesen. 9. Der Tob ift bem Schlafe am ahnlichsten +. 10. Die Kinder außern mir eine gartlichere Liebe, als je. 11. 3ch bin ohne Bergleich frischer als feit Jahren. 12. Die affatischen Glephanten find betrachtlich größer als die afrikanischen. 13. Mit meiner Gefundheit ift es um ein Großes beffer geworben. 14. Die Natur zeigt uns schönere Gegenstände als bie Runft. 15. Der reichste Mensch ist nicht immer ber alud= lichfte. 16. Die Figur bes Birtels ift bie volltommenfte unter allen geometrischen Figuren. 17. Die Jahre ber Jugend find die angenehmften und zugleich die koftbarften.
- (b) 1. The king is only a day older than the queen.
 2. The sun is much larger than the moon.
 3. He is said to have been too precipitate.
 4. The nights are

Of patients.

We see from this example that the compound form of the superlative (the form with , am, '354) is used as the predicate (i.e. after to be').

now much shorter than the days. 5. This autumn is considerably colder than the last. 6. His sister is two years older than my brother. 7. His brother is no more sentimental than Charles. 8. He is said to be no more avaricious than his father. 9. He is not so learned by a good deal as his younger brother. 10. He arrived to late by several hours. 11. You must perform it in the most secret manner possible. 12. It seems impossible, that he should be still more avaricious than his uncle. 13. The heat is much greater than ever. 14. The nights are longest in winter. 15. Almonds have a much finer taste than nuts. 16. The years of youth are the most precious, therefore the youth ought to make use of them in the best possible manner: he ought to apply the greatest diligence to acquire the most important knowledge, to give his manners the greatest possible polish, and to form his heart by the best maxims. 17. The most acute cunning of the rascal is worse than the blunt straightness of the simplest peasant. 18. He came in the greatest haste possible.

Lesson 50.

(Verbs compounded with Separable Particles.)

- 363. A peculiar idiom of the German language is its method of proceeding in the case of verbs compounded with prepositions.
- 364. To give a general notion of it, we will take the English verb to over-look. Though in an accessory sentence the Germans would talk of over-looking, in a principal sentence they would, in some tenses, separate the preposition from the verb, and place it last. Thus: 'he looks the account over.'
- 365. They do this even in the case of very long sentences: thus they would say, 'He looks the ac-

count presented to him by the banker, and which filled three sides of the sheet, with great attention over.'— 'He spects the thirty-third regiment, which had lately returned from India, in.'

366. This is only in the case of separable prepositions. The separation does not take place in the compound tenses, nor in the present infinitive and present participle. In the past participle the ge follows the preposition, nehmen, nahm, genommen; abnehmen, abnahm, abgenommen.

367. It does not take place in the accessory clause of a sentence *.

(Particles that are always inseparable.)

- 368. These prefixes, ver, er, miß, zer, be, ent, Remember must not from their verbs be rent.
- 369. So, if the infinitive should take zu, the zu follows the separable particle. Not zu annehmen (to accept), but anzunehmen: Ich bitte Sie es anzunehmen, 'I beg you to accept (of) it;' just as if we said in English, 'I beg you overtolook his fault.'
 - 370. a) Der Frembe reiset ab (from abreisen), the stranger sets
 - b) Er schließt die Augen zu (from zuschließen), he closes his eyes.
 - c) Die Sonne geht früh auf (from aufgehen), the sun rises early.
 - d) 1. Ich lub ihn ein 2. Ich will ihn einlaben jeben Sag bei mir zu effen,
 - I invited him
 I will invite him to dine with me every day.
 - 3. Ich bin nicht eingelaben worben, I have not been invited.
 - 4. Er schrieb, daß der Graf, &c., einlub, he wrote word, that the count invited, &c.

e.g. Er blieb zu hause, ba sein Bater ausging. For Obs. Da fein Bater, &c., is the accessory clause.

6

371. In separable compound verbs, the accent is on the preposition, as in English: auf'=ftehen, to rise up'.

372. Vocabulary. (a) To increase, intrans. (zu'=nehmen*; nehmen, nahm, genommen). To decrease (ab'=nehmen). To except (ans'=nehmen). To assume, receive, take for granted, accept (an'=nehmen). To imagine (ein'-bilben fich: fich is here dat.). To address (an'=reben). To introduce (vor'=ftellen). To imitate (nach'=ahmen governs the dat. of a person, the acc. of a thing). To invite (ein'=laben). Heap (Happen). Pleasure (Bergnügen, bas). Proposal (Borfchlag). Absence (Abmesenbeit). During (wahrend). Birthday-present (Gebuttstags=Geschend). Joyfully (mit Freuden). Offer (Anerbisten, bas). Invitation (Ginlabung). Any (itgend einer). Cold (Rälte, mid. form). To last, to continue (an=halten; halten, hielt, gehalten). To advance (vor=fucken). Season, time of the year (Jahrsteit follows the gender of zeit, 'time'). Thankfully, with thanks (mit Dant). Although (obgleich). Cause, concern (Angelegenbeit). In the following manner (folgenbermaßen). Hero (Held). Example (Beispiel follows gend. of Spiel, 'play'). Excellent (vortreffich). In every thing (in allen Stücken [liter. pieces, i.e. in all details]). Seat (Gig). Assembly (Bersammlung). Bill (Bechjel). Without any ceremony, without saying any more about it (ohne weiteres, liter. 'wichout further'). Hesitation (Bebenten, bas). To pass or to go past (vorbei=gehen; gehen, ging, gegangen). Haste (Eile). Three (brei).

(\$\beta)\$ To tear-up (zerreißen). Report (Gerücht). To take up (exgreisen, ergriff, ergriffen). Arms (Wassen). Public (allgemein). To shut (zu'=machen). Behind (hinten, hinter). Whether (ob). In all splendour (in aller Pracht). About (um). People [= they, we, &c. .] (man, with sing.). To set an example (ein Beispiel geben [litr. .] give]). Twice a-day (zwci Mal bes Ages +). In the morning (bes Morgens +). Intellectual powers (Geistes-Kräste). Wisdom (Weiseheit, 1). Age (Alter, 15). Action (Hanblung, 1). Daily (täglich) §.

The accents and hyphens are merely used as helps for the pupil.

† Two times of the day.

† Of the morning.

[§] The pupil is now to determine the genders of substantives by the rules in the Appendix. A numeral after a substantive refers to the number of the rule in the Appendix. (1) In the case of monosyllables not ending in the terminations of the middle form [t, b, te, be, ft, e], let him look at the list of exceptions beginning with the initial letter of the word: and if he does not find it there, let him conclude it to be masculine by rule. Thus, if the word is Blict, look through list 4. (2) For (non-significant) el, em, en, et, look at lists 12—15; if not found there, conclude it masculine. (3) For middle form [see 249] look at lists 16, 17. (4) For prefix ge look at 18. (5) For longer words look at General Table of Genders.

Exercise 50.

[The hyphens are merely used to assist the pupil.]

373. (a) 1. Der Sohn =ahmt bem Boter nach=. 2. Der Mond = nimmt zu=. 3. Der Mond = nimmt zu= und ab=. 4. Der haufen = nimmt immer mehr und mehr ab=. 5. Ich =nehme mit Vergnügen den Vorschlag des guten Alten an=. 6. Wir wollen annehmen, bag bem fo ift *. 7. 3ch =nehme an=, bag bu ein ehrlicher Dann bift. 8. Mein Bruber nimmt meine Briefe mabrend meiner Abwesenheit an=. 9. Die kleine Tochter =nahm bas Ge= burtstage=Geschenk mit Freuden von ihrer guten Mutter 10. Barum =nehmen Sie jenes hubsche Gefchenk nicht an=? 11. Sat Ihr junger Bruder bas Anerbieten bes alten Kelbherrn nicht angenommen? 12. Ich =nehme nie eine Einladung von irgend einem Fremben an=, es fei benn daß ich annehme, daß er ein ehrlicher Mann ift (or sei). 13. Die Kälte hat wahrlich seit einigen Tagen sehr Rugenommen, und man fann annehmen, daß fie noch lange anhalten wird, indem wir noch nicht weit in der Sahrszeit vorgeruckt find. 14. Wir =nabmen fein gutiges Anerbieten uns bem Bergoge vorzustellen mit Dank an=, obgleich wir annahmen, bag er unserer Angelegenheit wenig nugen wurde. 15. Er =redete mich sowohl, wie meinen Freund auf offener Strafe an=. 16. Glauben Sie. bak er ihn angeredet babe? 17. Unfer tapfere Keldherr =rebete ben Ronig bei beffen Unfunft folgendermaßen an=: D Konig, bu =ahmft wahrlich jenen alten Belben nach=, bie, u.f.w. 18. Er =ahmt bas gute Beispiel feiner vor= trefflichen Meltern nach=. 19. Jener Antonius =ahmte ihm in allen Studen (or in jeder Hinsicht) und wo er nur konnte +, mit Freuden nach=. 20. Er =bilbet fich immer ein=, daß man ihn loben muffe. 21. Sobald er ihn fab, =ftand er fogleich von feinem Gibe auf=, und =ftellte ihn ber gangen Versammlung als einen verbienstvollen

Dem ift fo ('it is so, to it,' = it is true, correct).
 + Litr. 'where he but was-able,' i.e. 'whenever he had an opportunity.'

jungen Kunftler vor=. 22. Er bat ihn, daß er seinen jungen Sohn der Versammlung vorstelle. 23. Er =nahm meinen Wechsel ohne weiteres =an, sobald ich ihm denselben vorzeigte. 24. Ist der Wechsel dem reichen Kausmanne bereits (= schon) vorgezeigt worden? 25. Ich =zeigte ihn vor=, als ich gestern seinem Hause vorbeiging. 26. Er =ging diesen Morgen unserem Hause in großer Eile vorb ei=, und =red ete Niemanden an=, ausgenommen die kleine Tochter die vor 27) der Thure stand. 27. Ich =nehme zwei oder drei davon aus=. 28. Den Marcus ausgenom=men, sind die anderen alle schlechte und boshafte Menschen.

(b) 1. He has torn-up the old book. 2. Is it you* that spread the report of his death? 3. They tookup arms + against the common enemy. 4. He never shuts the door behind him (sid). 5. Didn't he shut the door when he came? 6. I invited him, since I took for granted that he was an agreeable, or, at least, an honest man. 7. Has your brother accepted his two bills? 8. Look (Sieh) whether the moon is-rising. 9. Go and look whether the sun is-setting. 10. The sun is setting; and the clear full moon is rising in all its splendour. 11. When does the sun rise about this time-of-the-year? 12. I introduced him, as well as his young son, to the duke's relation. 13. Did the old duke address him or not? He addressed him, but he did not invite him. 14. He always imagines (to-himself, sid) that people imitate his folly. 15. He very seldom imitated any example he set him except this bad ones. 16. He always passed our house twice a-day. 17. Will the rain last, do you think §? 18. When do you rise now in the morning? 19. The great heat is now rather decreasing. 20. His intellectual powers are much decreasing. 21. He is increasing in 10) wisdom and age.

^{*} Say: 'Are you it.' + Say: 'the arms' in Germ.

[‡] Say: 'excepted' in German, ausgenommen.

[§] Glauben Sie? Say: 'Believe you that,' &c., with pres. subj. or fut. subj. (bag ber Regen anhalte or anhalten werbe.)

22. I advise you to imitate the excellent example which your kind friend has set ⁵⁸ you. 23. He only imitates his bad actions. 24. I accept your kind proposal with much pleasure. 25. He accepted the offer without hesitation. 26. The cold is increasing daily. 27. I take-for-granted that your friend is a clever, or, at least, an honest man. 28. Did he accept the old duke's invitation? 29. I accept your invitation for ⁵⁰ to-morrow. 30. Has he accepted the bill? 31. Has your friend introduced him to the German author? 32. I have forgotten to introduce him. 33. It is impossible for * me to accept your bill. 34. He addressed the old general in the following manner.

Lesson 51.

(Some Verbs that govern the dative, where we do not use 'to.')

374. A dative put, remember pray,
With gehorchen, to 'obey,'
Untworten, banken, folgen, bienen,
And brohen ('threaten' is its meaning),
Begegnen, gleichen; add to these
Berzeihen, and gefallen, 'please.'
Helfen, nügen, fchaben, you
May add, and trauen, fcmeicheln, too,
It means to 'flatter,' which you must not do.

375. Vocabulary. To obey (gehorchen). To answer (antworten). To thank (banken). To follow (folgen). To serve (bienen). To threaten (brohen). To meet, to befall, to obviate (begegnen). To be useful or of use (nügen). To hurt (schoen). To flatter (schmeichen). To be like (gleichen, glich, geglichen). To pardon (verzeihen, verzieh, verzieh, verziehen). To please (gefallen, gesiel, gefallen). In the least (im geringsten, im minbesten). At least (zum wenigsten). Sooner [= before this] (früher). Perfect (ganzlich).

876. (Eng.) To make any body a bad return for any thing.

(Germ.) To thank any thing ill to any body.

(Semanden [dat.] etwas schlecht banken.)

^{*} Say: to-me (mir unmöglich).

377. (Eng.) I have to thank you for this [it being something uspleasant]; 'thank' being used ironically.

(Germ.) I have to thank this to you.
(Dies habe ich Ihnen zu banken.)

378. (a) (Eng.) I have met my brother.

(Germ.) My brother is to-me met.

(Mein Bruber iff mir begranet *.)

379. (b) (Eng.) I never met with a similar affair; or, Such a thing never happened to me.

(Gorm.) It is to-me the-like never met. (Es ift mir bergleichen nie begegnet.)

380. (o) (Eng.) She has received (or treated him) rather coldly.

(Germ.) She has to-him rather soldly met (= treated).

(Sie hat ihm siemlich kaltsung begegnet.)

Exercise 51.

381. (a) 1. Bas nutt es mir Reichthum zu befiten, wenn ich nicht an 10) Leib und Seele gefund bin ? 2. Sag' mir boch (pray), mas fann es bem Beizigen nuten Guter zu befigen, von benen er teinen Gebrauch macht? 3. Bas helfen mir alle beine Bersprechungen, ba ich boch (certainly) ein für alle Mal sehe, baß bu bieselben nimmer erfüllen wirst. 4. Gehorche stets, mein Sohn, ben Geseten des Landes, in dem bu lebest. 5. Er folgt nur feinen Reigungen, und nicht ber Stimme ber Bernunft. 6. Wenn bu auf 19 biefe Weise handelft, fo fei (be) uber= zeugt, baß es nicht allein beinem eignen, sonbern auch bem guten Rufe beiner gangen Kamilie ichaben wirb. 7. Warum schmeichelst du mir benn immer, ba ich boch sehe, daß ich es nicht verdiene gelobt zu werben. 8. Er schmeichelte ihm mit ber hoffnung bem Uebel zu begegnen " und ihm fo gu nuten, wenn er verfprache ihm nicht langer gu schaben. 9. Warum anwortest bu mir benn gar nicht? bu folltest mir vielmehr banken, daß ich bich zu unterrichten

^{*} Obs., Begegnen' (the literal meaning of which is 'to come against' or 'hit against') takes [cin in the sense of meeting, befalling, &c.: but haben or [cin in the sense of 'receiving' a person; i.e. behaving towards him.

Willens bin 68. 10. Du falltest jenem eblen und erfahrenen Greise nicht nur (allein) gehoreben, sanbern ibn auch qu= gleich achten und ehren, benn er will ja * nur bein Beffes. 11. Es ift fehr mahrscheinlich, daß ich meiner Schwefter auf 10) ber Strafe beneane. 12. Er ift mir gestern be= gegnet, gerade als ich im Begriff Rant nach Saufe gu geben, allein ich hatte feine Reit mit ihm zu fprechen. 13. Er hat mir gar nicht gut begegnet. 14. Sie hat ihr gar nicht fo begegnet, wie fie es wal von einer Schmeffer erwarten burfte +. 15. Er antwortet mol auf " meine Rragen, aber er beantwortet sie leider (kitr. alas! = I am sorry to say) nie richtia.

(b) 1. Didn't t you meet your brother on the river? My brother met me, er, I met my brother in 10) the street. 2. You must follow your own views in this respect. 3. It would be as well & for him | to follow his own discretion in this difficult matter. 4. I never see¶ you follow his advice. 5. Would (246) that you had followed his views! 6. You will never be happy, unless you obey your kind parents. 7. What does all this avail to me **, if I have no good conscience? 8. The step he is going to take will no doubt be more injurious (= do more harm ++) to the matter than of use to-it (berselben). 9. Did not you meet your brother in 10) our street? 10. Would this disobedient child had obeyed his good parents sooner! 11. I met him 65 just when I was on the point of going home. 12. She has met 65 her sister.

^{*} Sa (litr. 'yes') is sometimes, as it were, used adverbially, to add emphasis to an assertion, and may be turned by 'can you doubt it !' can it be doubted?' or by 'no doubt,' 'undoubtedly,' 'certainly,' &c.

⁺ Litr. 'as she durst expect it,' = 'as she had reason to expect it:' as in our 'dare say' = 'I have sufficient reason for saying.'

[†] Use the perfect tense, Sind Sie, &c.—begegnet.

§ With conditional, &s ware even so gut.

Il Say: 'that he should-follow.'

¶ Say: 'see that you,' &c. || Say: 'that he should-follow.'

^{&#}x27;Avail' (= be of use), nugen, was nugt . . . bies alles, &c. ++ 'To be more injurious,' of use,' with schoolen and nugen, 'harm more than ' (mehr schaben als).

but she had no time to speak to (mit) her. 13. She has not behaved towards her as if she was her sister. 14. That can do you no harm. 15. We ought not to (must not) harm any body *. 16. Why don't you obey your parents? 17. Has he followed your friend's advice? 18. Why do you never follow the advice of your friends rather (lieber) than that of a perfect stranger? 19. I should harm myself (mir felber) if I were not to obey him in every respect. 20. A good son should obey his parents rather than follow the advice of a stranger, who (ber) may perhaps do him harm. 21. If you cannot be of any use to me, I hope at least you will not injure me. 22. That certainly (ja) cannot hurt me.

Lesson 52. (Prepositions).

Govern the dative only,

Dat. or Acc.

A. (Dative only.)

- 382. (1) Answering to where? [implying rest in a place.]

 Xuper (out of, without). Bei (near). Binnen (within).

 Mit (with). Nebst (together with).
 - (2) Answering to whence? [denoting motion from a place.]
 Son (from, of). Hus (out of, from).
 - (3) Answering to whither? Rach (to). Zu (to).

B. (Accusative only.)

383. Answering to whither? [implying direction of motion to a place.]

Dutch (through). Für (for). Gegen and wiver (against). Um (about, round).

C. (Accusative or Dative.)

384. Accusative, when motion towards a place, Dative when rest in a place, is to be expressed; or Dative answering to where? Accusative answering to whither?

An (on). Auf (upon), Hinter (behind). In (in, into). Reben (at the side of). Ueber (over, above). Unter (under, below, beneath). Bor (before). Imischen (between).

^{*} Say: 'nobody' (Riemanden), with verb in the affirmative.

- 385. (1) Remember that th' accusative must come After burth, ohne, gegen, wider, um.

 - (3) An, ouf, hinter, neben, in, !
 With almost as many more,
 Ueber, unter, ¿wifden, vor,
 An accusative must take,
 When 'whither?' can the question make.
 But when the question 's made by 'where?'
 The dative case is proper there.
- 386. And is 'to' a thing; zu is 'to' a person. Zu is, however, also used for 'to' a thing, when it is opposed to von. Bon Land zu Land, from land to land: von Haus zu Haus, from house to house. Before the name of a place it is 'at' (= in), zu Hamburg, &c.*
- 387. Some of the prepositions, as we have already seen, coalesce with the article. Thus ans (= an bas): so ins, aufs, burchs, furs, vors, ums, for in bas, &c.: and am, im, beim, vom, zum, for an bem, &c.
- 388. After legen (to lay), segen (to set, to place, to put), pslanzen (to plant), the prepositions an, aus, hinter, in, &c., that take the dative or accusative, govern the accusative case; for the action of these verbs is necessarily accompanied by a motion, though followed by rest. Thus: bas Haupt auss Rissen legen, to lay one's head on the pillow; etwas aus ben Lisch legen or segen, to lay or set any thing on the table.
 - 389. (Eng.) To write in a book. (Germ.) To write into a book.
- 390. So, nehmen (to take) unter ben Arm; but, tragen (to carry) unter bem Arme.

^{* &}quot;But only to denote the locality of persons and personal actions, and when locality is expressed by reference to a person." Becker.

391. Vocabulant. Choud (Bette, bie). Leaves, feliage (Laub, 7). Air (Luft, bie). Pocket (Tasche, bie). Purse (Borje; Gelbbeutel, ber). Naples (Reapel, bas). Steep, steeply (Coof). Rocky wall (Felswand, Felsenwand, follows the gender of Wand, 11). Academy (Rtabemie, bie). Bettle (Flasche, bie). Protent (Borwand, ber). Poplar-tree (Pappel, bie). To make a shrill noise (ichwitten). To wink at any thing (butch bie Finger sehen*). Blowing (Wehen, bas; properly an infinitive). Stove (Dfen). Goodmess (Gute, bie). Bundle (Bündel, bas).

Exercise 52.

392. (a) 1. Der Regen fällt aus ber Wolke. 2. Das Laub fault von ben Baumen. 3. Der Fifch fchwimmt gegen ben Strom. 4. Die Steine fallen aus ber Luft. 5. Er zog einen Brief aus ber Tafche. 6. Er kommt aus ber Stabt. 7. Alle außer + bir haben es gewußt. 8. Sie haben ben Ballon alle gefehen, außer ich. 9. Der Bruber trat nebft t einem Fremben herein. 10. Er hat feine Borfe nebft feiner Uhr verloren. 11. Er hat gu Reapel einen Freund angetroffen. 12. Er fchickt ihn zu feinem Freunde. 13. Er handelt wider Gewiffen. 14. Er geht nach ber Stadt au feinem Bruder. 15. Ueber mir hing fchroff die Feldwand. 16. Er ift auf 22) teiner Akabemie gewesen. 17. Er hat die Flasche bis auf die Balfte ausgetrunken. 18. Diefes biente mir au " einem neuen Bormande, außer der Stadt zu wohnen. 19. Bas im Menschen nicht ift, kommt auch nicht aus ihm. 20. Dein Bruder ift außer Gefahr. 21. Roland ritt hinterm Bater her. 22. Rein: es war bes Windes Wehen, ber durch biese Pappeln schwirrt. 23. Wir wollen freundlich burch die Finger feben. 24. Wir fchreiben etwas in ein Buch, und lefen in einem Buche.

^{*} Litr. 'to look through the fingers,' as one would by holding one's hand before the eyes, but still be conscious of what is going on by looking through between the fingers; consequently to see, but pretend not to see, and thus not resent any body's doings, to wink at.

^{+ =} except. Obs. Außer is also a conjunction, as in the next sentence. When placed before a substantive or pronoun standing at the end of a sentence, the conjunction should be used: e.g. Alle haben es gewußt außer ich (not mir).

^{* &}quot;Rebit marks a combination of persons or things not otherwise connected with one another." Becker.

schrieb bem Ramen an bas (acc.) Brett, wahrend er an bem (dat.) Brette ftand *.

(b) 1. My father hangs the picture against + the wall. 2. The picture is now hanging on 1 the wall. 3. Frederic places himself close to the table. 4. Our neighbour plants a tree behind his house. 5. Charles is standing by the table. 6. Charles places himself before the stove. 7. Have the goodness to put this book on the table. S. He laid the bundle under the table. 9. Where is the bundle? Under the table. 10. The pupil takes his books under his arm. 11. He carries the book under his arm. 12. Put that money into § your pocket. 13. Keep it in ‡ your pocket. 14. I saw him go into § the house. 15. There are 14. I saw him go into § the house. many rooms in 1 that large house. 16. He went out into & the street. 17. I met him in t the street. 18. He stood before met. 19. He placed himself before me δ.

Lesson 53.

(Prepositions, improperly so called. See also 385, 2.)

393. Unweit, vermittelft, währenb, fraft, Laut, vermöge, ungeachtet, Oberholb, and unterhalb, Innerhalb, and außerhalb, Diesfeits, jenfeits, halben, wegen, Statt, and längs, zufolge, tros, Take the genéties: but still With längs, zufolge, tros, it will No blunder be, if you should place For genitive the dative case.

394. Unweit, not far from. **Bermittelf [or mittelff], by means of.** Rraft, by virtue of (some moral cause). Båhrend, during = måhrend des Arieges, during the war.

^{*} That is, for writing 'en a board,' an, with either the datice or accusative, is used.—Grimm's Grammatik, vol. iv. 772. But an einem Brett schreiben is properly 'to write at a board.'

+ An.

‡ With dat.

§ With sec.

Laut, according to (some words, spoken or written). Bermoge, in consequence of (some natural cause).

Sufoige, according to (something that preceded: a doctrine, experiments, assurances, &c. With the dat. it follows its subst.; with the gen. precedes it).

Ungeachtet, notwithstanding.

Langs or entlang, along. (Entlang also takes acc.; it then follows its case.)

Dherhalb, above. Unterhalb, below.

Innerhald, within. Außerhald, without, on the outside of.

Diesseits, on this side.

Ienseits, on your side, on that side.

Balben or halber, on account of, for the sake (implying that it was not for the sake of something else. Solber is used when it follows an abstract subst. or the name of a material without the article).

Megen, on account of.

Statt or anftatt, instead of.

So also um - willen, for the sake of.

395. Obs. Wegen, with the gen. of the personal pronouns, forms meinetwegen, beinetwegen, feinetwegen.

[Note.—The dat. is also found sometimes with unweit, außerhalb, innerhalb, unterhalb, oberhalb, biesfeits, jenfeits, and mabrenb. With entlang it may be used of the extension of something that is at rest: e.g. entlang bem Stranbe liegen bie Butten.]

396. Vocabulary. Court, yard (Hof). Fable (Fabel, bie). Log of wood (Klog). Mill (Mühle). Danube (Donau, bie). Rhine (Rhein). Old age (Alter). Journey (Reife). Testament, will (Testas ment, bas). Proprietor, owner (Eigenthamer, ber). Inn (Wirthshaus, Meli, das). Proprietor, owner Eigentylanter, det.: Inn (Asithebaude, Gasthos, they follow the gender of Haus, 6; Hos). Turnpike (Schlagbaum, det). Grave (Grad). Church (Atche). School-house (Schulhaus). Prohibition (Berbot, das). Footpath (Fußpfad, follows the gender of Psad). Frost (Frost). Information (Bericht, det). Office (Amt). Prison (Gestangnis). Precaution (Borsicht, die). Receipt (Quittung). Estate (Gut, das). Commission request (Auftrag, ber). Constitution, state of health (Gesundheit's Buftand).

`Exercise 53.

397. (a) 1. Das Haus steht jenseits bes Flusses. 2. Das Saus fteht innerhalb bes hofes. 3. Die Schule fteht unweit ber Rirche. 4. Er geht ungeachtet bes Regens fpaziren. 5. Er lebt feinem Stanbe gemaß. 6. Die Frosche in ber Fabel bekamen ftatt eines Konigs einen Rlog. 7. Der Garten liegt außerhalb des Thores.

8. Unterhalb bes Dorfes fieht man eine Muhle. 9. Langs ber Strafe hat man Baume gepflangt. 10. Bir batten schon ben ganzen Tag gejagt ben Balb entlang. Rachft ber Donau ift ber Rhein ber grofte Aluf in Deutschland. 12. Man ehrt ihn feines Alters megen. 13. Er ift bes franken Rindes halben zu Saufe geblieben. 14. 3ch habe feinetwegen eine weite Reife gemacht. 15. Ich befehle es dir, fraft meines Amtes. 16. Er ift, vermoge bes Teftaments, Gigenthumer bes Gutes. 17. Man hat ihn trot feiner Borficht betrogen. 18. Laut ber Quittung haft bu bas Gelb bezahlet. 19. Laut ber Urfunde bin ich Eigenthumer bes Gutes. 20. Deinem Auftrage zufolge habe ich bas Gut gefauft. 21. Er will ungeachtet feines geschwächten Gesundheit's Buftanbes bie Reise antreten. 22. Er handelt bem Gefete guwider. 23. Er hat fich vermittelft eines Seiles aus bem Kenster gelaffen. 24. Bufolge ficherer Nachricht, ift ber Ronig zurudgekehrt. 25. Es fieht ber Rirche gegenüber.

(b) 1. He is going to take a walk notwithstanding the violent wind. 2. The inn is not far from the turnpike. 3. There is no perfect good on this side the grave. 4. Not-far from the church stands the school-house. 5. The garden is situated [say: lies] between two houses. 6. Many things may be changed * within a year. 7. He is a rich man in spite of the considerable loss. 8. They did it against an express prohibition. 9. Along the river oside there is a foot-path. 10. I must drive to town to-day, notwithstanding the frost. 11. According to certain information he has gained a glorious victory. 12. According to the king's command the troops must march. 13. By virtue of his office he has put the impostor into prison. 14. The royal castle is on the other side the river.

^{*} Say: 'can change themselves' (fonnen fich anbern).

Lesson 54.

(Reflexive Verbs.)

398. Many verbs that were originally transitive, are always used with the accusative case of a reflexive pronoun (mid), myself; bid, thyself; fid, himself, herself, itself, themselves, oneself), and express an intransitive notion.

> Sid fremen, to rejoice. Sich weigern, to refuse.

- 399. Many transitive verbs that are not always used. with a reflexive pronoun, are sometimes so used, and thus obtain a very different meaning from that which they have as transitive verbs. These are also to be considered as reflexive verbs.
 - Sich schicken, (to send oneself =) to suit (with prep. zu).
 - Gid fügen, (to join itself =) to adapt eneself.
 - Sid milmen, (to praise eneself =) to beast (with gen.).

 - Sich zutragen, (to convey oneself to =) to happen.

 Stellen fich, (to place oneself =) {(1) to pretend} (often with als ob).
 - 400. Sich ftellen [= simulare], to pretend that what is not, in. Sich verftellen [= dissimulare], to dissemble; to pretend that what is, is not.
- 401. Transitive verbs are often used in the reflexive form to express the notion of the verb intransitively or even passively.
 - Sid bebeden, (to cover itself,) to be covered, to become covered. Sich breben, (to turn itself,) to turn.
- 402. Obs. The accusative and sometimes the dative plural of the personal pronouns are often used reciprocally (= 'one another,' 'each other'), denoting that each of the subjects spoken of does the action to the other or others, or entertains the feeling towards the other or others.
 - Die Knaben schlagen sich, the boys fight one with
 - Sie hassen sich, they hate one another.
 - Sie gleichen fich, they are like one another.

403. [Caution.] In fich benfen (to think to one-self), fich vorstellen (to conceive), sich einbilden (to imagine, to fancy), the sich is the dative case.

The conjugation has nothing peculiar.

404. Obs. Such verbs as fith matthen (to wash oneself) must not be considered reflexive verbs. The notion of washing is here quite unaltered, only the person washed is also the person who washes.

405. (Eng.) He pretends to be sick.
(Germ.) He places himself sick.
(Er fiellt fich frant.)

406. (Eng.) To leave a thing undecided.

(Germ.) To let a thing be placed down there.

(Etwas babin gestellt sein lassen.)

407. Vocabulary. Fortunately (zum Glüdt; or glüdticher Weise, gen.). Authority (Ansehen, bas). Waistoat (Weste). To rear (sich bäumen). To disagree (sich entzweien). Trisse (Kleinigkeit). Astanishment (Erstaunen, bas). Fork (Gabel, 13). Companion (Gessausen, bas). Wesdew (Wiese). Bravery (Bravour, Aapserkeit, bie). To turn (sich breihen). To touch, intrans. (sich berühren). To be ashamed (sich sich men).

Exercise 54.

408. (a) 1. Zum Süds fügte sich's, daß diesen Abend niemand kam. 2. Es fügte sich, daß er gerade in dem Augendlick hereinkam. 3. Es hat sich ein großes Unglück zugetragen. 4. Was hat sich zugetragen? 5. Du rühmst dich deines Ausehens. 6. Er weigerte sich zu kommen. 7. Er stellt sich, als ob er nichts sieht. 8. Er stellt sich, als ob er nichts sieht. 8. Er stellt sich, als sahe er nichts. 9. Er stellt sich mur fo. 10. Der himmel bedeckt sich mit Wolken. 11. Der Schlüssel hat sich gefunden. 12. Die Erdeurehet sich. 13. Soll der Frevel sich vor unsern Augen vollenden? 14. Die Kreise beruhren sich. 15. Nie hätten wir uns sehen sollen. 16. Die Brüder gleich en

^{*} If transitive: to separate, to alienate.

- fich. 17. Sie reichen sich * bie Hande. 18. Der Rock schieft sich nicht zur Weste. 19. Karl schiedt sich gar nicht zu bem Amte. 20. Sie schiefen sich zusammen. 21. Er stellt sich krank. 22. Das Pferd baumt sich.
 - 23. Rleinigkeiten entzweien oft Freunde (active).
 - 24. Durch Rleinigkeiten werden oft Freunde entzweit (passive).
 - 25. Freunde entzweien sich oft über Kleinigkeiten (reflexive).
- 26. Stellen Sie sich mein Erstaunen vor=! 27. Er sbilbet sich ein=, ein großer Mann zu sein. 28. Das kann ich mir einbilben!
- (b) 1. A strange accident has happened. 2. He is said to boast both of his strength and wisdom. 3. The dogs are biting one another. 4. Would that we had never seen each other! 5. Do not boast of your wisdom. 6. The lost book is found. 7. He pretends not to hear us. 8. He pretended not to observe oit. 9. They despise each other. 10. He pretends to be pious. 11. He pretends to have changed his opinion. 12. He is ashamed of his companions †. 13. He seems to be ashamed of himself. 14. Not only is he an impostor, but he pretends to be an honest and devout oman. 15. His countenance does not suit his speech. 16. He pretended to be on the point of relating a strange adventure. 17. He may very likely have left the question undecided. 18. The meadows are becoming covered with flowers. 19. He refused to help the poor. 20. It so happened that he arrived the same day. 21. He rejoices in (uber) the happiness of his neighbour. 22. He knows well how to dissemble. 23. He boasts of his bravery. 24. You must not refuse to help your neighbour. 25. It oso happened that he was just setting-off. 26. He pretends o to be sincere.

^{*} Or einanber.

⁺ Sau: 'of his company.'

Lesson 55.

(Conjunctions that introduce subordinate sentences.)

A. (Place.)

409. Wo ('where:' answering to ba, 'there'). Bohin ('whither:' answering to bahin, 'thither'). Boher ('whence:' answering to baher, 'thence').

[Note.—Wo may of course refer to bahin or baher.]

B. (Time).

410. (1) Point of Time. a) Rachbem (after).

β) Wenn, alè, ba (when); so wie, so balb (as soon as).

γ) Bevor, the (until, before).

(2) Duration of Time. a) Seithem (since).

 β) Inbem (the moment that); inbeβ, inbeffen, währenb (whilst); fo lange (as long as).

y) Bis (until, till).

C. (Cause.)

411. Da (as, since); weil (because); intem (in consequence of; through; from or by with participial substantive).

D. (Condition.)

- 412. a) Wenn (if); falls [or im Falls] in case; and sometimes wo, wofern, fo.
 - β) Benn nicht (if not); wofern nicht (if not). Also the circumlocution, es sei benn daß (unless).

E. (Manner.)

- 413. a) Indem (mostly translated by English participle), fo--bas (so--that; as to [with infin.]).
 - β) (Comparative sentences of manner), [0—wit ([so]—as): mit (as): als ob, als menn ('as if,' with subj. or conditional); als, with subj. or conditional, verb before nom.

F. (Proportion.)

- 414. a) Between the degree in which a cause exists and its consequence
 - β) Equal intensity: So (with adj.)—als or mic (and sometimes als mic); fo—als (so—as; as—as); fo (the als being omitted).

- γ) Se—besto, or je—je ('the—the,' with two comparatives);

 zu with adj.—als baß (with subj. or conditional) or zu
 or um zu (with inf.); je—nachbem (according as, in
 proportion as); nachbem—nachbem (in proportion as).
 - G. (Concession.)
- 415. Obichon, obwol (or obwohl), obgleich; wenn-ichon; wenngleich; menn-auch (although).
 - 416. The order of a subordinate accessory sentence is the following:

 Conjunction. Subject. (Object Predicate). Copula*.

 After my son to college gone was.
 - 417. a) In the compound tenses of verbs, the auxiliary verb takes the place of the copula, and the participle or infinitive the place of the predicate. (b) In the simple tenses of verbs, the verb takes the last place, being equivalent to both predicate and copula. (c) The subordinate or remoter object precedes the nearer object (i.e. the accusative case).

418.	C	mjunction.	Subject.	(Object	Predicate).	Copula.
	a)	after	he	the letter	brought	ĥad
•	b)	after	he	0	o	died
		since	you	him	see	will
		whilst	he	0	in the town	is
	o)	after	he to m	y father the le	tter brought	had.

Lesson 56.

A. (Adverbial Sentences of Place.)

419. Vocabulart. Carrion, exercase (Nas). To collect, to gather, to assemble, intrans. (sammeln sich). Coward (Feige [i.e. Mann], ber). Safe, secure (sicher). To shake, te waver (wanten). To be wanting (sehen). Faith, belief (Slaute, 21, b). Plant [growing in a garden] (Gartengewächst, das). The rest, the others (die übrigen). All over, at every place (überall. Duty (Pflicht). Swallow (Schwalke). Food (Rahrung). Love (Liebe). To spring-up (auf-gehen; gehen, ging, gegangen)). Vine (Wein, Weinstod, ber). To shourish (gebethen). Climate (Klima, das). Light (Licht, das). To remember (erinnern sich). Last [the last time] (zulest). To persecute (versolgen). To dwell (aufhalten sich). To draw (ziehen, metaph. for to travel: ziehen, zog, gezogen).

+ Litr. 'garden-plant.'

[•] For the meaning of these terms see "English Grammar for Chassical Schools." The conjunctions in the preceding lists introduce supresses in which this order is observed.

In case the pupil should find difficulty in determining the declession of any neur in translating the English portion of the following Exercises into German, the remarks preceding the English-German part of the Index at the end, if referred to, will assist him.

Exercise 55.

- 420. (a) 1. Wo das Aas ist, da sammeln sich die Abler.

 2. Der Feige droht nur*, wo er sicher ist. 3. Alles wanket, wo der Glaube sehlt. 4. Er ist nicht da, wo du ihn zu sinden hoffest. 5. Er ist nicht da, wohin er kommen sollte. 6. Der Gärtner pslanzt die Bäume dahin, wo sie den übrigen Gartengewächsen am wenigsten schaden.

 7. Du wirst hingehen, wo kein Tag mehr scheint. 8. Nicht überall, wo Wasser ist, sind Frosche; aber wo man Frosche hort, ist Wasser. 9. Gehen Sie, wohin die Pslicht Sie ruft. 10. Die Schwalbe zieht dahin, wo sie ihre Nahrung sindet.
- (b) 1. I saw my friend where I did not expect him. 2. Every animal likes to live where it finds its food. 3. Where one sows love, there joy springs-up. 4. The vine flourishes there only, where the climate is temperate. 5. He ran to the place (bahin) where he saw a light. 6. He did not see where † the road was bad. 7. I don't remember where † I saw him last. 8. Wild animals like 40 to dwell where they are not persecuted. 9. Where might (Gendlt) has right, there right has little might (Prov.).

Lesson 57.

B. (Adverbial Clauses, relative to Time. See 410.)

421. Vocabulary. To be at work (bei ber Arbeit fein ?). To fly, to take refuge (flüchten). Scaffolding (Gerüft). To pull or take down.

^{*} The adverb ba (or babin, babin) is often not expressed in the principal sentence, but is always to be understood.

[†] The 'where' (wa) is here an interrogative advente: 'where?'

To set to work, or go to work, an bie Arbeit gehau.

(abereißen; reißen, riß, gerissen). Structure (Bau, ber). Success (Erfolg, ber). To be pusillanimous, to tremble (3agen). To begin (anfangen; fangen, sing, gefangen). At home [= in our country] (im Innern). To direct or turn one's looks to (bie Blicke richten auf). Foreign countries (Ausland, bas; sing. litr. the out land). To fall off (abesallen; sallen, siel, gefallen). To return (zurücketeyren). To fall off (nachegeben). Immortality (Unsterblichseit). To think upon (nachenten; benten, bachte, gebacht). Soul (Seele). To spring, to rise hastily (ausspringen; springen, sprang, gesprungen). Couch (Lager, bas). Sea (See, bie). To flash (bligen, strahsen). Little chamber (Kämmerchen or Kämmerlein, Stübchen, bas). Ice (Eisbecke, bie).

Exercise 56.

- 422. (a) a) [Point * of Time.] 1. Nachbem bie Sonne aufgegangen war, =reiste ber Vater ab=.
- (a) 2. Wenn ihn einer fragte, so gab er ihm keine Antwort. 3. Ich werde schreiben, wenn ich Zeit habe.

 4. Ich war schon bei der Arbeit, als (or da) du noch schliefest. 5. Als die Sonne ausging, reiste der Vater ab.

 6. Die Nachtigall sang, als (or da) die Bäume blüheten.

 7. Sie singt eben jett, da (not als) die Bäume blühen.

 8. So wie der Feind kam, slüchteten wir. 9. Das Gerüste wird nieder gerissen, so bald der Bau vollendet ist. 10. Jett da (not als) der Ersolg gesichert ist, (da) = sängst du an= zu zagen. 11. Nun Friede im Innern ist, können wir die Blicke auf das Ausland richten.
 - γ) 12. Ich komme nicht, bevor du mich rufest. 13. Das Obst =fällt oft ab=, ehe es reif ist.
 - 423. (b) 1. After the ice was broken, the boy returned home. 2. After he saw his error, he gave-in.

Indem and mit represent one event as quite simultaneous with another. Da = 'at the moment that;' als = 'at the time that.' Hence 'now that' is jest or nun ba (not als); but for nun ba, nun alone is generally used: just as we say, 'now you are come' for 'now

that you are come.

Da, als, wenn, wie, are relative adverbs: and relate to a demonstrative adverb expressed or understood in the principal sentence. Da, als, wie, refer to da: wenn to bann.—Indem, indess, indessen, nadhem, seithem (all of which are compounded with a preposition and ber), and seit, wayrend, were formerly followed by das [= 'when that,' 'whilst that,' &c.]. Weil for which diemeil was formerly used, is properly the substantive Weile; just as 'while,' 'the while,' in English.

3. When any one saw him, he blushed. 4. I will learn music when I have any taste for it. 5. The birds sing now that the beautiful spring-weather has begun. 6. Now that I am old, I like to live in peace and quietness. 7. Now that I am grown wise, I like to think upon the immortality of the soul. 8. Now that I am old, I do not judge hastily. 9. She sprang joyfully from her couch, when (als) the first morninglight* flashed over the sea upon + the window of her little-chamber. 10. Now that I am here, I will call upon my dear old friend. 11. Your parents were thinking of your future happiness, whilst you were in your earliest childhood. 12. I shall not go a hunting, before my friend comes. 13. The scaffolding must not be taken away, before the building is completed. 14. As t we approached, the enemy fled. 15. Now that he is dead, all men are beginning to praise him.

Lesson 58.

B. continued. (Duration of Time. See 410, 2.)

424. Vocabulary. To build (bauen, bauete, gebauet or gebaut). Cave, den (Höhle). To melt (Imelgen, Immolg, geimmolgen). Illness (Krantheit). To perceive (etblicten). To disappear (verschwinden, verschwand, verschwand). To turn supon any thing supon etwas richten, as one's looks). Part, portion (Kheil). Abundance, luxnry (Ueberfluß, ber). Counsellor (Rechtsgelehrte sperieus). To take sany body or thing to be (halten str). The contrary, the reverse (Gegentheil, bas). To prove (beweisen; etweisen, etweisen). To find oneself deceived (sich getäussch stweisen). To die (sterben, starb, gestorben). To look upon (anssehn; sehen, sah, gessehn). To gaze at (anstaunen, anschauen). Vision (Erschenung). Bailist (kanboogt). Day-labourer (Kagelbhrer). Secretly (heimlich). To approach (nähern sich, with dat). Presumptuous (eingebübet). Pony, little horse (Pserden, bas). To condemn (verurtheisen). To grow pale (erbleichen, erblich, erblichen sahe to live). To come to the conviction (sich überzeugen).

[•] Das Morgenroth ('the morning-red').

⁺ Say : 'against' (gegen). # Go wie.

Exercise 57.

- 425. (a) a) 1. Seitdem man Häuser und Städte bauen: konnte, wohnte man nicht mehr in Höhlen. 2. Ich habe ihn nicht gesehen, seitdem (or seit) er von der Krankheit genesen ist.
- (a) 3. Wer (who?) ternt nicht, ind em er lehet? 4. Der Schner schmitzt, ind em er fällt. 5. Ind em (or wie) ich ihn erblickte, mar er auch wieder verschwunden. 6. Ind est (or ind ssein) en die Zeitungen lieset, will ich einen Brief schreiben. 7. Während ich schreibe, magst du lesen. 8. Während daß wir unser Auge auf die Zeit richten, ist schon wieder ein Theil derselben verschwunden. 9. Set sleißig, weil du noch jung dist. [EF Weil, as a conjunction of time, is rather antiquated.]
 - Snbtß, like 'whilst' in English, or 'whilst all the time,' is sometimes used adversatively: that is, it points out the co-existence of states or actions that should not co-exist.
- 10. Er lebt im Ueberfluß, indeß Beffere * barben.
- γ) 11. Der Rechtsgelehrte halt jeden für einen ehrlichen Mann, dis das Gegentheil erwiesen ist. [If the principal sentence expresses a command or purpose, dis will be followed by the subjunctive.] Rarte, dis er komme.
- 426. (b) 1. I have not seen him since his son died.

 2. We have not spoken a word together, since I found myself deceived. 3. As I looked at him, he suddenly grew-pale. 4. Whilst we are answering the letter, which we have just received, you may read the news-paper. 5. The vision disappears, whilst we gaze at it. 6. He is a rich bailiff, whilst better men are day-labourers. 7. Who does not secretly laugh, as he approaches the presumptuous little artist? 8. Whilst we are living in luxury, the old citizen is dying from ant. 9. Whilst he possesses a splendid estate, his

^{*} Menschen or Leute is understood.

poor relation has not even a cottage to dwell in *. Io. We must consider him innocent till he is condemned. II. Wait till he returns. 12. Whilst we make merry here, my dear brother is perhaps in great danger at sea †. 13. I have never liked him, since I found out what sort of ‡ man he is. 14. Since (whilst) we get a living in England, why should we go to Africa? 15. You may not teach until you have learnt. 16. Wait here until he comes. 17. I shall not do it, until I have come to the conviction that he is innocent. 18. Don't judge him unti lyou know more about § the matter.

Lesson 59.

C. (Causal Adverbial Sentences. See 411.)

427. Da is 'since,' 'as.' With ha we assume the fact asserbed, and draw an inference from it: i.e. ha denotes a reason. We'll denotes a motive or a real cause. With indem (= in bem, 'in the') a cause is expressed in an indefinite way; often where we should use the participial substantive: By playing high (indem er both spielte) he lost much money.

428. Obs. A reason may often be expressed in English by a participle: e.g. Feeling ashamed (= since [ba] I felt ashamed) I did so and so.

429. Vocabulary. Leg (Bein). To substitute, to make, to establish [any thing] in the place of [any thing] (ersegn). To accomplish (ersulen). Duty (Pflicht). Whole, entirely (ganz). Nothing rational or of a rational nature or tendency (nichts Bernünstiges). To determine upon (vorsegn sich). To freeze [of objects] (ersulenen, ersulenen, ersu

^{* &#}x27;To dwell in,' zur Wohnung or zum Obbach (litr. for or as a dwelling or skelter).

dwelling or skelter).
+ Say: 'upon' (auf) ber See.

[#] Was für ein.

[§] Bon (of) ber Sache.

qver, independently of so and so (ohnehin). To be accustomed or used (gewöhnt fein). To be offensive, to have an unpleasant effect upon (humiter fein). Deformity, misshapen form (Mißgestalt, bie). Inefficacy (Unwirksamsteit). Obsolete (veraltet). So [= in the same degree] ([0). Discord, discordant sound or note (Miston, bet). Gentleman (herr). American (Americaner). Language (Sprache). English (english). Visit (Besuch). Lie (Lüge). Worse (årger). To entangle, to complicate (verwicksin). Roman (römisch). Emperor (Kaiser). To amuse [oneself] (belustigen sich). Law (Gesch). Advantage (Bortheil, ber). Ready (sertig). To fall into poverty (in Armuth gerathen; geriefh, gerathen). Consusion (Berwirrung). Efficient (wirksam).

Exercise 58.

430. (a) 1. Man hat ihn nicht gern 20, weil er an= maßend ift. 2. Er kann nicht geben, weil er ein Bein gebrochen hat. 3. Ich muß mich noch ftets als bein Schuldner betrachten, indem ich meine Pflicht noch nicht ganglich erfult *. 4. Es giebt Menschen, Die gar nicht irren, weil fie fich nichts Vernunftiges vorseben t. 5. Da bie Baume erfroren find, muß es febr kalt fein. 6. Gin Sabicht schoß auf eine fingende Nachtigall: " ba du fo lieb= lich fingst," sprach er, "wie vortrefflich wirst du schmecken!" 7. Da bas Auge ohnehin gewöhnt ift alles zu feben, fo ift ihm eine Miggestalt nicht so zuwider, als bem Dhre ein Mißton. 8. Da ber Herr mir als ein Amerikaner vor= gestellt wurde t, =redete ich ihn in englischer Sprache (or im englischen) an=. 9. Indem er boch spielte, verlor er viel 10. Er bleibt zu Sause, indem er einen Besuch 11. Immer ftraft fich die Luge felbst, indem sie sich immer årger verwickelt. [Sometimes 'after' may imply 'a cause,' though it only expresses subsequence in time.] 12. Maximilian glaubte die Constitu= tion vertreten zu burfen, nachbem er romischer Raifer aeworden war. 13. Seitbem man die Unwirksamkeit

^{*} The auxiliary verb, hat, is omitted, as is very frequently the case in subordinate and relative clauses.

⁺ Litr. 'to set before' (= 'to put oneself as a task,' or 'make any thing one's task').

[#] Construe it with the present participle.

biefes veralteten Gesethes eingefehen, hat man baffelbe burch ein neues bei weitem wirksameres ersett.

(b) 1. He is not liked 29, because he is considered 47 a hypocrite. 2. He is not liked 29, because he is miserly. 3. He may now amuse himself, because he has worked hard. 4. As the weather has become so mild, the migratory-birds will soon appear. 5. Since you are so brave, you must not stay at home when the enemy appears. 6. This law appears to be unjust: since it is obut fair that the industrious oman should enjoy the fruits of his labour, let him have that advantage. 7. Since it is of great importance that every othing should be ready to-morrow, I will go home immediately. 8. Since the roads are covered with snow, I shall not go a walking to-day. 9. He is not liked, because he is thought sentimental; but he is not that in the least 35. 10. He has fallen into poverty by 68 playing for money. 11. The artist being introduced to me as a foreigner, I spoke to him in French. 12. All was confusion because (say: 'after') the laws were despised. 13. Since it is all over with us 69, let us try to save the others.

Lesson 60.

D. (Condition.)

- 431. (1) The preposition 'if' is often omitted, the conditional clause must then take the interrogative order (i.e. the verb must precede the subject). (2) A clause in the imperative mood is often equivalent to a conditional clause, as in English. (3) A participle, in agreement with the subject, or put absolutely with a substantive, is also sometimes equivalent to a conditional clause. The case absolute is in German the accusative.
 - 432. [So the forms (which are of frequent occur-

rence) alles erwogen ('all things considered'); bies obserausgesett ('this being presupposed'); bies abserednet ('this not being taken into account'); bies ausgenommen ('except this,' with the exception of this')].

433. Vocabulary. Air (Euft). To till (bestellen). Skin (Fest). Cat (Rage). Fiery (seurig). Shine (Edimmer). To allow to see, to show (sepen lassen). In the dark (im Dunseln). Thief (Dieb, bet). To refuse (weigern sid). To force, to compel (zwingen). Rest, tranquillity (Rube, bie). To comfort (erquiden). To sight, to combat (lampsen). Valiantly, like a knight (ritterlid). To be pleased, to rejoice (seuen sid), i. e. to rejoice ansels). To be guilty (schulbig sein). To deprive of (entziehen, entzog, entzogen). Need (Noth, bie). In [proper] time (in ber Zeit). Lassitude, weariness (Mübigseit). To throw off (abmersen; mersen, mars, geworsen). To comquer, to overcome (siegen). To be vanquished (unsertiegen). To separate (trennen). To search after (aussinden). Moderation (Müsigung). To dine with any body (bei jemanden zu Mittag spesen, i.e. to eat at noon with any body). Possibly (möglidjermeise*). If possible (mo möglid). To meditate treason (Berrath spinnen, i.e. to spin treachery). To dissolve (lösen, aussibsen). Ties (Bande; see 4).

Exercise 59.

484. (a) 1. Wenn bu heute sparst, so wirst du morgen keinen Mangel leiben. 2. Wenn einem Menschen die Luft entzogen wird, so muß er sterben. 3. Wenn der Landmann seinen Acker nicht gehörig bestellt, so kann er keine gute Ernte erwarten. 4. Das Fell der Kahe läßt einen seurigen Schimmer sehen, wenn man es im Dunkeln streichelt. 5. Der Lügner ist möglicherweise noch schlechter als der Dieb. 6. Wosern er sich weigert, zwingen wir ihn. 7. Jeder will es gern thun, falls er nur durfte. 8. Falls er fragt, antworte nicht. 9. Sieb mir, wosern es dir gefällt, des Leben's Ruh' und Freuden. 10. So du mich schlägst, schlage ich dich wieder. 11. Der Wein

^{*} Not mo möglid; [litr. (where =) if possible], the Latin 'si ull' ratione sieri' or 'efficere potest,' although Beise (= auf eine Beise, 'any how') answers to 'ull' ratione;' thus where the Latin idiom is 'possible in any manner,' the English use 'in any easy,' and the German, 'in any place (upo);' which two latter appressed in some degree.

erquicket ben Menschen, so man ihn mäßig trinket (or genießet).

- 12. Go bu kampfest ritterlich, Freut bein alter Nater sich.
- 435. 13. (1) Ift er schuldig, so nuns er gestraft werben.
 14. Ware ich an 10 seiner Stelle gewesen, so hatte ich anders gehandelt. 15. Wird dem Menschen die Lust entzogen, so muß er sterben. 16. (2) Entzieh einem Menschen die Lust, so muß er sterben (or und er stirbt). 17. Spinnt er Verrath, Verrath lös't alle Bande. (Schiller.) 18. Kause in der Zeit, so hast du in der Noth. (Prov.) 19. (3) Die Müdigseit abgeworfen, bald werden wir nach Hause kommen.
 20. Mich ihm anschließend, werde ich siegen; aber getrennt von ihm, werde ich unterliegen. 21. Wenn ihr nicht sleißig studirt, so werdet ihr nie gelehrte Männer werden.
 22. Wosern du nicht sogleich gehorchest, wirst du gestraft.
 28. Ich muß ihn, wo möglich, heute noch sprechen; wo nicht, werde ich ihn morgen ausstucken.
- (b) 1. If he is ogone a hunting, we must return home. 2. If the battle is won, we must use our victory with moderation. 3. In case he comes, invite him to stay. 4. If he has read it in the newspapers. I fear that it is true. 5. If he were pious, he would not speak like a hypocrite. 6. If the snow has covered the road, I will not go-out. 7. If he is a hypocrite, I shall not esteem him. 8. As-far-as he is a hypocrite, nobody estaems him. 9. In case he goes out a hunting *, invite his sister to dime with 15) us. 10. The hypecrite is possibly, even worse than the thief. 11. Be pious, and you will be happy. 12. Be honest, and all good men will assist yeu. 13. I must write the letter to-day, if possible; if mot I will call upon my friend to-morrow. 14. With this exception, all is now ready. 15. If he has not finished his task, he is to be severely reproved.

^{*} Insert the German fo, and invert the subsequent clause.

Lesson 61.

E. (Sentences denoting manner.)

- 436. An adverbial sentence of manner, with intem, is often to be translated by the English active participle in ing.
 - 437. (Eng.) He bade me good bye, shaking me warmly by the hand.
 - (Germ.) He bade me good bye, whilst (indem) he shook me warmly by the hand.
- 438. Comparative adverbial sentences of manner have the relative adverb of manner wie; the demonstrative adverb so [= ita: Eng. so] being expressed or understood in the principal sentence.
- 439. Vocabulart. In the most friendly manner (aufs freunblichste). Anger, vexation (Berbruß, ber). Every body (jebermann). Contempt, scorn (Betachtung). To utter cries, to scream (fdreien). To suffer pains (Schmerzen leiden). Tale, story (Seschichte, bie). To live to see [or be present at] any thing (eine Sache erleben). To look (ausseben; sab sausse). To introduce (vorstellen; stellte [vor], vorgestellt). Incorrectly (unrichtig). Cowardly (feige). Truth (Wahrbeit). Minutely (genau). The next day (ber folgende Aag sif adverbially used: am solgenden Lage)). Four (vier). Sound sleep (gesunder or sester Schas). Lad (Bursche). To take something sin the shape of sood] (etwas zu sich nehmen). To remove the cloth [clear the table] (abbecten). At the same time (zugleich: zu gleicher Zeit).

Exercise 60.

440. (a) 1. (a) Er nahm Abschieb, indem er mir auß freundlichste die hand brudte. 2. Er sah ihn an, indem sich in seinen Bliden sein Berdruß ausdrückte. 3. Er spricht so, daß ihn jedermann verstehen kann. 4. Er handelt so, daß er Berachtung verdient. 5. Er spricht so, wie er benkt. 6. (3) Er handelt so, wie er spricht. 7. Der Knabe schreit, als ob er Schmerzen leide*. 8. Der Knabe schreit, als ob er Schmerzen litte †. 9. Er er=

^{*} i.e. 'He probably does suffer,' see 247, 248. + i.e. 'As he would cry, if he actually did suffer.'

zählte bie Geschichte, als wenn er fie felbst erlebt hatte. 10. Er fieht aus, als sei er unschuldig. 11. Er fieht aus, als ware er trant.

(b) 1. He writes as he thinks. 2. He introduced me to his friend, expressing, however, his vexation by his looks. 3. The boy looks as if he were laughing. 4. He sat as if he were thinking of past times (genitive). 5. It is impossible, that he should think as he speaks. 6. He speaks so incorrectly that nobody can understand him. 7. He looks as if he were speaking the truth. 8. He relates every othing as minutely, as if he had been present. French artist is so presuming, that nobody likes him. 10. He took leave, inviting me in the most friendly manner to dine with him the next day. 11. Moreover, he slept as if he had had no sound sleep for * four weeks. 12. He said I might take it, keeping † it all the while in his hand. 13. He asked me to sit down to take something, ordering + at the same time his servants to remove the cloth.

Lesson 62.

F. (Proportion.)

441. (Eng.) He is too [positive adj.] to do this.

(Germ.) He is [comp. adj.] than that he should would like must would venture to do this.

Er ist [comp. adj.] als bas er bieses thun mother mother mother

burfte.

^{*} Say: 'since four weeks' (feit).

⁺ To be translated by indem er, with verb in the imperfect.

442. This idiom is very nearly like the Latin, heec minora sunt, quam ut cerni possint: but in German (1) the present conditional is used even when the principal verb is in the present tense; and (2) since the German language has so many auxiliaries, we must consider whether the thing not done is one that the person cannot, ought not, need not, would not like, or is not permitted to do.

Thus: He is too old to work on the roads (= he cannot do it). (=he would not like to do. He is too generous to insult me or he would not do it). It is too hot for me to walk so far (= I should not like, or I could not).

He is too young to walk in the \ (= he is not permitted). town by himself

443. (Eng.) To be in the right.

(Germ.) To have right. You are perfectly in the right. (Sie haben vollkommen Recht.)

444. Vocabulary. Sky (himmel). To spend (ausgeben; geben, gab, gegeben). Fast (ichnell). Spirited (belebt, muthig). Carpenter gao, gegeben). Fast (ichneil). Spirited (view), muthg). Carpenter (Zimmermann). Pain (Schmerz). To ask for (forbern, verlangen). By it (babei). Liberal (freigebig). Sand (Sand). The sooner the better (je eber je lieber). Stork (Storch). The longer the better (je långer befto [or je] lieber). To reach (reichen). As often (fo oft). Right (Recht, bas). Tired (mûbe). Means (Mittel, bas). Vice (Laster). Fall (Fall). Desence (Vertheibigung). Falsehood (Unvahrheit). Nation (Nation, bie; Vols [folk]). Spectator (Jusquar, ber). Daring action (Waggstütt, bas). To live expensively (vieten Aufwand machen, i.e. to make much expenditure). Offering, sacrifice (Opfer, bas). To thaw (thauen). Magnitude, greatness (Große).

Exercise 61.

- 445. (a) a) Between the degree in which a cause exists, and its consequence.] 1. Es war so falt, baß bie Bluffe zufroren. 2. Er ift fo schwach, baß er nicht sprechen kann.
- B) 3. (1) [Equality of intensity.] So oft ber Frühling wiederkehrt, (fo oft) erscheinen bie Storche.

- 4. .(2) So oft als der Frühling misderkehrt, erscheinen die Storche.
- 5. (3) Die Storche erscheinen so oft, als der Frühling wiederkeit.
- 6. (1) Someit das Auge reichte, (so weit) saben wir mur Meer.
- 7. (2) So west als das Auge reichte, sahen wir nur Meer.
 - 8. (3) Bir fahen nur Meer, fo weit das Auge reichte.
- 9. (1) So schon die Augend ist, so hablich tst bas
- 10. (2) Das Lafter ift fo hafilich, als die Augend schon ift.
- 11. So lange er reifet, ist er gefund. 12. Er tanzt, so oft er kann. 13. Komm' sobald bu kannst.
- γ) 14. Je långer ich mit ihm bekannt bin, desto lieber wird er mir. 15. Je mehr er hat, desto mehr will er. 16. Je höher der Baum, je tiefer der Fall. (Prov.) 17. Je mehr er hat, je mehr will er haben.
- 18. Er ist zu schwach zu seiner Vertheidigung. 19. Er ist zu schwach, als daß er seine Vertheidigung versuche or versuchte; or um seine Vertheidigung zu versuchen.
- 20. (1) Diefer Mann ift zu alt, als bag er noch arbeiten konnte.
- 21. (2) Er ift zu ehrlich, als daß er eine Unwahrheit sagen follte.
- 22. (3) Die Zeit ist ein zu ebles Gut, als baß man fie leichtfinnig vergeuben durfte.
- 23. (4) Er ist zu schwach seine Bertheidigung zu unternehmen. 24. Er ist zu redlich, um eine Unwahrsheit zu sagen.
- 8) 25. Jebe Nation spricht, nachdem sie benkt; und benkt, nachdem sie spricht. 26. Die Gerzen ber Zuschauer H 2

waren von ben verschiedensten Empfindungen bewegt, je nachbem sie bei ber Große bes Bagestuds, ober bei ber Große des Mannes verweilten.

e) 27. Er macht größeren Auswand, als er machen sollte. [In North Germany wie is regularly used after comparatives: ber Schwan ist schwer, wie bie Sans.—The old form was benn, which is sometimes found even now.]

28. Meine Predigt ist süßer benn Honig. (Luther.)

29. Der Friede Gottes ist höher benn alle Bernunst. (Dr. Nitzsch.)

30. Gehorsam ist besser benn Opfer.

[Obs. Als after a negative = but.] 31. Ich habe keinen gesehen als bich. 32. Er hat nichts als Wasser getrunken.

(b) 1. It is so cold, that I shall stay at home all day. 2. It is so warm, that the ice has begun to thaw. 3. As often as spring returns, the migratory birds appear. 4. As far as the eye reaches, I do not see a single enemy. 5. I see nothing but sand, as far as my eyes reach. 6. As far as the eye reached, there was nothing to be seen but water and sky. 7. Return as soon as you can. 8. The girl is as industrious as her brother is lazy. 9. The more he has, the more he spends. 10. The deeper the stream, the more quietly does it flow. 11. The more spirited the horse, the better I like to ride him. 12. This poem is too long for me to learn it all by heart. 13. The boy is too honest to tell a falsehood. 14. This pain is too great for a little boy to bear. 15. He says that he has taken nothing but a single glass of very old wine. 16. He said that he had seen nobody but the old general. 17. The older he grows, the more stupid he seems to become. 18. The more I do for that poor relation, the more he asks for. 19. As far as I understand the matter, you are perfectly in the right. 20. The sooner he leaves my house the better. 21. You are too liberal ever to

grow rich. You may grow rich or poor by it, accordingly as you may act. 22. I am too old for * anything-of-that-kind (bergleichen). 23. His pupils left him more stupid by half than when they came to him.

Lesson 63.

G. Concession. (Although, even if. See 399.)

446. (Eng.) Whoever he (may) be.

(Germ.) Who he also may be (wer er auch fei, or fein mag).

447. (Eng.) Whatever you may say.
(Germ.) What you also may say (mas bu and fagen mags).

(Eng.) However he may manage the husiness.

448. (Eng.) However he may manage the business. (Germ.) How he also may manage the business. (Wie er bie Sache auch angreifen mag.)

449. The demonstrative adverb so is expressed or understood in the principal sentence.

450. Vocabulary. Whatever it may be (was es auch sein mag). However great (so groß auch). Active (thátig). Poverty (Armuth, bie). Unwillingly (ungern). Compassion (Mitleid or Mitleiden, bas). Positive [ly] (bestimmt). Dirty (schmußig). Timid (suchtsam). Greek (griechisch). Latin (Latein, if used substantively [as in 'your Latin is bad']; lateinisch as adj.). To resist (widerstehen, Widerstand leisten). Superficial [ly] (oberstächlich). Masterpiece (Meisterstück, bas). Italien (italienisch). Providence (Borsebung). Advantage (Vortseil, ber). Exertion (Ansterngung). Blooming (blügenb). Discontented, morose (mißmuthig). A monk of the order of La Trappe (Arappist). Animal sood (Fleisch). Inactive (unthätig). Manner of living (Lebensweise, bie). To suffer, to endure (bulben). To despair (verzagen). To set to work about any thing (eine Sache angreisen [liter, to attack]). Pretension (Anspruch, ber).

Exercise 62.

451. (a) 1. Obschon er gesund ist, so kann er boch keine Anstrengungen ertragen. 2. Obschon er sehr reich ist, lebt er sehr mäßig. 3. Mancher Mann ist glucklich, obschon er arm ist. 4. Obgleich die Sterne sehr klein erscheinen, so sind sie boch große Weltkörper +. 5. Mancher

[•] With ¿u and dat. + Litr. 'terrestrial body,' 'heavenly body.'

Mann ift frant, obaleich er febr blubend ausfieht. Gi Benn er aleich gelehrt ift, fo ift er boch fein guser Lehrer. 7. Jener Ader tragt ichlechte Fruchte, wenn er auch gut bestellt ift. 8. Ift er gleich gefant, fo tamm et boch feine Unftrengungen ertragen. 9. Tragt ein Baum auch aute Krüchte, so wird er boch umgehauen, wenn er an einer ungehörigen Stelle fieht. 10. Er wurde nicht glucklich fein, wenn er auch reich mare. 11. Satte ber Dig= muthige alles, was er wunscht, fo ware er boch nicht zufrieden. 12. Ungeachtet Die Trappiften fein Rleifch effen, werden fie boch bei ihrer ftillen unthatigen Lebens= weise nicht alt. 13. Wer er auch sei, so fürchte ich ihn nicht. 14. Bas bu auch fagen magft, so andere ich boch meine Meinung nicht. 15. Wie er Die Sache auch angreifen mag, fo wird fie ihm boch nicht gelingen. 16. Bas bu auch ju bulben habeft, verzage nicht. 17. Bie klein er auch war, fo hatte er boch Muth. 18. Wer bu auch feieft, ben Gefeten mußt bu gehorchen. · 19. Ich bin euch ein Dorn im Auge, fo (= wie) gutig ich auch gegen euch bin.

[Like 'though,' in English, obgleich, &c., may stand in an abridged sentence.] 20. Er hat mir, obgleich spat, boch auf meinen Brief geantwortet. 21. Das Schiff segelte, obgleich mit widrigem Winde, sehr schnell.

(b) 1. Though the sun seems so small, it is many times as large as the earth. 2. Though he has asserted it very positively, I cannot believe it. 3. The boy, though open-hearted, is idle and malicious. 4. Many a man is timid, though he looks bold. 5. Though he is rich, he must obey the laws. 6. Young as I am, I understand (finner) both Greek and Latin. 7. He understands German, idle as he is. 8. Whoever he may be, I will resist him courageously. 9. Whatever you may say, I shall set out for Paris to-morrow. 10. He has answered my question, though superficially and hastily. 11. The poor artist went home immediately, though with a heavy heart.

12. The German artist imitates the great Italian masterpieces, though with little success. 13. Whatever he may have told you, I do not wish to know any thing about it*. 14. Whatever advantages you may have before others, you ought never to boast of them †, but be thankful to providence. 15. Although poor, indeed, he does a-great-deal-of ‡ good to his poor relations in town.

Lesson 64. (Verbs governing the Genitive.)

VOCABULARY OF VERBS THAT GOVERN THE GENITIVE.

(1) Reflexive.

452. To interest oneself for (sich an-nehmen). To make use of (sich bebienen). To apply oneself to (sich besleißigen). To resign or give up (sich begeben; begeben, begeben, begeben). To get or take possession of (sich bemächtigen). To take or make oneself master of [a place] (sich bemächtigen). To acquiesce in (sich bescheiben, beschieben). To recollect, to remember (sich besinnen, besonnen; sich entsinnen, entsann, entsomen; sich erinnern). To take pity on (sich entsunen). To desond oneself from (sich entwehren). To resiese at (sich steuen). To trust to (sich getrößen). To boast of (sich simmen). To be ashamed of (sich sichmen). To expect (sich versehen). To desond oneself (sich subserval). To resuse (sich versehen). To desond oneself (sich untertangen, unterstüng, untersangen; sich unterninben, untervand, unterwumben; sich vermessen, vermessen). To undertake (sich untersangen).

(2) Intransitive verbs.

To dispense with (entrathen, entrieth, entrathen). To be without (ermangeln). To think of (gebenten). To wait for (harren). To laugh at (laden). To mock (spotten). To live in the hopes of (leben ber hoffnung).

(3) Verbs that take acc. or gen.

To pay attention to (achten). To stand in need of (beburfen, beburft, beburft). To wish for (begehren). To want (brauchen). To mention (etrodinen). To enjoy (genießen, genoß, genoßen). To take case (pfiegen, pfieger, gepfiegt). To spare (fchonen). To miss (verfehlen). To forget (vergessen, vergessen, vergessen). To perceive (wahrnehmen). To attend (warten).

+ Use: ftolz fein barauf (litr. *thereupon*). ‡ viel Gutes.

[•] With verb in the affirmative, and midts boson (Mtr. 'nothing thereof,' = about it).

453. To expect any thing of or from a person is, fich einer Sache ju Jemanben verseben.

Ich hatte mich bessen zu euch nicht versehen, I should never have expected this of (or from) you.

Exercise 63 *.

- 454. (a) 1. In alten Zeiten bebiente man fich ber Kelle zum Schreiben. 2. Er bemachtigte fich ber Regierung. 3. Wie bu ruhmeft bich noch beiner Thor= beit? 4. Erbarmet euch eines Ungludlichen. 5. 3ch batte ber Mube entübrigt sein konnen. 6. Sie freuet sich ber zu erwartenden Unkunft ihrer jungen Freundin. 7. 3ch freue mich meiner gehorsamen Rinber. 8. 28 == fleißiget Ihr Bruder fich jett noch, wie fruher, ber Mathematit? 9. Wir muffen uns ber Sorgen fur ben Mugenblick, bag er unfer Gaft ift, entichtagen. 10. Ronnen Sie fich benn gar nicht bes Zufalls befinnen? 11. Die eble Frau =nahm sich wie eine zweite Mutter des armen vaterlosen Kindes an=, und so sollte sich ein jeder der Bulfsbedurftigen erbarmen. 12. Schamest bu bich nicht beines begangenen Fehlers? 13. Er enthält fich jest bes Weines. 14. Das junge Kind bedarf noch unseres Beistandes. 15. Die Gesunden bedurfen bes Arztes nicht. 16. Warum hatte er bes Umftanbes nicht mit einem Borte ermahnt? 17. Schone meiner! 18. Ber= giß feiner (or fein) nicht! 19. Warum fpottest bu ihrer? 20. Ich lache beiner Wuth. 21. Harre meiner an biesem Orte! 22. Er ist eher gekommen, als wir uns bessen verfeben hatten.
- (b) 1. You may make use of my name. 2. You are not ashamed then + of your folly, but rather think that you may boast of it. 3. Do you now apply yourself to the study of geography? 4. My sister interested herself for the young girl, as if she had

^{*} In the following exercises the substantives must be looked out in the Index.

⁺ Translate 'then' by the German also.

been her own child. 5. He rejoiced at the late victory of our brave troops in India. 6. Why should I rejoice at the misfortune of my neighbour? 7. I should certainly be ashamed of such an action. 8. Take pity on that fatherless child. 9. I really cannot recollect the event. 10. Do not you recollect the matter? 11. The old general made himself master of that high rampart. 12. He is of an age * to want a guide. 13. Do not forget me. 14. It is a pity that he did not say a word about it †. 15. He now abstains from odrinking wine. 16. I laugh at your anger. 17. Whilst we enjoy health, we do not want a physician t. 18. You can make use of my linen, whilst yours is mending §. 19. Have you now quite given up studying mathematics? 20. He has resigned his rights and pretensions.

Lesson 65.

(Some Adjectives that govern the Genitive.)

455. Vocabulary. In want of (bedürftig). Conscious of (bewußt). Thinking, mindful of (eingebent). Capable (fahig). Happy with or in (frob). In expectation of (generating). Certain of (generation). In need of (benothing). Acquainted with (funbig). In possession of (madtig). Guilty of ([dulbig). Partaking in (theiligaftig). Suspected of (verbachtig). Suffering the loss of (verluftig). Worthy (wurbig).

(Acc. or gen.)

Aware (gewahr). Accustomed (gewohnt). Rid of (108). Tired of (mube, fatt, überbrußig). Full (voll). Worth (werth).

456. (Eng.) To forfeit any thing.

(Germ.) To make oneself suffering-the-loss-of any thing. (Sich einer Sache verluftig machen.)

^{*} Say: 'he is in such an age, that he wants,' with conjunction box (that) and indicative.

⁺ Say: 'did not mention the matter with a single word.' I Verb in the affirmative with fein (no).

[§] Not with ausbeffern (which is said of a coat, &c.), but say: 'whilst they (man) put yours to rights,' in Ordnung bringen.

487. (Eng.) To lose any thing.
(Germ.) To be, become or go suffering-the-loss-of any thing.
(Giner Sache vertuftig fein, werden or gehen.)

Exercise 64.

- 458. (a) 1. Bift bu ber Sache schon so bath mube und uberbrugig? 2. 3ch bin, verfichere ich Sie, bes Lebens mube und fatt. 3. Eingebent beiner fruberen Bobl= thaten, sende ich bir jest die Balfte meines Bermogens, bamit bu meiner Dankbarteit gewiß fein mogeft. 4. Es ift unmöglich, bag ein Jungling von feinem Alter eines folden Verbrechens schuldig sei. 5. Thuft bu bas, fo bift bu beines guten Rufes auf immer verluftig. 6. Er ift ber neuern Geschichte vollkommen funbig. 7. Glauben Sie, bag er bes Unternehmens fahig fei (or ware), wenn man ihm hulfe? 8. Ich werbe meines Lebens nimmer wieder froh, ba bu mich jest verläßt. 9. Sei ftets eingebent jener Bohlthaten beines aufrichtigften Freundes. 10. Benn ich bestimmt mußte, daß Sie bes Erfolgs gewiß maren, fo sollte nichts mich bindern, mit Ihnen nach Indien zu geben. 11. Ich bin mich keiner Schulb, noch viel weniger, eines folden Berbrechens bewußt. 12. Befleißige bich boch (pray) ber Mathematik. 13. Er ift feines Amtes verluftig geworden. 14. Er hat fich feiner Ehre und auten Rufes verluftig gemacht.
- (b) 1. He is then, after all (bod), not guilty of the crime. 2. I can tell you that I am tired of waiting *.

 8. You will certainly forfeit your honour, if you act in this manner. 4. Are you certain of success?

 5. Nobody can be certain of success, unless he does his best. 6. Your young brother is, I see, by no means equal to the enterprise. 7. Now be mindful of his advice, and do not forfeit your reputation!

 8. I really do not see, why you should be so weary of the matter. 9. I am tired to-death (jum Nieber-finten) with walking. 10. Sick persons are in want

^{*} With infinitive, used substantively, , bes Wartens.

155

of the physician, not so* those who are well (bit Stjunden). 11. What is the use † of acquiring riches, if you forfeit by it your honour and good name? 12. Now tell him not to be unmindful of this good and salutary advice. 13. I am almost tired of life now that he has left me.

Lesson 66.

(On the English Participial Substantive.)

459. In the nominative case the English participial substantive is translated by the German infinitive.—In a sentence beginning with, & iff ' (it is), the supine (that is, the infinitive with an) is used.

Rathen ist oft leichter als helfen, giving advice is often easier than giving assistance.

- 460. After a substantive (where we use 'of' in English) the supine is used.—Die Kunst zu schweigen, the art of being silent.
 - 461. a) Instead of doing this.
 Instead of this to do (anftatt biefes zu thun).
 - b) Without knowing it.
 Without that he (she, she.) know it; or without to know it.
 (Ohne daß er es wußte or ohne es zu wissen.)
 - c) We think of (= purpose) going hence to-morrow.
 We think of to go hence to-morrow.
 (Morgen benten wir von hier zu gehen.)
- 462. There is another very extensive class of forms equivalent to our participial substantive under the government of a preposition, which may be explained thus:

English.
by gambling
from gambling
through gambling

thereby
therefrom
therethrough

^{*} Say: aber nicht.

⁺ Bas nust es dir (what profits it to-thee), with infinitive.

- 468. The compounded forms answering to thereby, &c., are babei [= bei bem] thereby; baburch [= burch bas] therethrough (if we had such a form); baraus [= aus bem] thereout; bamit [= mit bem] therewith; baran [= an bem or an bas] thereat, thereon; barauf [= auf bem or auf bas] thereon.
- 464. Obs. The form will be barauf, baran, &c.; according as the simple preposition used would be auf, an, &c.

465. The sentence with baß is used principally to denote a cause or means, or the circumstance, &c., by which we recognize an object.

- 466. 1. a) Ich erfenne ihn an seiner Stimme, I know him by his voice.
 - b) Ich erfenne ihn baran, baß er so laut spricht, I know him by his speaking so loud.
 - 2. Ich schließe es baraus, bas er nicht gefommen ist, I inser it from his not coming (or from his not having come —schließen aus).
 - 8. Er ist bavon krank geworden, daß er mehrere Nächte gewacht hat, he is ill from having [or in consequence of having] sat up several nights.

467. But after many verbs or adjectives the supine is used instead of the sentence with baß. If the verb or adjective is followed by a preposition, the form compounded with ba=, bar=, is mostly inserted.

- 1. Er ift mube ihn zu unterhalten, he is tired of entertaining him.
- 2. Er fürchtet sich *, bir zu begegnen, he is afraid of meeting you.

^{*} Fürchten sich is also used with vor: hence sich bavor fürchten baß, &c. Thus, Wir brauchen uns nicht bavor zu fürchten, baß wir vor lauter Glückeligkeit unglücklich werben.

- 8. Er schämt sich die Wahrheit zu sagen, he is ashamed of speaking the truth.
- 4. Er besteht barauf, eingelaffen zu werben, he insists on being admitted.
- 5. Er ift ftoly barauf, ein Deutscher zu sein, he is proud of being a German.
- 6. Er bentt nicht baran, jurudjutehren, he does not think of returning.

468. Vocabular. Angel (Engel). Spot, blemish (Flect). To retire, to withdraw (entfernen sich). Inclination (Reigung: neigen, to bend, 48*). To coeree, to force (swingen). Intention (Absorbing). To harden (hårten). Association (Berbinbung: verbinben, to combine, 48). Judge, connoisseur (Beurtheiler: beurtheilen [68], to judge, to criticize, 43, a, b). To entertain (unterpatten). Infamous (spånblich, 63, a). To long for (sphen sich). To bathe (baben). To squint (spielen). To insist [upon] (bestehen [baraus]). To retreat (sutucksiehen sich). Wretched (elenb). To foresee (vocaussehen or vorhersehen). To limp (hinten). Civil society (bürgerliche Gesellsschaft). To long for any thing (verlangen barnach). To alarm (ångstigen). Once more (noch cinmal). Sore (wund).

Exercise 65.

469. (a) 1. Er that es, ohne daß ich es wußte. 2. Ich habe mit ihm gesprochen, ohne zu wissen, wer er war sohne daß ich wußtes. 3. Kannst du dich einen edlen Menschen nennen hören, ohne zu erröthen? 4. Er hat eine wunde Stelle davon bekommen, daß ihm ein Stein auf die Hand gefallen ist. 5. Der Knabe hat Gift genommen, dass er Gift genommen hat. 7. Mancher Mann verliert dadurch, daß er schlechte Gesellschaften besucht, seinen guten Rus. 8. Ich bestehe darauf, daß er sich entserne. 9. Wir denken ja nicht daran, deine Neigung zwingen zu wollen. 10. Vielleicht hat die Natur ihre guten Abssichten dabei, daß sie die zartesten Blumen nicht wider

[•] The numerals in the Vocabulary refer to the chapter on word-building (Appendix, xxxi.), which, for the sake of acquiring a general insight, the pupil is recommended to read attentively over, before he writes out the following exercises.

vie Nachtfröste zehartet hat. 11. Jede Verbindung unter Menschen gründet sich darauf, daß keiner alles besitzt. 12. Ohne daß er weiß, ohne daß er es will, übersieht der Beurtheiler Fieden. 13. Ich bin stolz darauf, ein Krieger zu sein. 14. Er sagt, er sei mude den alten General zu unterhalten. 15. Wasser trinken ist gesund. 16. Sterben ist nichts: doch leben und nicht seben, das ist ein Ungluck. 17. Die Gewohnheit zu lügen ist schändlich. 18. Er sehnt sich sehr nach Hause. 19. Er sehnt sich darnach, hier zu bleiben. 20. Er hat davon, daß er im Winter gebadet hat, die Stimme verloren. 21. Ich sehe viel voraus, ohne es andern zu können. 22. Er sagte das, um dich zu ängstigen.

(b) 1. I am longing for you. 2. I am longing to see my old father once more. 3. He is ill from having eaten unripe fruit. 4. I knew him by his squinting. 5. He has injured his health by bathing in autumn. 6. He insists on being introduced to my brother. 7. He entered without saluting oany body. 8. Too weak to fight a battle, he retreated. 9. o Being sick and wretched, he longed for " death. 10. I long to avoid the evil which I foresee. 11. I know him by his having a white hat on 12. We are not thinking of setting out to-morrow. 13. We know him by his limping. 14. He is ashamed of telling it all. 15. He can neither read nor write. 16. The little girl is ashamed of not being able to read. 17. I insist upon his going home directly. 18. I insist upon being allowed to travel. 19. I insist upon his never bathing in winter. 20. All civil society is founded on every body's giving up something. 21. He is ill from not having closed an eye the whole night.

Lesson 67.

- 470. 1. Er ist nicht zu finden (= er kann nicht gefunden werden).
 - 2. Es ift fein Strom zu feben (= fein Strom tann gesehen werben).
 - 8. Der Feind ift nicht gu überwinden (= er fann nicht überwunden werben).
 - 4. Er ift zu befiegen (= er tann befiegt merben).
 - 5. Der Feind ift zu befiegen (= er foll befiegt werben).
 - 6. Das Kind ift zu bestrafen (= es foll bestraft werden).
 - 7. Die Arbeit ift gleich anzufangen (= foll angefangen werben).
 - 1. He is not to be found.
 - 2. There is no stream to be seen.
 - 3. The enemy is not to be conquered.
 - 4. He is to be conquered.
 - 5. The enemy must be conquered.
 - 6. The child ought to be punished.
 - 7. The labour ought to be begun immediately.
- The nature of these idioms in German agrees with some still retained in English, s.g. 'a house to let;' for 'to be let;' the idiom, in fact, is of Anglo-Saxon origin.
- 471. I have to go, &c., is to be translated literally, the German language having the same idiom.
- 472. Observe that the zu is inserted after the particle of a separable verb. See 470, 7.
- 473. VOCABULARY. Writing (Schrift, primary derivative of middle form from schreiben). To copy (abschreiben). To hand over, to deliver (abstracte). To tame, to manage (banbigen). To see before corrective noun). Weeds (Untraut, to be used in the sing, it being a collective noun). To pluck up (austreißen). Barbarous (barbarisch). Many a (manchet, 2, 26).

Exercise 66.

- 474. (a) 1. Das Buch* ist nirgends zu finden (= man kann bas Buch nirgenbs finben). 2. Diese Schrift ift heute noch abzuschreiben (= biese Schrift foll ober muß beute noch abgeschrieben werben). 3. Reine Zeit ift ju verlieren (= man barf feine Zeit verlieren). 4. Rein Stern ift zu feben (= man fann teinen Stern feben). 5. Du hast diese Schrift heute noch abzuschreiben und mir zu übergeben (= bu follst ober mußt biefe Schrift beute noch abschreiben, u.f.m.). 6. Du haft mir nichts zu befehlen (= bu fannst ober barfft mir nichts befehlen). 7. 3ch habe dir etwas zu sagen (= ich will oder muß dir etwas fagen). 8. Der ungehorfame Schuler ift zu bestrafen. 9. Bucher und Papier find rein zu erhalten. 10. Die Aufgaben find zur bestimmten Zeit abzuliefern. 11. Manches Pferd ist nicht zu bandigen. 12. Dieses Ungluck war nicht vorauszusehen. 13. Es ift zu munschen, daß er sich in Zukunft, vor ahnlichen Kehlern hute. 14. Das ift nicht zu laugnen, daß einige Stabte in Deutschland barbarisch aussehen, wenn man in Stalien gewohnt bat.
- (b) 1. This noise is not to be borne. 2. Your work is not to be praised. 3. The child should be punished.

 4. A rich harvest may be hoped-for. 5. The key is no where to be found. 6. The boy owho is to be punished is not to be found. 7. They report, that there is no enemy to be seen. 8. It is to be wished, that you should be more industrious for the future.

 9. The weeds must be plucked up. 10. He is proud of being an American. 11. Do not long to foresee coming misfortunes †. 12. He is proud of being the proprietor of the estate by virtue of his uncle's will. 13. The frogs, by being discontented with their king, got a log instead of a king, according to

+ Use the sing., Unglad.

^{*} Let the pupil make out the rule (in the Appendix) by which Bud (for instance) is neuter, Schrift fem.

the fable. 14. He is vexed at having been deceived in spite of his penetration. 15. I could not help laughing. 16. I could not help reproving the presumptuous youth.

Lesson 68.

475. VOCABULARY. To set, to establish (fegen; hence, what has been established = law, Gefes, 41, a (3)).

Feud (Fehde; hence, to carry on a feud, befehden sich *, 68).

To bid (bieten). There (ba). Hence, with r inserted euphonically, barbieten, to offer.

To be of use (nugen or nugen; hence, benugen, to make use of, 68). To hope (hoffen: lid) [like] expressing relation of manner; hence, with inserted t, hoffentlid), litr. hopingly, or as may be hoped,

= 'I, we, &c., hope,' inserted parenthetically, 63, c).

To separate (icheiben [ver = entirely from]; hence, verscheiben, to depart from life, to die, 70, a).

To take (nehmen [an = to myself, thyself, &c.]; hence, annehmen, to assume).

Neighbour (Nachbar [prefix , be ' making transitive verbs from substantives]; hence, benachbart, that is or has become neighbour-

Art (Kunft; hence, artist, Kunft-1-er; I inserted euphonically, 43, d). To mean (meinen; hence, meaning, Mein-ung, 48, c).

To hit (treffen; hence, excellent, admirable, portreff-lid), 63: properly, 'hitting the mark before others').

To judge (urtheilen; hence, to pass judgement on, to judge, to criticize, beurtheilen, trans. 66).

To seek (suchen; hence, versuchen (1) to tempt [ver = $\pi a \rho \hat{a}$, amiss, perperam]; and (2) to attempt, where the meaning of ver is not very obvious, 68).

Purchase (Rauf; hence, purchaser, Raufer: vowel modified because the word is derived from a substantive, 43).

Exercise 67.

476. (a) 1. Ich komme fast auf ben Gebanken +, baß Sie ihn nicht leiben konnen. 2. Gebanken + über ben zwischen Rußland und ber Pforte geschloffenen Frieden 1.

[•] i.e. against one another. + See Gebante in Index.

[‡] The title of a book. The words which modify a substantive are placed between it and the article. 'The resistance made by the French: in German, 'the by the French made resistance.'

- A. In England werben vie Gefete nach bem Buchflaben genommen. 4. Ich habe noch teine Guibe von ihm gehort. 5. 3ch bachte mir an biefem Orte nur Relfen und Berge. 6. Lag mich in Frieden. 7. Die vortrefflichen Berte großer Runftler werben oft nach ber Meinung ber un= erfahrnen Menge beurtheilt. 8. Jebe Kirche muß ein gewiffes Riel bes Glaubens haben, zu welchem die Glieber ju führen find. 9. Noch schlief ich nicht ganz, als ich mich auf einmal an bem schroffsten Theile bes ichredlichften Relsen sab. 10. Versuchen Sie es lieber nicht 56. 11. Die Taucher konnen ziemlich lange unter ber Aluth fein, ohne Athem zu holen. 12. Es finden fich immer Raufer zu biefer Baare. 13. Geftern hatte ich mir balb ben Arm gebrochen. 14. Er ift fich ber Rachfte. 15. Sie be= schimpfen sich einander *. 16. Ihr kennet einander. 17. Die Freunde begegnen sich t. 18. Wenn sich bie Fürsten befehden, muffen fich die Diener morden und tobten. 19. Der Morder =bietet fich felbst bar=. 20. Ich werde bei ihm hoffentlich leicht Glauben finden. 21. Große Funken flogen auf die benachbarten Baufer.
- (b) I. He has given the letter to the father instead of ²⁴⁾ the son. 2. This presupposes a weakness of faith. 3. They hurt one another. 4. If you have still a spark ° of honour in your heart, you will confess ° it all. 5. He expired in ¹⁰⁾ great agonies ‡. 6. The husbandman not only sows the seed, but also plucks up the weeds. 7. You will suffer loss by it ²⁵⁾. 8. Do with it ²⁵ what you please §. 9. He has not written to me a syllable of it ²⁵⁾. 10. He is said to be ill of ¹¹⁾ a fever. 11. He is said to have dislocated his ⁴¹ shoulder. 12. He pretended ⁴² not to know a syllable about it ⁷⁵⁾. 13. They are going to break the

^{*} In the plural number the personal pronouns (then used reflectively) are often reciprocal = 'one another.' But to distinguish the reciprocal from the reflexive form, cinanter is either added to the personal pronoun or used without it.

⁺ What case is fith?
\$ Say: "according to (nath) your will." For declension of Bills see 21.

1

peace. 14. This never occurred to my mind, or I never gave it a thought*. 15. There (ba) they sit all in † a heap. 16. Although you have sown the seed, you will not reap a good harvest from it will unless you pluck-up the weeds. 17. This presupposes that the weeds have been plucked up. 18. I have not been invited. 19. I assume that you are a devout man. 20. The son imitates his wicked father, and is said to have no spark of honour. 21. You will reap no good harvest, unless you pluck up the weeds.

Lesson 69.

Interrogative Sentences.

477. Direct interrogative sentences are, of course, principal sentences; when such sentences are made subordinate or dependent, they are called indirect interrogative clauses.

478. They may be dependent not only on a verb or participle, but also on a substantive.

'The doubt whether it would be right to concede,' &c.

479. VOCABULARY, (1) Interrogative Pronouns and Adverbs.

Who (wer ‡?) What (was ‡?) What, as adj. (welcher). Which (welcher?—of two things? welcher von betben?) Why (warum?). How (wie?).

480. Caution. What 'what' (used substantively) is under the government of a preposition, wer is not used in German, but the adverbs corresponding to wherewith (not mit wem, but womit); whereon (woran: the we has r when the preposition begins with a vowel).

I The declension is:

m. f.	n.
mer	was
wessen	wessen
wem	(none)
wen	was.

^{*} Translate by: auf ben Gebanten or in ben Ginn tommen.

⁺ Auf with dat.

481. Vocabulary, (2) To confide in (vertrauen, with dat. or auf and acc.). To be deprived of, to dispense with (entbehren, gen. or acc.). To consent (einwilligen). To apply to (sid) wenden an, lite. turn to, with acc.). To end (enden). To assist (beistehen, lite. stand by). Careful (sorgsaltig). Education (Exziehung, from exziehen, to educate. 48). To change entirely (umwandeln). Exertion (Bemühung, from bemühen sich, to take pains about, &c., 48). Afflicting (betrübt or betrübend). Power (Krast). Adventure (Abentheuer).

Exercise 68.

- 482. (a) 1. Wer weiß wer diesen Brief gebracht hat?
 2. Ich weiß es nicht. 3. Ich weiß nicht, wer diesen Brief gebracht hat. 4. Er wußte nicht mehr, wem er vertrauen, und an wen er sich wenden sollte. 5. Sagen Sie mir, wo er ist. 6. Wenn ich nur wüßte, wann er wieder kame! 7. Niemand weiß, warum er dieses gethan hat. 8. Der Himmel mag wissen, wie das enden wird. 9. Kaum weiß ich selbst zu sagen, wie das Ding mir in die Hand gerieth. 10. Es muß sich bald erklären, ob ich den Freund, ob ich den Vater soll entbehren. 11. Sieh zu, ob er kommt. 12. Wissen wir denn, ob wir morgen noch leben? 13. Der Bediente wird dir sagen, ob Herr M. zu Hause ist. 14. Ich frage Sie, ob Sie einwilligen. 15. Ich möchte wissen, ob Herr M. mit seinem Buche bald fertig ist.
- (b) 1. I cannot tell who has written that letter.

 2. Heaven only knows who he is. 3. Nobody can tell whence he comes and whither he is going.

 4. Can you tell me who left this letter on my table?

 5. Do you know who has taken that German letter from my table?

 6. Can you guess which of the two is her sister?

 7. My servant will tell you who has taken your cloak.

 8. Who are you, who* venture to speak to me in this manner?

 9. Are you aware what are his principles?

 10. He did not know whom to trust on and whom not.

 11. He asked me whether I should like to stay with him.

 12. Did he

^{*} Translate the second who by ber Sie, or, if with thou, ber bu.

not ask the old physician whether he was going to Rome with his family? 13. Tell me whether he feels inclined to take a walk along the coast. 14. He inquired after you. 15. I wish to know whether he will set out for Paris very shortly.

Lesson 70.

Oblique Narration.

- 483. When a person in relating what he himself or some other person said, does not quote the exact words used, but states the substance of them in a subordinate clause, the narration is said to be oblique.
 - (1) Direct narration: I said to him, 'What is all this about?'
 Indirect ——: I asked him, 'what all this was about.'
 (2) Direct ——: He said, 'It is impossible.'
 Indirect ——: He said, 'that it was impossible.'
- 484. (a) The subjunctive is the regular mood for oblique narration *. (β) Sometimes, as in English, the conjunction 'that' (baß) is omitted: the order of the words is then that of a principal sentence.
- (γ) The speaker may use the *indicative* in oblique narration, if he himself wishes to confirm the fact stated in the oblique clause.
- (8) The statement of another person's opinion is often given in the subjunctive in several consecutive clauses, where we must mark that the opinions are another's by such insertions as 'he said' (maintained, argued, &c.). (s) A question may be asked in this way, where we must use 'he asked,' &c.

Exercise 69.

485. (a) a) 1. Er behauptet, daß bas unmöglich ge= wesen sei. 2. Er fagt, er sei frank und konne nicht

^{*} We have already seen (261) that the condition is often used after past tenses.

- ausgehen *. 3. Er sagt, daß sein Bruder krank sei, und nicht kommen könne. 4. Er sagte: "Mein Bruder ist krank, und kann nicht ausgehen." 5. Du behauptest, die Sache sei unmöglich. 6. Ich hosste, er wurde mir beisstehen. 7. Habe ich dir nicht gesagt, daß er dich täuschen wurde? 8. Sie selbst gesteht, daß es wahr ist.
 - (γ) 9. Er felbst hat gesagt, baß er gefehlt hat.
- (d) 10. Dein Vater beklagte sich bitter über bich. Er habe (= he had, he said) alle seine Kräfte ausgeboten, um dir eine sorgfältige Erziehung zu geben; denn das sei t das Beste, was er dir auf dem schwierigem Wege durchs Leben mitgeben könne. 11. Es habe auch erst geschienen, als ob du seinen guten Willen anerkennest; nachher aber seist du auf einmal wie umgewandelt gewesen. 12. Bas es nun Betrübteres geben (e) könne, als alle seine Besmühungen vereitelt zu seben?
- (b) 1. He asked me whether I had seen his elder brother. 2. He asked me, 'Have you seen my (i.e. the speaker's) brother?' 3. But when I found that he was not sincere, I said to him, 'Is this the way you deal with a friend?' 4. I asked him, whether that was the way he treated a friend? 5. He said (that) this was not the way to make oneself liked by one's pupils. 6. He then said, frowning at him, 'You are unworthy of my friendship.' 7. He then said, that he was unworthy of his esteem. 8. He said, in his absence, he did not think him worthy of his esteem. 9. He said, his pupils left him more ignorant by half & than they were when they first came to him. 10. You maintain, then, (that) the matter is an old invention. 11. I hoped she would not leave us so soon. 12. Then he said.

^{*} With the conjunction the subjunct. likewise is used, but the order changed, as in the subsequent example.

⁺ i.e. the speaker's brother.

^{‡ (=} is his [i.e. the father's] opinion). § Say: 'about the half,' um die Halfte.

'Have you forgot what I told you about him?' 18. He answered, 'I have not *.'

Lesson 71.

- 486. The relative pronoun sometimes introduces a clause that defines an individual simply, and sometimes a clause that refers it to a particular class or kind. In the latter case we may substitute such-as for the relative.
- Thus, (1) 'The stranger who called upon you yesterday:' here I simply define the stranger as being the particular stranger who called upon you yesterday. (2) 'A tree which bears no fruit must be out down,' i.e. 'such a tree as bears no fruit,' &c., or 'a tree which is of such a kind, that it bears no fruit.'
- 487. The two relative pronouns in German are ber, welcher: (a) of which welcher is used when the kind is implied: (b) ber when either the individual is defined simply, or the kind implied †.

Thus, (a) Der Fremde, der [not welcher] Dich gestern besucht hat ‡, the stranger, who called upon you yesterday.

- (b) Gin Baum, welcher [or ber] feine Früchte tragt, a tree which bears no fruit.
- 488. (a) After the personal pronouns, the interrogative wer, and most indefinite pronouns, ber only is used, because an individual is denoted, not the kind: (b) after folche, bergleichen, ber Art [= of such a kind], welcher is used, because there is reference to kind: and also after the indefinite article when the sentence might answer such a question as 'what sort of?' (c) Der should be used (not welcher) when the

^{*} Say: Rein (no), in case the answer follows the question.

⁺ This distinction (which is not, however, universally observed) seems to follow naturally from the original meaning of these pronouns. Der is a demonstrative: ber Frembe, ber, u.f.m., the stranger—that stranger did so and so. But weldyer is properly an interrogative, and has for its correlative folther, which refers to kind.

[#] The order of a relative sentence is inverted: see 416-418.

relative clause may be resolved into a sentence denoting a reason, purpose, &c.

- a) 1. Du, ber Du ihn kanntest, you, who knew him. 2. Er, ber alter ist, he, who is older. 3. Wer, ber bei Sinnen ist, wird das begaupten? who that is in his senses will maintain that? 4. Riemand, ber mich kennt, nobody that known me.
- b) 1. Solche Ahiere, welche im Winter schlasen, such animals as sleep in the winter-time. 2. Menschen der Art, welche unredlich sind, men who are dishonest (or such men as are dishonest).
- c) 1. Mein Bater, ber krank ist, will nicht kommen, my father, who is sick [= because he is sick] will not come. 2. Schickt einen Boten, ber [= baß er] ihn zu mir sühre, send a messenger (who may bring him =) to bring him to me.
- 489. Ber, was, are comparatively seldom used as relatives. (a) They are used in general propositions when who, what = whoever, whatever. The relative clause then precedes, and ber, bas, is either expressed or understood in the principal clause. (b) Bas is also used as a simple relative after bas, nichts, etwas, alles, manches, viel, and wenig.

After viel, wenig, manches, alles, bas, Etwas and nichts, we find the neuter was.

- a) 1. Wer lugt, ber fliehlt, he who lies, will steal. 2. Was Euch genehm ift, bas ift mir recht.
- b) 1. Das, was Du weißt, what you know. 2. Manches, was ich weiß, many a thing that I know.
- 490. (a) When the kind refers to similarity, soldher is followed by wie, if the relative should be in the nominative or accusative: (b) if soldher is omitted, wie usually has a personal pronoun with it.
 - a) 1. Solche Blumen, wie in Deinem Garten wachsen, (or) Blumen, wie sie in Deinem Garten wachsen, such flowers as grow in your garden.

(Eng.) A man like you. (Germ.) A man as you. (Ein Mann, wie Du.)

Welder is declined regularly like gut-er (Lesson 17), but the genitive of it is not used. The declension of ber, as relative, is given in 225.—

Der is also a demonstrative pron. = 'that,' and also for he, it, = 'that person,' 'that thing.' As an adjective pron. it is declined like the article: as a substantive pron. it is declined like the relative ber, but has gen, plural beret, when followed by a relative clause.

VOCABULARY. Bodily (torpertich; from Rorper, body, 63). To execute (queführen; from führen, to carry, 74).

Exercise 70.

491. (a) 1. Bas ich brauche, bas kannst Du mir nicht geben. 2. Strafe ben, ber gefündigt hat. 3. Der Ruhm beffen, ber bie Unwahrheit fpricht, bauert nicht lange. 4. Jest fagt mir bas Ende berer, bie von Troja fehrten. 5. 3ch bin nicht von benen, die mit Worten tapfer find. 6. Das find Manner, beren Namen unfterblich find. 7. Ich weiß bavon nichts. 8. Der, ben bu meinft, hat ben Preis nicht gewonnen. 9. Den mocht' ich wiffen, ber ber Treufte mir von Allen ift. 10. Derjenige, ber bich betrugen will, muß fehr schlau fein. 11. Er wollte gern basjenige, was er wußte, auf Unbre übertragen. 12. Diejenigen Menschen, bie schwach find. 13. Sold ein Wetter ift felten zu folder Ernte gekommen. 14. Bas für ein Pferd ift bies? Gin Araber. 15. Welches Pferd willst Du reiten? Den Braunen. 16. Beld ein * Riese! 17. Beld ein Un= geheuer! 18. Beffen Saus ift biefes? 19. Bem gebort cs? 20. Weffen Dienste nichts als korperliche Krafte erfordern, der hat dafür nichts als Metall zu erwarten. 21. Es giebt eine Art bes Tabels, welche bem Getabelten Ehre macht. 22. Einen Schild, wie bu ihn haft, habe ich nie gefeben. 23. Bon folden Schiffen, wie jest gebaut werden, hat man fruber nichts gewußt. 24. Und bas ist Alles, was Sie mir von ihm zu sagen haben? 25. Da ist nichts, was den Frieden storen konne. 26. Solche Kranke, wie Du, verlangen gute Pflege. 27. Rommt hier, wenn Ihr mir was + ju fagen habet.

^{*} Meld, ein (eine) is nearly like was für ein: it is = what ! principally in exclamations of astonishment. The welcher drops its ending.

⁺ Bac is sometimes used for etwas. Wer was formerly used in the same way, and is so still provincially.

- (b) 1. A child that does not speak the truth, must be punished. 2. The man who helped me work (302), is gone home. 3. The master who taught me Greek is gone into the country. 4. The wound, which was just going to heal (304), was torn open afresh. 5. My father, who was (= for he was) on the point of setting off, was very angry to be interrupted. 6. A person * who is going to sit down to study, does not like to be interrupted. 7. All is not gold that glitters. 8. The old general, who is more brave than learned, could not answer a word. 9. This boy, who is (= for he is) extremely idle, must be punished.

 10. The agent, who had executed the commission most conscientiously, was dismissed. 11. He who touches pitch is defiled. 12. This book contains a-great-deal (vieles) which I do not understand. 13. There is something in his conduct which I cannot explain.
- 492. Vocabulary. Experience (Erfahrung: from erfahren, to experience, 48). Bravery, valour (Apferkeit: from tapier, brave, 56). To peruse (burchleien: from lesen, to read, 73). Instructive (belehrend: from lehren, to teach, to instruct, 68). Equilatesal (gleichseitig: from Seite, side; and gleich, alike or like, 59).

Exercise 71. (See Appendix 3-5, inclusive.)

493. (a) 1. Die Båber, die er nehmen wird, sind sehr heilsam. 2. Der Arzt, den Sie gesandt haben, hat viele Ersahrung. 3. Jene Armee, die er angeführt, hat Wunder der Lapserkeit verrichtet. 4. Die Blätter, die im Herbste von den Bäumen sallen, sind von salber Farbe. 5. Die Däcker der Hütten, welche Sie dort unten in dem kleinen Dorfe sehen, sind von Stroh. 6. Sind jene Bücher, die Ihr Herr Vater senden wird, eben so belehrend, wie die jenigen †, welche Sie schon durchgelesen haben? 7. Die

^{*} Say : Jemand.

⁺ Derjenige is often used for the demonstrative 'that' instead of ber: especially when 'that' is used adjectively, ber being then likely to be taken for the article in writing. In speaking it is distinguished from it by the emphasis.

Erze, die man aus ber Erde nimmt, werben im Keuer geschmolzen. 8. Die Kloke, welche die Donau hinabschiffen. find um ein Bebeutenbes größer als Gie glauben. 9. Der Bater gebt jest auf bas zu pflugende Reld. 10. Er ift auf bem Relbe, bas vor uns liegt, um ju pflugen. 11. Die Mutter, beren Tochter gestorben, ift untrofflich. 12. Die Manner, beren Thaten wir preisen. 13. 3ch bin beg * gewiß. 14. Suche die Freundschaft berer (not beren), die tugenbhaft find. 15. Saben Gie ober 3hr Better jenes gleichseitige Dreieck conftruirt, welches ich bier auf biesem Blatte febe? 16. Ift bas ein dirurgifches Befted, bas Sie obort in ber Hand haben? 17. Sind bas bie Bucher, beren ich mich bedienen foll? 18. Das, glaube ich, find biefelben Bucher, bie mein Bater fcon gelefen hat. 19. Sind bas die guten Sitten, beren bu bich rubmft? 20. Solche Hute, wie die Anroler tragen : or Bute, wie sie bie Eproler tragen.

(b) 1. Are these the two volumes that the voung author has sent us? 2. The leaves of the trees that are behind the old count's castle, are beginning to drop. 3. Had not the immense army which Wallenstein commanded been raised at his own expense? 4. The two boats, which you see on that large river, are freighted with boards. 5. The bread you have eaten was good; but the beer that he sent you was 6. Is not this the sharp axe which the old carpenter has left here? 7. The old roofs, which you see there below, are all thatched †. 8. Have the warm baths, that the old physician recommended you, been of any use to you? 9. The child has torn the pictures out of the pretty book which I had left on the oak table. 10. Can you describe an equilateral triangle? 11. The men whose merits are known to us. 12. Are you sure of it? 13. Men whose actions are praised, are not always those who deserve most praise. 14. The child whose mother is

^{*} Gen., for , beffen. + Say: 'are of straw' (find von Stroh).

dead. 15. The woman whose child you see here. 16. Shun the company of those who are not sincere. 17. That is iron. 18. That boy obeys his father. 19. The child, who does not obey his parents, must be punished. 20. Those are the books he left out for you. 21. Are those my new books or my old ones? 22. Those are precisely the people one ought not to trust. 23. That is my daughter. 24. A tree which does not bear fruit, is cut down.

Lesson 72.

494. (Eng.) Twice a year, a day, &c.
(Germ.) Twice of the year, of the day.
(Zwei Mal bes Jahrs, bes Tages.)

(Eng.) He only works in the morning. (Germ.) He only works of the morning. (Er arbeitet nur des Morgens.)

(Eng.) This day or now-a-days: some of these [= the next or following] days: in the mean time or while.

(Germ.) Of this day: of next days: of mean while.

(heutiges Tages: nachster Tage: mittler Beile.)

- 495. Obs. 1. (a) The acc. is used to express a definite point of time: this morning (biefen Morgen). The genitive is used to express a point of time indefinitely: e.g. bes Morgens, bes Abends.
- β) Duration of time is expressed in the accusative: ben ganzen Zag (the whole day).
- 2. The appointed time stands with auf (= for) or an (= on), the former with acc. both for a point of time and duration of time; the latter with dat., for a point of time only:

- Auf or auf ben Sonntag (for Sunday); auf einige Lage (for a few days); am Sonntage (on [i.e. a certain] Sunday).
- 3. The time within which any thing is done is expressed by binnen with the dative: Binnen brei Xagen, Wochen, &c. (within three days, weeks, &c.)
 - 4. (Eng.) Three years ago. (Germ.) Before three years. (Bor brei Jahren.)

496. Vocabulary. To want (nothig haben , bebürfen). Sunday (Sonntag). Monday (Montag). Quite differently (ganz anders). Drang (pressure), with prefix ge augmented subst. Gebránge (crowd), W. b. 49, (1) a. Rauben (to rob): Rauber (robber), et (= Eng. y) denoting abstract notion of an act: hence Raubere (robbery), 53, (d). Laufen (to run), et inserted before et: hence, Lauferei, in a bad sense (a running about without object), 53, (e). So, from Spielen (to play), Spielerei (a playing about). Schmeicheln (to flattery), et (= Eng. y), abstract notion; hence, Schmeichelei (flattery). So, from beucheln (to act the hypocrite), Heuchelei (hypocrisy). Loan (Unleibe, bie).

Exercise 72.

497. (a) 1. Ich werde ihn gewiß dieser Tage sehen.
2. Sind Sie den ganzen Tag beschäftigt oder nicht?
3. Ich will Ihnen gerne eine Anleihe auf drei Wochen machen.
4. Binnen einer Woche wird er ihn in Paris sehen.
5. Des Sonntags geht er spaziren.
6. Haben Sie ihn auf Sonntag oder Montag zum Mittagsessen eingeladen?
7. Es ist heutiges Tages nicht leicht eine Anleihe ohne Bürgschaft zu machen.
8. Er ist auf zwei Tage, seiner Gesundheit halber, aus Land gereiset.
9. Kam er nicht vor zwei Tagen hier an?
10. Er wird binnen drei Tagen hier sein, mittler Weile können wir auf die Jagd gehen.
11. Nächster Tage werden wir auf dem Flusse nach B. fahren.
12. Haben Sie ihn nicht diesen Morgen gesehen?
13. Des Staates Heil beruht daraus, daß der alte Feldherr am Leben 74 bleibe.
14. Füttere

[•] Litr. 'To have necessary,' i.e. 'need of.'

mir* bie jungen Suhner. 15. Beibe Armeen find ge- schlagen.

Questions.

- 1. Of what gender are: Herz, Holz, Heer, Glas, Garn, Glied, Grab?
- 2. What are their respective plurals?

Das Grab ist tief und stille, Und schauberhaft sein Rand, Es beckt mit dumpfer Stille Ein unbekanntes Land: Das Lied ber Nachtigallen Tont nicht in seinem Schoos; Der Freundschaft Blumen fallen Nur auf des Hügels Moos.

(b) 1. Can you make me that loan for a fortnight? 2. He dwelt in my house a whole month. 3. I have no objection to lend you the money for a month, although I may perhaps want it myself within three weeks. 4. He gave me an invitation to dinner for Sunday. 5. I am engaged on Monday evening. 6. You seem to be busy the whole day. 7. Now-a-days it is difficult to find a friend who owill make you a loan for a single day. 8. I have no objection to stay in your house for some weeks, but I shall have to work all the morning next Monday; meanwhile I accept of your invitation, if your father owill allow it. 9. Three years ago t matters went on a quite differently with 10. Come on Monday, if you cannot on Sunday. 11. He generally called on us on a Monday. 12. He gave him a kind invitation for Monday.

^{*} Either on express command, or also euphemistic for 'I coder you.' We find similar terms in Shakespear.

⁺ Say: 'I will willingly,' with infin.

Add the article , bie:

[§] Say: 'stood—with him' (flanben mit ihm).

18. His vanity is beyond every thing*. 14. He has lost his watch in the crowd. 15. What a robbery! 16. Your kindness is greater that ever my gratitude can be. 17. Have you ever seen such hypocrisy and flattery! 18. His continual playing and running about prevent him from doing 48 any thing useful. 19. I shall see you some of these days; meanwhile, make my compliments 78 to your father.

Lesson 73.

- e) Conjunctions (especially those that require a peculiar turn in German). See the Index.
- 498. Definegen, besthalb (= 'for this reason') may, as demonstratives, precede weil, 'because' (= idcirco .—quia).
- 499. Vocabulary. Mûbe (tired), , ig' inserted for euphony: hence, Mûbigleit (lassitude), 56 (a). Achten (to esteem), ver [prefix = amiss, away, loss]: hence, verachten (to despise), 70 (a). Dichten (to make or write werees, or fiction). Runft (art): hence, art of writing fiction or verses, Dichtunft (poetry). Beihen (to lead, to guide), er [prefix = forth, up, 69 (a)], ung [Eng. ing]: hence, abstract fer leading or guiding up [= education] (Erzichung), 48 (b). Môfig (idle), Gang [abstract nation of walk = going]: hence, an idle going [= idleness] (Mûffiggang), 54 (1, 2) and 48 (f). Bitter (bitter), lich (Eng. like or ly); hence, ade. bitterly (bitterlich), 63 (a). Gang (the act of going), um (around, circum-): hence, a going round [an object], consequently, a frequenting, thus acquaintance, connexion [in the improper meaning] (lungang), 48 (f). To cultivate (pflegen).

Exercise 78.

500. (a) 1. Können wir ihn beswegen verachten, weil er arm ist? 2. Habe ich es bir beswegen gegeben, bas bu mir bamit schaben sollst? 3. Er ist zwar arm, aber ist er beswegen zu verachten? 4. Ist die Dichtkunst beswegen nicht zu pslegen, weil einige Dichter schlechte Gebichte geschrieben? 5. Ich meibe ihn nicht beswegen, weil er arm +, sondern weil er lasterhaft ist. 6. Ist die

[·] Say: 'goes overiall' (geht über alles).

⁺ The first , ift ' may be left out in German.

Tugend beghalb nur zu üben, weil sie zu irdischem* Wohlstande führen fann, oder sollen wir sie ihrer selbst wegen lieben ? 7. Saben beine guten Eltern bir barum + (or beghalb) eine gelehrte Erziehung geben laffen, baß (or Damit) bu bes Lebens beste Stunden in Muffiagang jest zubringest? 8. Man kann ihm nicht trauen, benn er ift lafterhaft. 9. Weil bein Better Rarl fo groß ift als Marcus, und Marcus fo groß als bein Bruber, baber t ift auch diefer fo groß wie Karl, fiehst bu bas benn & nicht? 10. Es regnet und beghalb bleibe ich zu Saufe. 11. Dem= nach + zu urtheilen, muß er ein Betruger fein. 12. Dar= nacht zu rechnen, follte er schon angekommen sein. Biebe beinen biden Rod an, fete beine Dely=Dute auf, und wirf beinen Mantel um, benn es ift bitterlich kalt. 14. Demnach haben Sie ja bas Gelb schon bezahlt er= halten. 15. Ich follte ichon | um acht Uhr in feinem Saufe fein, jest ift es bereits ein Uhr vorbei, mithin T ift es jett zu spat. 16. Ich fage Ihnen boch, ich habe kein Geld: folglich (or mithin) kann ich mit bem besten Willen Ihnen nichts leihen. 17. Daher kommt es also, daß er feinen Umgang meibet. 18. 3ch febe nun woher es kommt, baß er so geizig ist. 19. Weil (or ba) er spat ankam, fo konnten wir ihn nicht einlaben. Wie konnten wir ihn einladen, da er so spåt ankam?

^{*} Translate by: 'of this world.'

⁺ Daher denotes a physical cause, what makes the thing what it is: befinegen, befinalb, barum, denotes a moral cause or motive, what induces one to act in such a way, &c.: beminach = 'according to that,' denotes conformity with what has been stated. Denn commonly denotes a reason; also, folglich, mithin, a consequence. Darnach implies that something is taken as a standard or measurement to reckon by: in the above case, rechnen, has an improper sense.

[‡] Daher stronger term (mostly used in deduction) than beshalb. See the subsequent example.

[§] Denn here has the power of 'I am surprised at your not seeing this.'

^{# &#}x27;So soon as.'

Mostly either a familiar or forensic term for , folglidy, according to Adelung.

Questions.

State the gender, plural (in case it be in use), and irregularities of Land, Licht, Korn, Laub, Lamm, Kraut.

Containing substantives illustrating genders. See Appendix (8).

(b) 1. Send the poor widow the malt and the flour, the oil as well as the milk; not only the fruit, but also a measure of good old wine, and * do not forget a bundle of fagots, oin order that she may prepare herself a good meal for Sunday. 2. I have sent you all these things, that you may prepare a meal for Sunday as well as the other days of the week. 3. He has not eaten any bread or fruit for three days. 4. Did I send you the money + that you might waste it? 5. Now-a-days friends are rare. 6. The reason ‡ I go there in the morning is, that I can then spare most time. 7. Do you go there every day? I do &, and very often twice a day. 8. Twice a week. 9. Once a year. 10. I mean to call on him some day next week. 11. Have you invited me for the purpose of insulting me ||? 12. No one gives what he has not, the Roman jurist says; consequently I can't pay you the money. 13. A very simple reason indeed! 14. Since he has nothing, he cannot give any thing. 15. I am dropping down with fatigue.

Question.

How are the plurals of Rad, Nest, Pfand, and Ohr formed?

^{*} Say: 'forget also not,', vergiß auch nicht.'

[†] Insert beshalb or beswegen.

† With beshalb (or beswegen) weil.

§ With ja or jawohl! (yes, surely.)

Lesson 74.

Genders. (See Appendix S.)

501. Vocabulary. Cake [offered as an oblation] (Opfertuchen [litr. oblation-cake]). To light (anzünden; from zünden, to ignite). To fatten (mästen). Girded [with a sword] (Mit—an der Linken (litr. on the left]). Theatre (Schauspiel, Aheater, the former from Echaus, show, and Epiel, play [in the some of lasses]; hence, litr. a show-play, i.e. an imposing play = drama). Wet (naß). Moint (feucht). In ruins (in Arümmern). Literary (literarist), gelehrt).

Exercise 74.

- 502. (a) 1. Die Opferkuchen der Alten wurden ans Spelt ober Mehl, Del, Salz, und Honig bereitet. 2. Junde mir das Scheit Holz an. 3. Die langen Seile des alten Schiffes. 4. Mit dem Schwert an der Linken, zog er in den Kampf. 5. Senden Sie der armen Frau ein oder zwei Schelte Holz, damit sie sich ein Feuer anzünde. 6. Ich nehme an, daß Sie das alte Schloß zu H. gesehen haben. 7. Er hat die ganze Nacht auf jenem nassen Stroh gelegen. 8. Laß er sich auf das trockene Stroh dort hinlegen. 9. Wirf dieses alte Stroh und jenes seuchte Hou in jene Ecke. 10. Man giebt (or spielt) gewöhnlich drei Stucke jeden Abend im Schauspiel zu B. 11. Das junge Kind wurde im Schisse gefunden. 12. Schafe sind theurer als Lämmer.
- (b) 1. The towers of the old castle are high. 2. He is always building castles in the air *. 3. The strong castle of the old count is now in ruins, and the eagles are building their nests in it. 4. Fetch me a log of wood and some fresh straw. 5. Was not the unfortunate child found among the reeds of the broad river? 6. Hand me that rope, and throw out the plumb-line. 7. Will you have sixty of them †? 8. Do you recollect the name of the Roman't sacrifice

^{*} Say, litr.: 'air-castles' (Luftfoldsfet, Fr. 'châteaux d'Espagne').

+ Davon, 'thereof.'

I Say: Opfer bei ben Romern (sacrifice with the Romans).

consisting of a bullock, a sheep, and a swine? 9. I do not *, but I will ask my literary friend.

Lesson 75.

Genders. (See Appendix (10).)

503. Vocabulabr. Flowery (blumig, from Minme, flower, 59). Fast-sailing (fcnell]egeind, liter. like the English, from fast [fcnell] and fegeind [sailing]). By way of poetry (bichterifch, from Dichter, noet. 81). To translate (überfegen, from fegen, to set, 73). Literally (wortlich, from Mort, word, 63). Chattering (geschwäßig, from Geschwäß, chat, 59). To admire (bewundern, from mundern, to wonder, 68). Twilight, morning-red (Krühroth, from früh, early, and noth, red; ibr. early-red, Aurora).

Exercise 75.

504. (a) 1. Mach' ein Feuer vor meinem Zelte und bereite mir ein Lamm, oder das Wild was du erlegt hast. 2. Las das Volk vor das Zelt kommen. 3. Schlachte mir ein Thier. 4. Das Vieh ist noch auf den Feldern. 5. Treibe das fette Vieh nun auf die andere Wiese oder auf die brachen Felder. 6. Leg' das Tau auf das Versect des Schisses. 7. Die Thore des starken Schlosses werden † bei † Nacht geschlossen. 8. Sind † nicht die Thore des Schlosses des hachts verschlossen? 9. Was für ein großes Thor! 10. Was sür ein großer Thor! 11. Das Vieh weidet schon in den fruchtbaren Thälern. 12. Weidet nicht schon das Vieh in jenen blumigen Thälern? 13. D Kinder! bewundert doch die Werke der

^{*} To be rendered simply by nein (no).

⁺ Obs. Different type (called Sperrichrift in German, answering to the English Italics) has been introduced in some examples when two sentences have been placed in juxta-position, to show some peculiarity, distinction, &c., as methen and finb (both = 'are,' in English). The first, methen,' in German denotes 'habit,' they are habitually shut (clauduntur); the second, finb,' denotes 'a present state' = 'clause sunt.'

[#] Bei Nacht, 'at night,' opposed to am Tage, 'at day:' bee Nachte, 'during night;' although not always strictly observed by the Germans.

§ State the difference.

weisen Natur! 14. Er sitt im Berließ des alten Schlosses, Schulben halber. 15. Er ist ins Burg-Verließ gesteckt worden.

- 16. Ind wenn's euch Ernst ist was zu sagen, Ist's nothig Worten nachzujagen?
 Göthe's 'Faust.'
 - 17. Drei Worte nenn' ich euch Inhalts schwer, Sie gehen von Munde zu Munde. Schiller.
- (b) 1. Melt the wax by the fire, and the zinc, as well as the tin, in the fire. 2. Learn a dozen words by heart. 3. He did not say one word on * setting out. 4. Those are mere words! 5. What kind of stuff (or material) is this? 6. What a noise those children were making whilst I was reading this letter. 7. Step into my tent. 8. You seem to have no aim (object) whatever. 9. The strong gates of the town are shut at sunset. 10. I should like to see the count's strong castle, but the gates, I see, are shut.

Lesson 76.

(Further Remarks on Pronouns.)

- 505. The personal pronouns had an old form of the genitive, mein, bein, u.s.w., which are retained in a few expressions, as getente mein, 'remember me;' vergiß mein nicht, 'forget me not.'
- 506. The genitives meines, beines, seines, occur only in the forms meinesgleichen, 'people like me;' beinesgleichen, seinesgleichen, which are mostly used to imply something of contempt = 'people of your class,' &c., 'such as you,' &c.

[·] Als or inbem, with infin.

507. If the possessive pronoun is used absolutely (i.e. does not precede a substantive) it takes the full terminations er, e, es (like guter), with the exception of the case, when it is the predicate, the subject being either a substantive or any personal pronoun but the indefinite, es.

Mein Bruder und seiner, my brother and his.

Mem gehort ber hut? Es ist meiner. To whom does this hat belong? It is mine.

Der Hut ift mein [not meiner], the hat is mine. Dein ist bie Ehre, the honour is yours.

Instead of

we may say:

meiner	meine	meines	ber, bie, bas meine or meinig	2
beiner	beine	beines	ber, bie, bas beine or beinig	
feiner	feine	feines	ber, bie, bas feine or feinige	
ibrer	ibre	ibres	ber, bie, bas ihre or ihrige.	
.,,	.7	.,	400, 400, 400 1900 190000	

So ber, bie, bas unfre or unfrige; eurs or eurige; ihre or ihrige (Thre or Thrige, when = yours).

'Own' is eigen, which is declined regularly.

508. In English, if I say, "Mr. A. met the rich merchant and his nephew," his might mean either Mr. A.'s nephew or the merchant's nephew. This ambiguity is avoided in German by using the gen. of ber as demonstrative pronoun, which may also be used in other cases, when no ambiguity would arise.

Er beschenkte seinen Better und bessen Sohn.

509. Vocabulary. Inclination (Reigung; from neigen, to bend, to incline, 48). Opinion (Meinung; from meinen, to mean, 48). Beauty (Schönheit; from schön, fair, 56). To be lasting (bestehen; from stehen, to stand, and prefix, be' [an intensive here], 68). Hope (Hoffinung; from hoffen, to hope, 48).

Exercise 76.

510. (a) 1. Laß jebem das Seine. 2. Ich liebe nicht seinesgleichen. 3. Wie kann man beinesgleichen achten? 4. Schone mein. 5. Schone sein. 6. Ich bitte dich gesenke mein. 7. Vergiß mein nicht. 8. Mein Geschmack ist nicht ber beinige (Ihrige), und beiner ist nicht der meinige. 9. Meine Neigung stimmt nicht mit der seinigen

- 2. Zwei Mal zwei sind vier. 3. Zwei Mal acht macht * fechzehn. 4. Das Mandel ist eine Anzahl von funfzehn. 5. Zwolf macht ein Dutend. 6. Ruffe werben ichochweise verkauft. 7. Ift nicht Gifen specifisch leichter als Gold ober Silber? 8. Lege bas mube Haupt auf bas weiche Riffen. 9. Am ersten bes nachsten Monats erwarte ich meinen Bater bier. 10. Nicht ber britte sonbern ber vierte. 11. Carl ber Runfte. 12. Ludwig ber Bierzehnte. 18. Meine Aufgabe ift gang fertig, beine ift erft gur Salfte gethan, und die feinige ift faum angefangen. 14. Be= bienen Sie fich meines Febermeffers, benn bas Ihrige ift zu ftumpf, und ich bedarf biefen Augenblick bes meinigen nicht. 15. Der unfrige ift, bei weitem, beffer als ber seinige. 16. Die ihrigen find nicht so belehrend als die eurigen. 17. Sete bas filberne Beden auf jenen eichenen Tisch, ber bort in ber Ede fteht.
- (b) 1. Seven and nine are sixteen. 2. Three from ten, seven remain. 3. A score is a name for twenty. and fifteen is called a 'Mandel' in some parts of Germany. 4. I expect him here on the eighth. 5. Are those five pair + of gloves yours? No, they are his; if not, they must be hers. 6. What a herd of stags! 7. How many are there? Twenty at least, if not thirty. 8. Have you only one score? No ‡. 9. How old are you? I shall be seventeen on the eighteenth of next month. 10. What day of the month is this? The nineteenth or twentieth, I believe. 11. That can't be, it is only the sixteenth, I think. 12. You are both wrong; it is the eighteenth. 13. Are you sure? I am &, it is my birthday to-day. 14. We were obliged to crowd sail on the seventh, to keep off the French coast. 15. Did you get to sea

[·] When no substantive follows the number, the singular in this case is used, but in , Seche Mal fieben Fuße machen zwei und vierzig, the plural is used.

⁺ The Germ. Paar may also be sing. ‡ The answer in German would be , Sa' (yes); 'you are right, I have but one score,' is understood.

[§] Say: ,3a' (yes).

on the third or on the fourth? Not before * the fifth, as far as I recollect, or the sixth. 16. Twice six are twelve, and two make fourteen. 17. What a great arithmetician you are! 18. I have now learnt arithmetic † ° for five years. 19. Have you only three of them? No ‡.

Lesson 78.

Main feature: Word-Building.

514. Vocabulary. Folly (Thorheit; from Ahor, fool, 55). Riches (Richthum; from reigh, rich, 58). Wisdom (Meisheit; from meige, wise, 55). Gardening (Gartnerei; from Garten, garden, 53, c). Vanity (Eitelkeit; from eitel, vain, 56). Ingratitude (Unbankbarkeit; from bankbar, thankful, and the negative particle un [= Eng. un or in], 56). Bitterness (Bitterkeit; from bitter, bitter, 56). Courageous, valiant (muthig; from Muth, courage, 59, a). Valour, bravery (Tapsferkeit; from tapfer, brave, 56). Total, entire (ganglid; from gang, whole, 63). Ridge of mountains (Gebirge; from Berg, mountain, 49, a). Obstacle (Hindernif; from hindern, to hinder, 51). Westerly (mestid; from Mest, west, 63, a). Alliance (Bundnif; from Bund, covenant, 51). Attack (Angriff; from griff, imp. of greisen, to seize, and ,an' [on]: thus, a seizing, falling, or pouncing upon). Youth, young man (Jangling; from jung, young, 46). Secret, mystery (Geheimnif; from geheim, secret, 51, a). Darkness (Dunktheit; from bunkel, dark, 55). Piety (Frömmigsteit; from fromm, 56, a). Growth (Madgethum; from madsen, to wax, to grow, 58, a). Peaceful (frieblid; from Sriede, peace, 63). Regret (Bedauern [substantively used]; from bedauern, to regret, Appendix B). Travelling (Reisen [subst. used] = reisen, to travel, 47).

Questions. Name some words in which I or n are inserted for euphony.

With what prefix are substantives formed which have a collective or frequentative sense ?

In what derivative substantives is the vowel mostly modified !

^{*} With , erft ' (i.e. 'not sooner than ').

⁺ Say: lur. 'I have learnt (to) reckon,' &c. Ich habe rechnen gelernt.

[†] The Germans answer questions of that sort affirmaticely by yes (3a), or by repeating, as in English, the substance of the question; e.g. 'only three,' nur brei, or by 'not more' (night mehr).

Exercise 78.

- 515. (a) 1. Geht nicht bie Thorheit manches * Jung= lings oft weit? 2. Ich habe manches erbulbet im Leben. 3. Richt ber Reichthum, fonbern bie Beisheit, macht ben Menfchen gludlich. 4. Er liebt fehr bie Gartnerei. 5. Seine Gitelfeit nicht weniger als seine Undankbarkeit find hochst tadelnewerth. 6. Warum sprichst bu benn immer mit folder Bitterkeit? 7. Der muthige Relbberr =griff fodann mit der ganzen Reiterei ben linken Flugel an=, und zeigte eine außerorbentliche Tapferkeit! nach biesem blutigen Angriff und ber barauf folgenden gang= lichen Niederlage ber Reinde, Schloß er ein Bundniß, und =20g fich alsbann ohne Hinderniß hinter bas feile weftliche Gebirge zurud-. 8. Mancher lacht heute, ber morgen weinen wird. 9. Ift nicht mancher ehrliche Mann schon bas Opfer beines Hasses geworden? 10. Manche Mutter beweint jett ihren Sohn, benn die Schlacht ist verloren. 11. Manches Rind wird burch bose Beisviele schlecht und ungehorsam.
- (b) 1. The difference† is not so great as you might imagine. 2. Is not distinguishing † often very difficult? 3. That is only an evasion † of the question I put you. 4. Have you any intercourse † with him now? 5. I am tired of walking †. 6. The walk † which his friend took to town in the middle of the night, is quite a mystery to him. 7. I can't see at all in this utter darkness. 8. I do it from gratitude, and not from vanity. 9. Her piety is great. 10. His boldness surpasses every thing. 11. What can be compared with sincere friendship? 12. He tired himself out by taking a long walk in the heat of the day. 13. The growth of the southern plants in the northern parts of our vast kingdom depends on many

^{*} Its declension is that of the ancient form of the adjective; see Lesson 17: so, etlide (some), viele (many), mehrere (several), &c. + See Appendix, 46, f.

circumstances. 14. Having come down the steep ridge of hills, he stept into our peaceful hut, saluting my countryman and me with great sincerity and friendship: after having stayed for a few hours, he went down to the river side, expressing a deep regret at being compelled to leave us so soon. 15. I know him by his having an affected lisp. 16. Many a man thinks himself wise, who is any thing but that 17. I have had many a sorrowful hour, since you saw me last. 18. Many a youth has been ruined by it.

Lesson 79.

Some instances and peculiarities with reference to Place.

516. (Eng.) Wherever; at whatever place. (Germ.) Where also.

(Eng.) To whatever place. (Germ.) Whither also. (Bohin auch.)

517. a) If denoting motion towards the speaker, the German particle, her' is appended to adverbs of place:

Sieher or hierher (hither); herab (down); herbei (by, near); all with notion of 'where I am, or we are.'

(3), Sin, denoting motion from the speaker:

Spinat (down); hinauf (up); hinzu (near towards);
hinein (into); hinaber (over); all with notion of
where the others are.

So: hervor (forth); heraus (out); heran (on, near); hinweg (away); hinburch (through); hin und her (liter. hither and thither = to and fro).

518. (Eng.) To turn any body out of doors.

(Germ.) To throw any body out to the door or to the house.

(Jemanden zur Thur or zum Hause hinauswerfen *.)

519. VOCABULARY. Refreshing (erfrischen); from erfrischen, to refresh, et, an intensive particle or prefix, and participial ending b, 69). Cold, coldness (Kälte; from falt, cold, 54, e). Peaceful (frieblich; from Friebc, peace, 63). Covered (bebeckt; from becken, to cover [and participial ending, t. 1], 68). Autumnal or what relates to autumn (herbstlich; from herbst., autumn, 63).

Exercise 79.

520. (a) 1. Herein !! 2. Kommet hieher! 3. Geh' borthin. 4. Warum geben Sie hinaus? 5. Beghalb kommen Sie herunter? 6. Den steilen Berg hinab fteigen. 7. Er kommt jeden Morgen ben fteilen Pfad 8. Indem er unten am Berge fand, rief er uns herauf. zu: Kommet herab (zu mir)! 9. Sobald wir zu ihm hinab gestiegen maren, rief er wieberum : Steigt jest ben schroffen Relfen binauf, zu ben andern. 10. Gie wollen mich also zur Thur hinaus werfen: bin ich beghalb (or beswegen) herein gekommen? 11. Das Gras keimt ichon aus der schwarzen Erbe hervor, die ben erfrischenden Regen trinket. 12. Um jenseitigen Ufer stebend, rief ber alte Felbherr aus: , Laß jett bie gange Reiterei heruber seten.' 13. Schiffer, wollt ihr mich und mein vor Ralte zitterndes Rind mit euch in eurem kleinen Rahn hinuber nehmen? benn bort fteht unsere friedliche mit Strob bebedte Butte : ba follt ihr fobann mit uns hineintreten, um euch mit Speise und Trank zu erquicken! 14. Geh' nicht hinaus, ber Wind weht herbftlich burch bie burren Zweige. 15. Er lauft ben ganzen Tag hin und her, ohne fich mit etwas Nüglichem zu beschäftigen.

A euphemistic term for it, is 'To show any body the door,' Stemanben bie Thur zeigen (understood: 'that he may go out').

+ Litr. 'harvest,' by metonymy, inasmuch as the fruit is gathered in autumn

^{# = &#}x27;Come in!' the 'come' being implied by , her' (to me).

ı

(b) 1. Why don't you step in? 2. Go out! 3. You had much better come in and stay for a few hours. Come in, pray*! 4. Has not the old shepherd come down the steep mountain this morning? 5. It is not likely he should come in, since you turned him out of doors yesterday. 6. He ran towards the place +, to see what was the matter ‡. 7. Either go up or come down; but don't stand in my & way. 8. He then ordered the army to come over (= to cross) where we now stand. 9. The ferry-man is going to take them over (where the others are). 10. Why should not I go to him? 11. He comes down that steep hill almost every morning, and often twice a-day. 12. On the other side the river stands a small peaceful hut; shall not we step in and remain there for a day or two? 13. Some day I shall go up that steep mountain and stay the whole day. 14. I shall not come down before sunset, unless there should be a storm ||. 15. He came down the steep rock two days ago, leading by his hand his young child, and being followed by his faithful dog.

Lesson 80.

521. Rule 1. The preposition zu (to) to be suppressed before the infinitive, whenever the copula expresses equality, or may be represented thus (=): as, 'to steal' is 'to sin' (to steal = to sin), steblen ist simble fundigen: hence arises the German idiom heißt (i.e. 'is or may be called'), used instead of ist (is). Here are a few easy lines, of which each contains an infinitive of that sort.

^{*} With , bodh.' + With , hingu.' + Say: , mas es gebe' (litr. 'what it might give'), a peculiar turn, as in French, 'ce qu'il y avait' (litr. 'what it had').

[§] Trans. litr. to-me in the way, mir im Bege.

| Sturm' (of wind merely), but if = tempest, Gewitter.

522. Vocabulart. Unavoidable (undermeiblich); from meiben, to avoid, lich [= Eng. ly], and negative particle un [= Eng. un, dis], 63). Scholar (Schüler; from Schule, school, 43). To instruct (betwen; from lehren, to teach, 68). Divine (göttlich; from Sott, God, 63). Project (Entwurf; from werfen* and ent, 72). Visible (fichtbar; from sehen, to see, and affix bar, 62). Peaceful friedsam; from Friede, peace, 62, b). Drinkable (trintbar; from trinten, to mink, 62, c). Eclipse (Kinsterniß; from finster, dark, 51). Remannt (Ueberbleibseis; from bleiben, to remain, and über, over, 52 and 73). Exeminate (weibisch); from Weib, woman, 61, f). Of this place (hiesig; from bier, here, 59, c). Of this day (heutig; from heute, today, 59, c). Bald-headed (tahltöpsig; from Rahltops, a bald-headed person, 59, c). Citizen (Bürger; from Burg, borough, 43, a).

Exercise 80.

523. (a) 1. 3m Glud | nicht ju bein und | im Sturm |

nicht zalgen, Das Unvermeidliche mit Burde tragen, Das Gute schähen, an dem Schönen sich erfreun, Das Leben lieben und das Grab nicht scheun, Und seft an Sott und best Zukunft glauben: Heißt + leben, heißt dem Lod die Schrecken rauben.

- Rule 2. Bu is not to be suppressed when it denotes purpose, or whenever you can turn bamit or bamit baß by an infinitive with um ‡.
- 2. Der Student reiset um ein Vergnügen zu haben (= damit er habe). 3. Der Schüler liest, um sich zu belehren (or merely sich zu belehren). 4. Der Vater liest die Zeitungen, um sich zu erholen. 5. Man ist, um zu leben und lebt nicht, um zu essen.
 - 6. Es ist ein weiser Spruch, du mußt ihn nie vergessen, Man ist nur daß man lebt, und lebt nicht um zu essen.

^{*} See Lesson 30, on primary derivatives of ancient form, that change the radical vowel.

[†] Litr. all this may be called living (= this is indeed to live, &c.).

† The following sentences are given with bamit in Exercise 29.

- 7. Das heißt gu * Mittag effen! 8. Das beißt gu + BBaffer werben!
- (b) 1. To obey the laws is (heißt) to love one's country: to love one's country is the duty of every one. 2. To act (= to be active) is to live. 3. To do good, othat is indeed to live after the divine law. 4. That is something like trunning! 5. That is indeed to act generously. 6. He is now going to read the newspapers, to refresh himself after work. 7. I fear your fine prospects will all end in smoke §. 8. Will it be a visible eclipse of the san? 9. He is very peaceable. 10. Is the water drinkable? 11. Take that remnant. 12. Don't be effeminate. 13. He is a citizen of this town. 14. The morals of this age are corrupt. 15. The project is very bold. 16. The danger seems unavoidable.

Lesson 81.

524. Some useful idioms of werben.

525. Vocabulary. Preacher, elergyman (Prebiger; from prebigen, to preach, 43, b). Happy (gludlid); from Glud, luck, 63). Sincere (aufrichtig). Relation (Berwandte; from verwandt, related, 44).

^{*} Observe that zu is not connected with the infinitive, but with Mittag.

⁺ Litr. 'to become or be turned to water,' preverbially for 'to be frustrated, to miscarry: 'zu is here connected with Basser.

† With has heißt a litr. 'that is called to dine, run.' Ac.—The

[‡] With bas heißt; litr. 'that is called to dine, run,' &c.—The French 'voilà diner, courir, chanter,' &c.

[§] Litr. 'to turn into water.'

Familiarly for heirathen, which is more usual.

Reasonable, intelligent (verstånbig; from Berstanb, 59). Force (Gewalt'). Strength (Stårte; from start, strong, 54, s). Slavish (stachtish); from Knecht, servant, slave, 61, a). Envisus (neibish); from Reib, envy, 61, s). Spanish (spanish); from Spanien, Spain: so, english, from England, England, 61, b). Precept (Borschrift; from scheen, to write, see Lesson 34, 249, and App. 74). Virtuous (tugenbhaft; from Lugenb, virtue, 64, a). To settle + (sich nieberslassen; from lassen, to let, and nieber, down [litr. to let oneself down]). Bail (Bûrge, ber). Architect (Baumeister, ber).

Exercise 81.

- 526. (a) 1. Was will bein jüngerer Bruber benn werden? 2. Ift Ihr Sohn schon Prediger geworden? 3. Meine jüngste Schwester und der Sohn des alten Grasen werden in ungefähr einem Monate ein glückliches Paar werden. So †? 4. Laßt uns nur suchen jeden Tag besser, weiser, aufrichtiger und tugendhafter zu werden. 5. Ich glaubte der alte Graf sei Bürge für Ihre arme Verwandte geworden. 6. Mas willst du denn eigentlich zwerden, sage mir? 7. Mas wird aber aus dir werden ||, wenn du nicht arbeiten willst? 8. Werde doch Tendlich einmal verständig! 9. Die Stärke und Gewalt entscheiden hier allein. 10. Sei nie knechtisch gesinnt. 11. Sei weder neidisch noch zänkisch, ich bitte dich.
- (b) 1. He is getting childish. 2. Is she ** a Spanish or an English vessel? 3. Charles would never have grown wise without the good precepts of his old friend. 4. Can any body grow wise without following †† good counsel? 5. Without him you would never have grown wise. 6. Must not people become virtuous before they can be happy? 7. Tell of me, what is to become of you, if you will not learn? 8. What is your brother going to be? 9. Is he

[•] A primary derivative of middle form, which assumes the augment gt (42, 4).

⁺ That is, to fix one's abode.

[‡] Familiarly for 'indeed' or 'will they!'

[§] Litr. 'properly;' it means here 'after all.'

Litr. 'to become out of thee,' = 'of thee.'

[¶] Render, both in Eng. by 'at length,' or the emphatic 'do.'

** Say: 'the 'it.' + Say: 'without to follow.'

going to be an architect or a merchant? Neither one nor the other*; he means to go to the bar. 10. He is going into orders within a month or so, I believe†. 11. After they had become a happy couple, they set out immediately to settle in America, as I was told ‡. 12. That is not my fault, but rather yours. 13. It is not my wish that you should enlist for a soldier, but your own.

Lesson 82.

527. (Eng.) It is all very fine to say, &c. (Germ.) Thou hast good (to) say, &c. (Du hast gut sagen §.)

(Eng.) He will not own to it.

(Germ.) He will it not have word.
(Er will es nicht Wort haben.)

(Eng.) To live well, be comfortably situated with any body.

(Germ.) To have it well with any body [= at his house].
(Es bei jemanden aut haben.)

528. Observe. Sturzen (in ber Schlacht, with dative) means 'to fall (= be killed) in battle.'

Sturgen in bie Schlacht, with acc., means 'to rush into it.'- 'To be thrown from one's horse,' vom Pferbe sturgen.

529. VOCABULARY. Murderous (morberisch; from Morb, murder, 61, c). Fight (Gesecht; from sechten, to fight: ge denotes here a continuance or repetition of an act, 50, 2). Oppressor (Unterbrücker; from brücken, to press, 43, b). To encourage (ermutbigen; from Muth, courage, 66, a). To inspire (begeistern; from Geist, spirit, 66, c, and 68).

^{*} Reins von Beiben.

⁺ Say: wie ich glaube (litr. 'as I believe').

[‡] Say: 'as I have heard,' wie id, gehort or vernommen habe. § It answers precisely to the French idiom, 'Tu as beau dire.'

Exercise 82.

- 530. (a) 1. Wer hat, ber hat*. 2. Hab' ich ist besser als hatt' ich +. 3. Sie will es nicht Wort haben, baf fie auf ihre Freundin eifersuchtig ift. 4. Du haft bich nicht in die Sache zu mischen. 5. Saben Sie etwas dawider? 6. Er hat gewiß seine Gedanken anderswo, sonft murbe er biese leichte Frage beantworten. 7. Batte er nicht seine Gebanken andersmo gehabt, fo murbe er jene leichte Frage gewiß beantwortet haben. 8. Spartacus tobtete fein Pferb. als die Schlacht begann : er fturzte fobann mit feinen tap= fern Kampfgenoffen in bas morberische Gefecht. 9. Sturte nicht Spartacus in jenem morberischen Gefecht, ba er mit eigner hand sein Schlacht=Roß zuvor getobtet hatte? Gang recht! 10. Bin ich ! Sieger, fagte er, fo werbe ich beren genug haben; unterliege ich aber, so bedarf ich besten & nicht. 11. Satte ich bas gewußt, so mare ich gekommen. 12. Baren Sie gestern in ber Stadt gewesen, fo batten Sie ihn sehen konnen. 13. Sind Sie nicht gestern in die Stadt gefahren? Nein, ich bin ju gug gegangen. 14. Ihr Vater ist indeg gefahren, nicht mar ||? 3a ¶! 15. Und er hat überdies felbst gefahren, ba, wie Sie wissen, ber arme Rarl fich bas rechte Bein gebrochen, inbem er über einen breiten Graben mit feinem Pferbe feten wollte.
- (b) 1. Had you but told me it, I might have done something for him. 2. If you had told me it, I should have sent for ** you. 3. He seems to have his thoughts

^{*} Litr. 'he that has, has' (= beati possidentes).

⁺ Construe it literally: the meaning is, 'a bird in the hand is worth two in the bush.'

^{# &#}x27;If I am.'

[§] Sing., speaking of his own: beren, pl., speaking of the enemy's. To be turned by 'did he not !' the German idiom in this case comes near the French n'est-ce pas? or is the same as the Italian non

The , Sa' (yes) in this case answers to the English 'he is.' which idiom the Germans express by the word 'yes;' 'he is not' would be Mein (no).
•• With abholen lassen.

elsewhere. 4. You have nothing to do with the matter*. 5. If you had taken the reins +, I might probably have gone out t with you in your new carriage. 6. He will not own § it, that he was seized with fear, when he first heard of the danger | he was exposed to. 7. Was not he thrown ¶ from his horse in that murderous fight? 8. Did not he rush into the fight, that he might encourage his brave companions in arms? 9. Arnold von Winkelried, having harangued his brave companions in arms, rushed into the fight, and having seized a number of lances, buried them in his own body, and thus opened ** to his compatriots a road into the close ranks of the oppressors of his noble country. . 10. Is this an historical fact? It is, and the following lines may be read ++ in a small chapel built on the battle field.

> D, ihr Belben, die ihr tt hier gefallen, Gunbelfinger & und Du Winkelrieb, Eures Namens Ruhm wird ewia schallen.

^{*} With sich mischen (to mix): see Ex. (a).

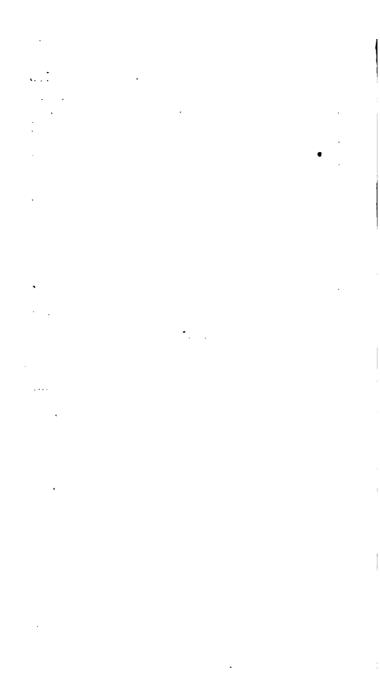
‡ With gefahren sein. + With gesahren haben. # With s & With: ,es night Wort haben. # With s || Insert the relative bie or welche in the dative.

T Use fturgen (vom Pferbe), with dat. of place.

^{**} Say: 'he broke a road' (eine Bahn brechen).
++ With: 'can one read,' kann man lesen, or 'one reads,' liest

^{##} The repetition of the pronoun after the relative is emphatic.

⁸⁸ The name of another combatant.



APPENDIX.

ON THE GENDERS OF SUBSTANTIVES.

1. TABLE OF GENDERS.

Masculines are printed in capital letters; feminines in small roman type; neuters in italics +.

MASCULINE.	FEMININE.	NEUTER.
Primary substantives of the ancient form (and their compounds): including those in EL, EM, EN, ER. Names of persons and animals that are of the nature of adjective substantives. Secondary substantives in ER, LING.	Primary substantives of the middle form. Secondary substantives with terminations ung, ei, e, heit or keit, schaft.	Abstract substantives of the description of adjective substantives. Substantives with prefix go. Affixes chen, lein, cl, niss, sal, sel, thum. Names of countries and places.
[Exceptions.] Those which prefix Ge: which are mostly neuter. The list Aas, Amt, &c., neuter. (3—10) Ader, Auster, &c., fem. (12) Names of rivers in el, er, which are fem. Alter, Bauer, &c., neuter. (15)	[Exceptions.] List 16 (Bast, Br- Dacht, &c.) m. Hampt, Heft, Gift, Kleinod, Licht, Stift Hornung, der.	[Exceptions.] (1) Gebrauch, Genuss, Geruch, Gertank, Gestank, Gesang, Gebanke. (2) Geburt, Gebühr, Geberde, Gefahr, Gewalt ‡. (3) Irrhum, Reichhum, Wachsthum.
(4) Bedrängniss Bekümmerniss Besorgniss Betrübniss Bewandtniss Empfängniss Erlaubniss Ersparniss	Fäulniss Finsterniss Kenntniss Trübsal Verdammniss Wildniss (5) Lausitz, Mark, Pfalz, Schweiz.	(6) Names of countries with affix ei (die Turkei). (7) Some compounds of gau, au, burg, Rheingau, der Wetterau, die Wartburg, die.

⁺ This only applies to the nominative case.

These are properly of middle form. See 18.

IRRTHUM, der, errour. Reichthum, der, riches. Wachsthum, der, growth.

Bedrängniss, die, affliction. Betrübniss, die, Bekümmerniss, die, sorrow. Besorgniss, die, apprehension. Bewandtniss, die, condition. Empfängniss, die, conception. Ersparniss, die, savings. Erlaubniss, die, permission.

Fäulniss, die, putrefaction. Finsterniss, die, darkness. Kenntniss, die, knowledge. Verdammniss, die, damnation. Wildniss, die, wilderness,

Trübsal, tribulation, is fem. or neuter.

2. PRIMARY DERIVATIVES OF THE ANCIENT FORM ARE MASCULINE. [See 212.]

THE FOLLOWING LISTS GIVE THE EXCEPTIONS THAT ARE NEUTER,

Most neuter primitines with prefix ge, Or with a final liquid, take an e For plural,-which unmodified should be. A final semi-consonant + or mute, (If without ge-) the plural er doth suit.

[Note.—An asterisk is prefixed to the words that do not follow the general rule with respect to pl. in e or er.]

3. (A and D)

Aas, Antlitz, Auge, Amt, must neuter be, To these add Dach with Ding and Dorf in D. Of Auge let their plural Augen be; Antitz and Ding their plural make in e.

Aas, das: carrion, dead body. Pl. Aeser. Antlitz, das: countenance [a poetical word, especially of the countenance of the Deity]. Pl. die Antlitze.

Auge, das: eye (G. Auges, D. Auge). Pl. die Augen.

Ant, das: office. Pl. Aemter.

Dach, das: roof. Pl. Dacher.

*Ding, das: thing. Pl. Dinge. Dorf, das: village. Pl. Dörfer.

4. (B)

The neuter primitives with which we meet In B are Blut and Brod, the 'bread' we eat.

⁺ S or sch. So also those in ch = aspirate mute.

Bad, Beil, Bein, Bier, Begehr, Besteck, Blei, 'lead.' Bild, Blatt, and Boot, Brett, Buch, with Bett, 'a bed.' Against the rule we Bette, Brode, see; And Boot too Boots (or Bots) make in s. For 'ribbons' Band its plural Bänder makes; Bande are 'ties;' BAND, 'volume,' BANDE takes. Blut, Blei, Begehr, are never plural: and Remember that 'the volume' is der BAND.

Bad, das; bath. Pl. die Bäder. Begehr, das: desire. No pl. Beil. das: hatchet. Pl. die Beile. Bein, das: leg. Pl. die Beine. Besteck, das: case. Pl. die Bestecke. Bett, das: bed. Pl. die Bette. Bier, das: beer. Pl. die Biere.

Bild, das: image. Pl. die Bilder. Blatt, das : leaf. Pl. die Blätter. Blei, das: lead. Blei, das: lead. No pl. Blut, das: blood. *Boot, das: boat. Pl. die Boote. *Brod, das: bread. Pl. die Brode. Buch, das: book. Pl. die Bücher. Brett, das: board. Pl. die Bretter.

(E)

The letter E has just six and no more. Ei, Eis, Eck, Ende, Erbe, and Ers, 'ore.' But F has eight; Fach, Fass, Fell, Feld, a 'field.'
Feuer, Floss, Fett, 'fat,' and Fleisch, which fat doth yield. Of these with plural e, remember well, Are only Erz, Eck, Erbe, Floss, and Fell+; Feuer has plural Feuer: and Ende makes Its plural weak, and so die Enden takes.

square, quadrangle. Ei, das: egg. Pl. die Eier. Ende, das: end. Pl. die Enden (but sing. -es, -e). Erbe, das: inheritance. Pl. die Erbe. Erz, das: ore. Pl. die Erze. Fach, das: (1) shelf, panel; (2) department in literature, &c. Pl. die Fächer.

[Eck, das: corner] Viereck, das: Fass, das: cask. Pl. die Fäs-Feld, das: field. Pl. die Felder. Fell, das : skin. Pl. die Felle. Feuer, das: fire. Pl. die Feuer (as sing.). Floss, das: float. Pl. die Floss, or Flösse. Fett, das: fat. No pl. Fleisch, das: flesh. No pl.

6. (G, H)

G too has seven: Garn with Glied and Glas, Both Geld and Gold with Grab, a 'grave,' and Gras. In H we meet with twelve: Harz, Haus, and Heil; Hemd, too, and Herz, with Holz, the 'wood' we pile. Heu, Horn, and Hirn, the 'brain,' with Huhn, a 'hen,' And Heer, with Haar, the 'hair' of beasts or men.

To liquid endings (which by rule take ϵ In plural) 'rosin,' Harz, must added be. Herz is in plural weak, and Herzen makes; Herz, Herzens, Herzen, Herz, the sing'lar takes. So Hemd its plural er for en forsakes +.

Garn, das: yarn, net. Pl. die | Heil, das: salvation, prosperity. Garne. Geld, das: money. Pl. die Gelder (of several sums). Glas, das: glass. Pl. die Gläser. Glied, das: limb. Pl. die Glieder. Gold, das: gold. No pl. Grab, das: grave. Pl. die Gräber. Gras, das: grass. Pl. die Gräser. Haar, das: hair. Pl. die Haare. *Harz, das: resin. Pl. die Harze (of several sorts). Haus, das: house. Pl. die Häuser. Heer, das: army. Pl. die Heere.

No Pl. *Hemd, das: shirt. Pl. die Hemden (in pop. language, Hemder). *Herz, das: heart. Pl. Herzen (G. sing. Herzens, D. Herzen). Heu, das: hay. No pl. Hirn, das: brain. Pl. die Hirne. Holz, das: wood. Pl. die Hölzer 1. Horn, das: horn. Pl. die Hörner 1.

Huhn, das: fowl, hen. Pl. die Hühner.

7. (I, K, L)

Two only, Jahr and Joch, belong to J: Kalb, Kind, Kinn, Kleid, Knie, Korn, Kraut, Kreuz, to K. Lamm, Land, Laub, Lehn, Leid, Lied, with Lob and Licht &, Loch, Loos, and Loth, may all from L be pickt. Of these Joch, Loos, and Loth, with Kreuz, a 'cross,' Of r in plural do regret the loss.

Jahr, das: year. Pl. die Jahre. *Joch, das: yoke. Pl. die Joche. Kalb, das: calf. Pl. die Kälber. Kind, das: child. Pl. die Kinder. Kinn, das: chin. Pl. die Kinne. Kleid, das: suit of clothes: (of women) gown. Pl. die Kleider (clothes).

Knie, das: knee. Pl. die Knië (2 syll. as in gen. des Kni-ës). Korn, das: a corn or grain, corn. Pl. die Körner.

Kraut, das: herb. Pl. die Kräuter. *Kreuz, das: cross. Pl. die Kreuze. *Lamm, das: lamb. Pl. die Lämmer.

Land, das: land, country. die Länder (but die Lande, 'territories,' or countries belonging to one realm).

Laub, das: leaves (collectively). No pl.

Lehn, das: feudal grant, fief. Leid, das: sorrow. No pl. Licht &, das: light. Pl. die Lich-

ter. Lied, das: song. Pl. die Lieder.

Lob, das: praise. No pl. Loch, das: hole. Pl. die Löcher. Loos, das: lot. Pl. die Loose. *Loth, das: plumb line, solder, Pl. die Lothe.

⁺ But plur. Hemder in popular language.

[‡] Holz, Horn, when = different kinds of wood, horn, take pl. Holz, Horne; but Holzarten, Hornarten, are more commonly used.

[§] Dr. Becker now considers this word to be of the middle form.

(M, N, O, P, R.)

Mals, Mell, with Mal and Mahl, Meer and Moos, 'moss,' Mark, Mass, and Merk, Muss, Maul, in Latin 'os.' Nest, Netz, in N:-Obst, Ohr, and Oel, in O, Paar, Pech, Pfand, Pferd, with Pfund, a 'pound' or so: Rad, Reich, Reis, Rind, Rohr, Ross, Recht, Reh, a 'roe.' Mass, Moos, Netz, Pfund, and Recht, Merk, Pferd, a 'horse,' Take plural e; so Mus, Reh, Reich and Ross. Reis, Rind, and Maul, with which we glibly speak, Make er in plural. Ohr's in plural weak +.

Mahl, das: (1) meal; (2) sign, Oel, das: oil. Pl. die Oele. spot. Pl. die Mahle (die Mähler, less correct). Mal, das: time. Pl. die Male. Malz, das: malt. No pl. Mark, das: marrow. No pl. *Mass, das: measure. Pl. die Masse. *Maul, das: mouth. Pl. die Mäuler. Meer, das : sea. Pl. die Meere. Mehl, das: meal (of corn). No *Merk, das : mark. Pl. die Merke. [Augenmerk], das: aim. *Moos, das: moss. Pl. die Moose.

Muse. Nest, das: nest. Pl. die Nester. *Netz, das: net. Pl. die Netze. Obst, das: fruit. No pl.

*Mus, das: marmalade. Pl. die

*Ohr, das: ear. Pl. die Ohren.

Paar, das: pair. Pl. die Paare. Pech, das: pitch. No pl. Pfand, das: pledge. Pl. die Pfänder.

*Pferd, das : horse. Pl. die Pferde. *Pfund, das: pound. Pfunde.

Rad, das: wheel. Pl. die Räder. *Recht, das : right. Pl. die Rechte. *Reh. das: roe. Pl. die Rehe. *Reich, das: kingdom. Pl. die Reiche.

Rois, das: twig, scion. Pl. die Reiser.

Rind, das: bullock [bos]. Pl. die Rinder.

Rohr, das: reed. Pl. die Rohre, or Röhre‡.

*Ross, das: horse, steed. Pl. die Rosse.

9. (S)

Salz, Schaf, Scheit, Schilf, with Schloss, and Schock, Schmalz, 'grease.' Schwein, Schwert, Seil, Sieb, Stroh, Spiel, and Stück, a 'piece.' If er you give to Salz, Schaf, Schmalz, Schiff, 'ship,' Schock, Sieb, or Stück, you will have made a slip.

• Salz, das: salt. Pl. die Salze (of several sorts).

*Schaf, das: sheep. Pl. die Schafe.

Scheit. das: piece of wood, billet.

Pl. die Scheite (in some parts, die Scheiter). *Schiff, das: ship. Pl. die Schiffe. *Schiff, das: reed. Pl. die Schiffe (of several sorts).

⁺ That is, of the weak or modern form of declension.

[‡] Röhre, die (tube, pipe), makes die Röhren, regularly.

Schloss, das: castle. Pl. die Schlösser. | Seil, das: rope. Pl. die Seile. *Schmalz, das: grease. Pl. die Sieb, das: sieve. Pl. die Siebe. Speck, das: bacon, pork. No pl. Schmalze (of several sorts). *Schook, das: number 60. Pl. die Spiel, das: play, a game. Pl. die Spiele. Schooke. Stroh, das: straw. No pl. Schwein, das: swine. Pl. die Stück, das: piece. PL die Schweine. Stücke. Schwert, das: sword. Schwerter.

10. (T, V, W, Z)

Tau, Thal, Thier, Thor, Tuch, neuters are in T.

Ver-deck, Ver-liess, with Vieh and Volk in V.

Verdeck, Verliess, must have their plural e;

In W, Waohs and Wehr must neuter be.

Weib, Werg, Werk, Wort, with Wild, the sportsman's 'game;'

Zelt, Zeng, Zink, Zinn, and Ziel, which means our 'aim.'

Werk, Zelt, a 'tent,' and Zeng, too, ('cloth,' or 'stuff,')

Take plural e. Now cry we, 'Hold, enough!'

Tau, das: cable. Pl. die Taue. *Thal, das: dale. Pl. die Thäler. Thier, das: animal. Pl. die Thiere. Thor, das: door, gate. Pl. die Thore. Tuch.das: cloth. Pl.die Tucke (but die Tücher, 'handkerchiefs' Verdeck, das: deck. Pl. die Verdecke. Verliess, das: dungeon. Pl. die Verliesse. Vich, das: beast, beasts, cattle (collectively). Pl. die Viehe. Volk, das: people. Pl. die Volker. Wachs, das: wax. Pl. die Wachse (of several sorts).

Wehr, das: dam. Pl. die Wehre. Weib, das: woman. Pl. die Weiber. Werg, das: tow. No pl. *Werk, das: work. Pl. die Werke. Wild, das: game. No pl. Wort, das: word. Pl. die Worter = single words: die Worte = words forming sentences (speech). Zelt, das: stuff. Pl. die Zelte. Zeug, das: stuff. Pl. die Zelte. Zink, das: zinc. Pl. die Zinke (of several sorts). Zinn, das: tin. Pl. die Zinne (of several sorts).

11. PRIMARY DERIVATIVES OF THE FEMININE GENDER

(BESIDES THOSE THAT ARE EVIDENTLY OF THE MIDDLE FORM).

[Many of these are really of the middle form: thus Hut, 'quard,' and Wahl, 'choice,' have dropt e. Others, as Bank, Brust, Spur, assumed the fem. gender at a comparatively late period. Becker.]

These nowns are feminine, Bahn, Bank, Braut, Brut, Brust, Arbeit, Burg, Fuhr, Gans, Gebühr and Flut, Geiss, Gier, Gewalt, Gefahr, Hand, Hast, and Hut, Haut, Huld, Rück, kehr (roturn), Kost, Kuh, and Kur, Laus, Mark, Willkühr, Maus, Maut, Milch, Milz, and Schnur.

Noth, Nuss, Pein, Qual, Rast, Sau, with Scham and Schur, Schaar, Schan, Scheu, Schmach, with ('dysentery') Ruhr. Spur, Stirn, with Streen, and Thir, Wand, Wehr, and Wahl, Wuth ('rage'), with Zier ('an ornament'), and Zahls The final r has ar become in Dauer, With Feier, Mauer, Lauer, Scheuer, Trauer.

Arbeit, die: toil. Bahn, die: path. Bank, die: bench. Braut, die: bride. Brust, die: breast. Brut, die: brood. Burg, die: borough. Flur, die: field. Flut, die: flood. Fuhr, die: carrying. Gans, die: goose. Gebühr, die: duty. Gefahr, die: danger. Geiss, die: goat. Gewalt, die: force. Gier, die: eagerness. Hand, die: hand. Hast, die: haste. Haut, die: skin. Huld, die: favour. Hut, die: guard. Rück-kehr, die: re-

turn.

Kost, die: food. Kuh, die: oow. Kur. die: choice. Will-kühr, die: arbitrary will. Laus, die: loues. Mark, die: boundary. Maus, die: mouse. Maut, die: duty; toll. Milch, die: milk. Milz, die: apleen. Noth, die: necessity. Nuss, die: nut. Pein, die: pain. Qual, die: torment. Rast, die: rest. Ruhr, die: dysentery. Sau, die: sow. Scham, die: shame. Schar or Schaar, die: troop. Schar, die: ploughshare.

Schau, die: show. Scheu, die: fears. Schmach, die: dismace. Schnur, die: string. Schur, die: shearing. Spur, die: trace. Stirn, die: forehead. Streu, die : litter straw. Thür, die: door. Wahl, die: choice. Wand, die: wall. Wehr, die: defence. Wuth, die: rage. Zahl, die: number. Zier, die: ornament.

Dauer, die: duration. Lauer, die: lurch. Feier, die: solemnity. Mauer, die: wall. Scheuer, die: shed. Trauer, die: mourning.

12. PRIMARY DERIVATIVES WITH THE NON-SIGNIFI-CANT ENDING ER THAT ARE FEMININE.

Nouns feminine are Ader, Auster, Elster, Flitter, Folter, Halfter, Kammer, Butter, Kelter, Kiefer, Klammer, Klapper, Leber, Leiter, Maser, Otter, Rüster, Mutter. To these add Schlender, Schulter, Tochter, Blatter; Wimper, an 'eye-lash,' Faser, Feder, Natter.

All weak declension (plural n, unmodified) except Mutter, Tochter.

Ader, die: veim.
Auster, die: oyster.
Blatter, die: blister.
Butter, die: butter.
Elster, die: fibre.
Faser, die: fibre.
Feder, die: pen.

Flitter, die: tinsel.
Folter, die: torture.
Halfter, die: halter.
Kammer, die: chamber.
Kelter, die: wine-press.
Kiefer, die: pine.
Klammer, die: cramp.

a 4

Klapper, die: clapper. Leber, die: lieer. Leiter, die: ladder. Maser, die: spot. Pl. measles. *Mutter, die: mother. Pl. die

Mütter. Natter, die: adder. Otter, die: adder. Rüster, die: elm. Schleuder, die: sling. Schulter, die: skoulder.

Tochter, die: daughter. Pl. die Töchter.

Wimper, die: eye-lash.

MASER, der: vein in wood.

13. It next remains that we should tell
The feminines that end in el.

Achsel, Ampel, Amsel, Angel, Assel,
Deichsel, 'a pole,' and Atzel, Distel, Rassel,
Buckel, Drossel, Eichel, Fackel, Fessel,
Fiedel, Gabel, Geissel, Gurgel, Nessel;
Hechel, Hummel, Kugel, Kuppel, Windel,
To these add Muschel, Nadel, Nudel, Schindel,
Raspel, Schachtel, Schaufel, Schüssel, Spindel,
Semmel, Sichel, Tafel, Stoppel, Staffel,
With Trommel, Wachtel, Wurzel, 'root,' and Waffel.

I still may teach you, in a final line, Rivers in el and er are feminine.

Achsel, die: shoulder.
Ampel, die: lamp.
Amsel, die: blackbird.
Angel, die: kook.
Assel, die: wood-louse.
Atzel, die: magpie.
Buckel, die: boss.
Deichsel, die: pole.
Distel, die: thistle.
Drossel, die: thrush,
throstle.

Eichel, die: acorn. Fackel, die: torch. Fessel, die: fetter. Fiedel, die: fddle. Gabel, die: soourge.

Gurgel, die: throat. Hechel, die: heckle. Hummel, die: humble bee. Kugel, die: globe.

Kuppel, dio: couple, cupola.
Kurbel, die: handle.
Muschel, die: muscle (fish).
Nadel, die: needle.

Nessel, die: nettle. Nudel, die: vermicelli. Raspel, die: rasp.

Rassel, die: ratile. Schachtel, die: box. Schaufel, die: shovel. Schaukel, die: swing. Schindel, die: shingle.

Schussel, die: disk.
Semmel, die: roll (of bread).
Sichel, die: sickle.

Sichel, die: sickle.
Spindel, die: spindle.
Staffel, die: step.
Stoppel, die: stable.
Tafel, die: table.

Tafel, die: table. Trommel, die: drum. Wachtel, die: quail. Waffel, die: sort of

cake. Windel,die:swaddling. Wurzel, die: root.

And die Mosel (the Moselle); die Iser (the Iser); die Oder (the Oder), &c.

Mangel, der: want. Mangel, die: mangle. Buckel, der: bunch, hump. Buckel, die: boss.

14. NEUTERS IN EL AND EN.

Neuters in el are Mandel, Wiesel, Rudel, Segel; in en are Eisen, Laken, 'sheet,' Zeichen and Füllen, Wappen, 'coat of arms,' With Kissen, Becken :- these are all we meet.

Mandel, das: the num- | Becken, das: bason. ber 15. Rudel, das: herd (of Füllen, das: colt. stags). Wiesel, das: weasel. Laken, das: sheet.

Eisen, das : iron. Kissen, das: cushion. Segel, das : sail. Wappen, das: coat of arms. Zeichen, das: sign.

15. NEUTERS IN ER.

Neuters in er (unmodified) are Bauer, With Eiter, Euter, Futter, Gatter, Alter, Gitter, Klafter +, Lager, Laster, Leder, Luder, Messer, Mieder, Muster, Malter, Polster, Silber, Ufer, Wasser, Ruder, With Wetter, Wunder, Zimmer, [Fieber,] Fuder.

Alter, das : age. Bauer, das : cage. Eiter, das: pus. Euter, das: udder. Fuder, das: load. Futter, das: food. Gatter, das : | grating Gitter, das : lattice. Klafter, das : fathom.

camp. Laster, das : vice. Leder, das: leather. Luder, das: carrion. Malter, das: a cornmeasure. *Messer, das :* knife. Mieder, das: boddice.

Lager, das: couch, Muster, das: pattern. Polster, das: enshion. Ruder, das: oar. Silber, das: silver. Ufer, das: bank. Wasser, das : water. Wetter, das: weather. Wunder, das: wonder. Zimmer, das: room.

Also Fieber, das, fever (from the Latin, though febris is feminine).

MASCULINES OF MIDDLE FORM.

The masculines of middle form are DACHT, BAST, DIENST, and DRAHT, with DURST, ERNST, FORST, and SCHACHT. GISCHT, and GEWINNST, HECHT, HERBST, with MOND, BEDACHT, FROST, MARKT, MONAT, with MOST, ROST, SCHAFT, BETRACHT. SCHUTT, SOLD, STIFT, TROST, VERLUST, with WANST, VERDACHT. To these add ZIERAT, 'ornament,' and ZWIST, SALE WICHT, and WUST, 'filth,' with 'vapour,' DUNST, and MIST.

> These all are strong, save ZEIRAT, which forsakes Its strong declension, and ZIERATEN makes.

⁺ All the dictionaries I can consult give Klafter, die.

Bast, der: bass.

BEDACHT, der: reflexion.

BETRACHT, der: consideration.

DACHT, der: wick. DOCHT, ∫

DIENST, der: service. DRAHT, der: wire.

Dunst, der: capour-DURST, der: thirst. ERNST, der: carnest.

Forst, der: forest.

FROST, der: frost.

GISCHT, der: yeast, froth (poet.). GEWINNST, der: gain.

HECHT, der: pike. HERBST, der: autumn. MARKT, der: market.

Mist, der: dung.

MOND. der: moon. MONAT, der: month.

Moer, der : must. Rost, der: rust.

SCHACHT, der: shaft of a mine.

SCHAFT, der: shaft. SCHUFT, der: rascal. Sold, der: pay.

STIFT, der: tag, peg +. TROST, der: consolation. VERDACHT, der: suspicion.

Verlust, der: loss Wanst, der: paunch. Wicht, der: wight. Wusz, der: filth.

ZIERAT, der: ornament. Zwisz, der: dispute.

NEUTERS OF THE MIDDLE FORM. 17.

Of middle form the neuters soon are said, Kind, Kleinod, Licht: with Heft, Stift, and Haupt, 'head.' Kleinodien, 'jewels:' Stift takes plural e: The rest make er. Haupt modified should be [by rule].

Hompt, das: head. Pl. die Häupter. Kind, das: child. Pl. die Kinder. Kleinod, das: jewel. Pl. Kleinodien. Licht, das: light. Pl. die Lichter. Stift, das: foundation. Pl. die Stifte.

Heft, das: handle, hilt, heft: 'number' or 'part' (of a book). Pl. die Hefte.

OF AUGMENTED SUBSTANTIVES.

GEBRAUCH, GENUSS, GRRUCH, GESTANK, GEWINN, GESCHMACK, GESANG, GEDANKE, are masculine;

But feminine Geburt, Geschichte, are, These are of the Gebühr, Geduld, Gewalt, Geberde, and Gefahr. middle form.

Genuss, der: enjoy-

ment. GERUCH, der: smell. GESTANK, der: stench.

Gewinn, der: gain.

GEBRAUCH, der: usc. | GESCHMACK, der: taste. | GESANG, der: song. GEDANKE, der: thought. Geberde, die: gesture. Gebühr, die: duty.

Geburt, die: birth.

Geduld, die: patience. Gefahr, die: danger. Geschichte, die: history.

Gewalt, die: force.

⁺ Stift, das: a (charitable) foundation.

19. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

	8	ing.		PLUR.
	99K.	f.	78.	m., f., n.,
N.	der	die	das	die
Ġ.	des	der	des	der
D.	dem	der	dem	den ™
Ā.	den.	die	das	die.

THE DECLENSION OF SUBSTANTIVES.

Ancient or Strong Declension.

		î.	2.	3.	(Weak or Modern Dec.)
Sing.	G.	e s <i>er</i> s e	e	es or s	en en en
PLUR.	N. G. D. A.	e en e	n	er er ern er	en en en en.

The vowel of the word is often modified in the plural. To modify a vowel is to change a, o, or u, into ä, ö, ü. The diphthong au, when modified, becomes äu.

ANCIENT (OR STRONG) FORM.

To this form belong:

20 A. All massuline and neuter substantives that are properly German.

EXCEPTIONS.

- 21 a. Several names of male persons and animals that are really adjective-substantives. [See List, Bär, &c., 29, b.]
 - b. Fels, Friede, Funke, Herz, Gedanke, Glaube, Name, Buchstabe, Haufe, Schmerz, With Schade, Wille, Same,

are of the weak declension, though masculine or neuter; and also add s to genitive sing. Gen. Felsen.s. Dat. Felsen, &c. But Felsen, &c. But Felsen stakes Herz in acc. sing.: Schmerz retains Schmerz in both dat, and acc. singular.

BUCHSTABE, der: letter. Gen. Buchstabens.
FELS, der: rock. Gen. Felsens.
FRIEDE, der: peace. Gen. Friedens.

Gen. | Funke, der: spark. Gen. Funkens. Genanke, der: thought. Gen. Gedankens. Frie-GLAUBE, der: faith. Gen. Glaubens.

Hers, das: heart. Gen. Herzens (but acc. Herz). HAUFE, der: heap. Gen. Haufens. NAME, der: name. Gen. Namens.

Same, der: seed. Gen. Samens. SCHADE, der: damage. Schadens. Schmerz, der: pain, sorrow. Gen. Schmerzens.

22 B. The following feminines are of the strong declension; they are given in the plural, that they may be the better impressed on the memory:

(Feminines of the Ancient or Strong Declension.)

23. These feminines are strong—their plurals these— Aengste, Aexte, Bänke, Gänse, geese: Die Bräute, Fäuste, Hände, Grüfte, Ausflüchte. Häute, Kräfte, Kühe, Künste, Früchte. Mütter and Töchter, Mägde, Lüfte, Läuse, Nähte, Klüfte, Nüsse, Säue, Mäuse. Geschwülste, Nächte, Schnüre, Städte, Lüste, Wände, Würste, Zünfte, Mächte, Brüste.

So Zusammenkunfte (from Zusammenkunft) and the plur. (which have no sing.) Einkünfte, Zeitläufte +. So Feminines in niss. Noth, "necessity" (as far as it has a plural), takes Noths. But the compounds Ohnmacht, Vollmacht, are weak.

Ausflucht, die: orasion. Pl. Ausflüchte. Axt, die: axe. Pl. Aexte. Bank, die: bench. Pl. Bänke. Braut, die: bride. Pl. Bräute. Brust, die: breast. Pl. Brüste. Faust, die: fist. Pl. Fäuste. Frucht, die: fruit. Pl. Früchte. Gans, die: goose. Pl. Gänse. Geschwulst, die: tumour. Geschwülste. Gruft, die: grave. Pl. Grüfte. Hand, die: hand. Pl. Hände. Haut, die: skin. Pl. Häute. Kluft, die: fissure. Pl. Klüfte. Kraft, die: force. Pl. Kräfte. Kuh, die: cow. Pl. Kühe. Kunst, die: art. Pl. Künste.

Angst, die: anquish. Pl. Aengste. | Laus, die: louse. Pl. Läuse. Luft, die: air. Pl. Lüfte. Lust, die: delight. Pl. Lüste. Macht, die: power. Pl. Mächte. Magd, die: maid-servant. Mägde. Maus, die: mouse. Pl. Mäuse. Mutter, die: mother. Pl. Mütter. Nacht, die: night. Pl. Nächte. Naht, die: seem. Pl. Nähte. Noth, die: necessity. Pl. Nöthe. Nuss, die: net. Pl. Nüsse. Sau, die: sow. Pl. Säue or Sauen. Schnur, die: string. Pl. Schnüre‡. Stadt, die: town. Pl. Städte. Tochter, die: daughter. Pl. Töchter. Wand, die: wall. Pl. Wände. Wurst, die: sausage. Pl. Würste. Zunft, die: quild. Pl. Zünfte §.

⁺ Nearly obsolete: for Zeitläufe used in sing. only. 1 But Schnur, 'daughter-in-law,' has pl. Schnuren.

[§] To these should be added, Brunst, die (conflagration, heat); pl. Brünste.

- C. PLURAL IN ER. (FF Plural er always modifies.)
- 24. a) None but primary derivatives have plural er.. It belongs to the following masculines:

BÖSEWICHT-ER GEIST-ER LEIB-ER RÄND-ER WÄLD-ER
DÖRN-ER GÖTT-ER MÄNN-ER VORMÜND-ER WÜRM-ER.

- (Bösewicht, der: malefactor. Dorn, der: thorn. Geist, der: ghost, spirit. Gott, der: God. Leie, der: body. Mann, der: man. Rand, der: margin. Vormund, der: guardian. Wald, der: forest. Wurm, der: worm.)
 - b) Those primary neuter substantives that do not end in a rowel or liquid, and are without the augment ge-, take pl. er [as Dack, das: Dücker, &c. Gras, das: Grüser, &c.]

EXCEPTIONS.

Beet-e+	Eck-e	Heft-s	М 008-в	Rocht-e
Besteck-s	Erz-e	Joch-e	Netz-e	Reich-e
Blech-e	Floss-e	Kreuz-e	Ort-e	Ross-s
Boot-e	Gift-e	Loos-e	$oldsymbol{P}$ fer $oldsymbol{d}$ -e	Salz-e
Brod-e	Harz-e	Loth-e	Pfund-e	Schaf-e.
Ding-e			•	

25. But the primary derivatives of the neuter gender that take the prefix ge-, or end in a rowel or liquid, take the plural s, as do secondary derivatives.

EXCEPTIONS.

- a) Gemach, das: room. Gemäch- | Gewand, das: garment. Gewänd-Gemüth, das: mind. Gemüth-Ei, das: egg. Ei-er. Horn, das: horn. Hörn-er. Geschlecht, das: gender, race. Huhn, das: hen. Hühn-er. Korn, das: corn. Körn-er. Geschlecht-er. Gesicht, das: face. Gesicht-er. | Lamm, das: lamb. Lämm-er. Gespenst, das: spectre. Ge- | Maul, das: mouth. Mäul-er. Thal, das: valley. spenst-er.
- [Obs. Neuters (without ge-) mostly take plural er, when, though ending in a liquid, they are modifiable, i.e. have a, o, u, for vowel.]
- b) And those in thum (which make -thumer).
- c) From Mal we have { Merkmale, tokens (from Merkmal). Denkmäler, monuments (from Denkmal).

⁺ The English meaning of these words is given in the previous lists of neuters.

- D. (Singular of the Strong: Plural of the Wrak form.)
- 26. The following words are strong in the singular: weak in the plural.
 - s) The masculine substantives:

Ahn, ancestor. Pl. Ahnen (seldom in sing.).
Dorn, Dornes, thorn. Pl. Dornen (also Dörner).
Flitter, Flitters, spangle. Pl. Flittern.
Flosse, Forest, forest. Pl. Forsten.
Gau, Gaues, district. Pl. Gamen.
Gevatter, Gevatters, godfather. Pl. Gevattern.
Loebeers, Lorbeers, laurel. Pl. Lorbeerem.
Mast, Mastes, mast. Pl. Masten.
Nachbar, Nachbars, neighbour. Pl. Nachbarn.
Ppau, Pfaues, peacock. Pl. Pfauen.
See, Sees, lake. Pl. Seen.
Sporne, Spornes, spur. Pl. Spornen.
Stachel, Stachels, sting. Pl. Stacheln.
Strauss, Strausses, ostrick. Pl. Straussen †.
Vetter, Vetters, cousin. Pl. Vettern.
Unterthan, Unterthans, subject. Pl. Unterthanen.
Zierat, Zierats, ornament. Pl. Zieraten.

b) The neuters:

Auge, Auges, eye. Pl. Augen.
Bett, Bettes, bed. Pl. Betten (also Better).
Ende, Endes, end. Pl. Enden.
Hend, Hemdes, shirt. Pl. Hemden (also Hemder).
Ohr, Ohres, ear. Pl. Ohren.

- E. ON THE MODIFICATION OF THE VOWEL
- 27. Reflect, when to decline you try,
 That the weak declension never,
 But added or dash ever
 Its plural modify.
 With vowel modified one declines
 Most feminines and masculines
 With plural e; but neuters plural e
 Unmodified should mostly be.
 Nouns primitive in el, er, en,
 Mostly unmodified remain.
- 28. The plural is unmodified in the following words, &c.:
 - a) No secondary derivatives modify the plural: SCHLOSSEE, MALER, &c.

⁺ STRAUSS, der: 'nosegay,' is regular.

b) All primary derivatives of the massuline gender modify: except-

Aal-e, cels. AAR-E, eagles. Anboss-E, anvils. Anwalt-E, attorneys. ARM-E, arms. DOCHT-E, wicks. Dolch-B, daggers. Dorsch-E, haddocks. EIDAM-E, sons-in-law. GENEAHL-E. husbands. HALM-B, stalles +. HAUCH-E, breaths. HERZOG-E, dukes. Hur-e, hoofs. HUND-E, dogs. KOBOLD-E. hobgoblins. LATT-E, sounds. LEICHNAM-E, corpses. LUCHS-E, lynnes.

Molch-E. salamanders. MOND-E, moons. MONAT-E. months. MORD-E, murders. PFAD-E, paths. SCHAFT-E, shafts. SCHUH-E. shoes. STAAR E, starlings. Stoff-e, stuffs. TAG-B. davs. TRUNKERBOLD-E, drunkards. Unhold-E. monsters. VIELFRASS-E, gluttons. Wiederhopp-e, pecuits. ZOLL-E, inches I.

LACHS-B or LACES-B, salmons (for which Salm-e is provincial).

a) No primary derivatives with the non-significant ending er, el, en, modify; except-

ACRED, field. Aecker. BRUDER, brother. Brüder. HAMMER, hammer. Hämmer. Schwager, brother-in-law. Schwäger. VATER, father. Vater. APPEL, apple. Aepfel. HAMMEL, wether-sheep. Hämmel. HANDEL, quarrel. Händel. MANGEL, fault. Mängel. MANTEL, cloak.

Nabel, navel. Näbel. NAGRL, nail. Nägel. SATTEL, saddle. Sittel. Schnabel, beak. Schnäbel. Vogel, bird. Vögel. FADEN, fathom. Faden. GARTEN, garden. Gärten. GRABEN, ditch. Gräben. HAFEN, port. Häfen. OFEN, stove. Oefen. SCHADEN, damage. Schäden.

Wagen, carriage.

Magen, stomach. Magen or Mägen. Wagen or Wägen.

- d) No primary derivatives of the neuter gender that have not pl. er are modified.
- F. SUBSTANTIVES OF THE MODERN OR WEAR FORM (PL. En, NEVER MODEFIED).
- 29. a) All feminine substantives are weak with the exception of those in 23.

⁺ Halmen, when used collectively.

[#] But Zoll, der: oustom, tax. Pl. Zölle.

130.

b) The following names of male persons and things are weak.

Bän, bear. Bären. BAUER, farmer. Bauern. Fürst, prince. Fürsten. Geck, fool. Gecken. GESELL, companion. Gesellen. GRAF, count. Grafen. HELD, hero. Helden.

HERR, master. Herren. HIRT, shepherd. Hirten. MENSCH, man. Menschen. NARR, fool. Narren. Ochsen. Ochsen. THOR, fool. Thoren. VORFAHR, ancestor. Vorfahren.

- c) All masculine names of persons or animals that end in ϵ (as Bote, Bube,-Löwe).
- d) The (originally adjective) national names in e: Böhme, Bokemian : BRITTE, Briton : SACHSE, Saxon : JUDE, Jew.
- e) The following in er, ar, r [for -re], BAIER, Bararian; BARBAR, Barbarian; KAFFER, Caffre; MOHR, Moor; TARTAR, Tortarian; Ungar, Hungarian.
- G. SUBSTANTIVES WITH TWO FORMS OF PLURAL, BUT WITH DIFFERENT MEANINGS.
- 30. There are some substantives which have two forms of the plural number, originating from varieties of dialect; e.g. Lande and Länder, countries; Orte and Oerter, places; Dornen and Dör-ner, thorns; Hähne and Hahnen, cocks. Different significations are distinguished by different forms of the plural number in the following substantives:-

Band, das. Pl. die Bänder, ribbons.

die Bande, chains, ties. [Band, der, colume: die Bände.]

Bank, die. - die Bänke, benches.

die Banken, (commercial) banks.

Bett. das. - die Bette, beds.

die Betten, bedding. Gesicht, das. - die Gesichter, faces.

die Gesichte, visions.

- die Hörner, horns. Horn, das. die Horne, different kinds of horn.

- die Säue, pigs. Sau, die.

die Sauen, wild boars.

Wort, das. - die Wörter, single words.

die Worte, words forming sentences (speech).

Ding, das. - die Dinge, things generally.

die Dinger, things, for the most part animals or creatures; e.g. die kleinen Dinger, the small animals ; die jungen Dinger, the

young girls. - die Stücke, pieces. Stück, das.

die Stücken, fragments.

DECLERSION OF FOREIGN SUBSTANTIVES.

A.

- 31. As a general rule, foreign substantives of the masculine and neuter genders are declined after the strong declension: feminine substantives after the weak declension.
- 32. More particularly the following classes are of the strong declension:
 - a) Most masculine and neuter names of things :

TEMPEL, Meteor, Instinkt, Problem, Diadem, Dokument, Theater.

b) The masculine terminations al, ar, an, aner, iner, from the Latin alis, arius, anus, inus.

(KARDINAL, ADMIRAL, VIKAR, NOTAR, KAPLAN, DOMINI-KANER, BENEDIKTINER.)

c) The following words:

ABT, PROBST, PABST, BISCHOF, MAJOR, MATADOB, SPION, PATRON, MAGISTER, OFFIZIER.

But sometimes Vikarien, Commissabien, Notarien.

33. Plural er belongs only to

Hospitäl-er Spitäl-er Komisöl-er Regiment-er Parlament-er.

34. None but the following are modified:

CHORĂL-E Kaplan-e Klöster Paläst-e Aebt-e Hospitäl-er Märsch-e Parst-e ALTAR-E KARDINAL-E Kamisöl-er Moräst-e PRÖBST-E BISCHÖF-E Spital-er Kanal-e Снов-в

In GENERAL and Tribunal, practice differs.

B.

- 35. The following have the strong form in the singular: the weak in the plural.
 - a) The masculine names of persons that end in an unaccented or [Lat. or]. Doctor, Professor. (Gen. Doctors. Pl. Doctoren.)
 - b) Neuters in tiv [Lat. tivum]. Substantiv, Substantivs. Pl. Substantiven.

But several (e.g. Motiv, Rezitativ, Vomitiv) have the plural of the ancient form.

- c) Those neuter names of things that now have or once had the Lat. ending ium; and many neuters in al, il [Lat. ale, ile]. Their plural is ien.
 - (Evangelium, Konzilium, Adverb, Partizip, Prinzip— Kapital. Regal, Bacchanal, Fossil.—Plural: Evangelien, Adverbien, &c.)

The following are used in the plural only: Kurialien, Formalien, Naturalien, Mobilien, &c.)

d) The following masculines:

DIAMANT, Diamants—Diamanteu, FASAN, FASANS—FASANEN. KAPAUNS—KAPAUNEN. KONSUL, KONSULS—KONSULEN. MUSKEL, MUSKELS—Muskeln. PANTOFFEL, Pantoffels—Pantoffeln.

PRAPERT, Präfekts—Präfekten.
PSALM, Psalms—Psalmen.
RUBIN, Rubins—Rubinen.
STAAT, Staats—Staaten.
THRON, Throns—Thronen.
TRAKTAT, Traktats—Traktaten.
ZINS, Zinses—Zinsen.

e) The following neuters:

Insekt, das: Insekts—Insekten.
Pronom, das: Pronoms—Pronomen.
Statut, das: Statuts—Statuten.
Verb, das: Verbs—Verben.

Aspekten and Ehepakten ('marriage contract') are used in the plural only.

f) Masculine and neuter substantives adopted from modern languages very often retain both their foreign form and accent, and also their foreign plural in s.

(die Genies, die Fonds, die Lords, die Puddings, die Solos, die Kasinos.)

C.

The following are of the modern or weak declension.

- 36. a) All feminine substantives (Tinktur, Fakultät, Zone).
 - b) Most masculine names of persons, especially:

(Examples.)

α) Those in at, ant, ent, ik, (Lat.) atus, ans, ens, icus, ast, ist, ost, et, it, ot, e.

β) Those in $\begin{cases} \log, & \text{soph}, & \text{nom}, \\ \text{graph}, & \text{phag}, & \text{arch}, \end{cases}$

ADVOK-AT-en, ADJUT-ANT-en, PRUD-ENT-en, KATHOL-IK-en.
PHANT-AST-en, JUR-IST-en, STAR-OST-en, JESU-IT-en, IDI-OT-en.
ALUMN-en.
THEO-LOG-en, PHILO-SOPH-en, ASTRO-NOM-en.
GEO-GRAPH-en, ANTHROPO-PHAG-en, PATEI-ARCH-en.

- c) Most masculine names of persons declined after the weak form were originally adjectives used substantively, or are at least considered so.
- d) The masculine substantives:

Tyrann-en, Quotient-en, Elephant-en.

DECLENSION OF PROPER NAMES.

- 37. a) When proper names of persons are used in the plural number, they are declined as common names; viz. those of male persons in the ancient form, and those of females in the modern; e. g. die Heinriche, die Marien.
 - b) In the singular number, names of males, and those of females which have not the termination e, have only the genitive case pointed out by the sign s; e.g. Heinricks, Elizabeths.
 - c) The names of females with the termination e, take ens in the genitive, and en in the dative and accusative cases; e.g.—
 - N. Marie.
 Karoline,
 Karolinens,
 D. & A. Marien,
 Karolinens,
 - d) Those names of males, the final sound of which is an s, sz, sch, or r, or s, also take the sign ens in the genitive case; e.g. Voss-ens, Max-ens, Fritz-ens.
 - e) Foreign names which have the unaccented terminations as, es, is, us, admit of no sign of declension; and all cases of proper names which cannot be marked by inflection, are denoted by the definite article; e. g. des Elias, des Xerxes, der Doris, dem Plato.
 - f) Proper names of countries and places, like names of persons, have only the genitive marked by the sign s; e. g. Wiens, Berlins.
 - g) When a final s, sz, r, or z, does not permit the sign of the genitive case to be assumed, or whenever another case is to be distinguished, the proper name is placed in apposition to a common name; e. g. der Stadt Mainz, der Festung Schweidnitz, dem Königreich Spanien.

PRONOUNS.

THE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

(1)	(2)		
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	
Sing. N. Ich, I G. Meiner +, of me D. Mir, to me, to myself A. Mich, me, my- self	Bir, we Unjer, of us Uns, to us, to ourselves Uns, us, our- selves	Du, thou Deiner +, of thee Dir, to thee, to thyself Did, thee, thy- self	Sht, you Euer, of you Euch, to you, to yourselves Euch, you, your- selves.	

	(3))	
	Sing.	•	Plur.
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	(They.)
N. Gr, he I	Sie, she	Cs, it	Sie, they
G. Seiner+, of him	Ihrer, of her	Seiner, of it	Ihrer, of them
D. Ihm, to him	Ihr, to her	Ihm, to it	Ihnen, to them
A. Ihn, him	Sie, her	E8, it	Sie, them.

- D. and A. fid, to himself, to itself, to herself, to themselves; himself, herself, itself, themselves.
- 'Himself,' for nom. is felbst (ber Mann selbst, the man himself; id) felbst, I myself). Selbst is also added to the other cases to render them more emphatic: er liebt sid selbst, he loves himself.

VERBS.

39. (1) COMPLETE CONJUGATION OF THE ACTIVE VOICE OF reben (TO SPEAK).

SIMPLE TENSES.

PRESENT TENSE.

Indicative.	Subjunctive.	Conditional.
S. id) rebe	id) rebe	ich rebete
Du rebeft	Du rebest	Du rebeteft
er rebet	er rebe	er rebete
P. wir reben	wir reben	wir rebeten
Ihr redet	Ihr rebet	Ihr rebetet
sie reden	sie reben	sie rebeten.

⁺ Poetically, mein, bein, sein. ‡ Er='it' when it refers to the name of a thing that is masc.; so fit for a feminine thing.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

Indicative.

Subjunctive.

Conditional.

S. ich rebete Du rebetest er rebete P. wir rebeten Ihr rebetet sie rebeten.

COMPOUND TENSES.

PERFECT TENSE.

S. ich habe Du haft er hat P. wir haben Ihr habet fie haben	ich habe Du habest er habe wir haben Ihr habet sie haben	gerebet.	ich håtte Du hättest er hätte wir håtten Ihr hättet sie hätten	}gerebet.
---	---	----------	---	-----------

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

s.	ich hatte	1
	Du hatteft	يد ا
	er hatte	ؿۣٳ
₽.		\ <u>\</u>
	Ihr hattet	٦
	sie batten	Į.

FUTURE TENSE.

S. ich werbe Ou wirst er wirb P. wir werben Ihr werbet ste werben	"	ich werbe Du werbest er werbe wir werben Ihr werbet sie werben	reben.	ich würbe Du würbest er würbe wir würben Ihr würbet sie würben	reben.
---	----------	--	--------	---	--------

FUTURE PRESENT TENSE.

S. ich werbe Ou wirst er wird P. wir werben Ish werben	gerebet 1 haben.	ich würbe Du würbest er würbe wir würben Ihr würbet sie würben	gerebet haben.
--	-----------------------	---	-------------------

 $_{f Imperative}igg\{ S. \ {f rebe}. \ {f P. \ rebet}.$

Indicating

Conditional.

```
Infinitive  \begin{cases} Present: reben. \\ Past: gerebet haben. \end{cases} 
Participle  \begin{cases} Present: rebenb. \\ Past: gerebet. \end{cases}
```

39. (2) THE PASSIVE VOICE. Soren (to Hear).

PRESENT TENSE.

Subinactine

	1 naioaivoe.	Suoju notro e.	Conattonal.
D er P. wi II	werbe u wirft wirb r werben or werbet werben	ich werbe Du werbest er werbe wir werben Ihr werbet sie werben	ich würbe Du würbest er würbe wir würben Ihr würbet sie würben
,		IMPERPECT TENSE.	
	murbe]		
	u wurdest wurde		
	r wurben \geboi	rt.	
	r wurbet wurben		,
με	water j		
		PERPECT TENSE.	
S. id		ich sei	ich ware "
er	ift gehört	Du feist gehört	Du wärest gehört
P. wi	r find (worden.	wir feien morben.	wir maren (worben.
	r seib sinb	Ihr seieb sie seien	Ihr waret sie waren
•	,	, , ,	• • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • • •
a · ·		Pluperfect Tense.	
S. id)	war 1 warst		
er	mar gehoi		
	r waren (worbe	n.	
	r waret waren		
	-	FUTURE TENSE.	
o , x			id whom ?
S. id) Di	wirst	ich werbe Du werbest	ich würbe Du würbest
er	wird gehör	rt er werde gehört	er würde – gehört
	r werben (werbe r werbet	n. wir werben werben Ihr werbet	. wir würben (werben. Ihr würbet
	werben	fie werben	fie warben

ţ

	Fu	UTURE PERFE	CT TENSE.	1 1	•
Indicative.		Subjunc	tive.	Condition	ıl.
S. ich werbe Du wirst er wirb P. wir werben Ihr werbet sie werben	gehört worden fein.	ich werbe Du werbeft er werbe wir werben Ihr werbet fie werben	gehört worden fein.	ich würbe Du würbest er würbe wir würben Ihr würbet sie würben	morben genort
·	MPERATIV	S. werbe P. werbet	gehört.		

P. werbet | genori.

Participle Past: gehört. Future: zu hören.

Infinitive ${m Present: gehört werben. \ Past: gehört worben sein.}$

40. LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS OF THE ANCIENT OR STRONG FORM.

infinitive.	IMPERFECT	PARTICIPLE	PRESENT
	INDICATIVE.	PAST.	CONDITIONAL ¹
Bacten 2, bake	(bu t) backte	gebacten	(when irre-
Bebingen, bargain	bebung	bebungen	gularly
Bebürfen, need	beburfte	beburft	formed).
Befehlen 3, command	befahl	befohlen	beföhle
Befleißen 4, apply	befliß	befliffen	
Beginnen, begin	begann	begonnen	begönne
Beißen ⁵ , bite	biß	gebissen	
Bergen ⁶ , hide	barg	geborgen	
Berften ⁷ , burst	borft ar barft	geborften	börfte
Befinnen, recollect	befann	besonnen	befönne
Besiden, possess	befaß	besessen	•
Betrügen, deceive	betrog	betrogen	
Bewegen 8, move	bewog	bewogen	
Biegen, bend	bog	gebogen	
Biefen, bid	bot	geboten	
Binben, bind	banb	gebunben	
Bitten, beg	bat	gebeten	
Blasen , blow	blies	geblasen	
Bleiben, remain	blieb	geblieben	

¹ See Lessons 34—36. The pupil has been taught to form the present conditional in the regular manner [241]; the following are exceptions [264]

• bu blafeft, er blafet or blaft.

² bu bactft, er bactt. 3 bu befiehlft, er befiehlt. Impor. befiehl.

⁴ Imper. befleiße or befleiß.
5 du birgst, er birgt. Imper. birg.
7 Imper. berste or birst.

To induce; when it means to move, it is regular.

infinitive.	imperfect indicative,	PARTICIPLE PAST.	PRESENT CONDITIONAL
Bleichen 1 (to lose co- lour 2), bleach	blich	geblichen	(when irre-
Braten 3, roast	bratete (briet)		formed).
Brechen 4, break	brach	gebrochen	
Brennen, burn	brannte	gebrannt	
Bringen, bring	bra d ite	gebracht	
Denten, think	bachte	gebacht	
Dingen, barter	bung	gebungen	
Dreschen 5, thrash	(brash) brosh		
Dringen, urgo	brang	gebrungen	
Dürfen 6, dare	burfte	gedurft	
Einschlafen, fall asleep	schlief [ein]	eingeschlafen	
Empfangen, receive	empfing	empfangen	ec
Empfehlen 7, recommend		empfohlen	empföhle
Empfinden, feel	empfand	empfunden	
Entsprechen, answer (cor-	entipracy	entsprochen	
respond with)			
Erbleichen, grow pale	erblid)	erblichen	
Erfrieren, freeze	erfror	erfroren	
Erfüren, choose	ertor	ertobren	
Erlosch, put out (extin- guish)		erloschen	
Erfaufen, drown	erfoff	ersoffen	
Erschallen , resound	erscholl	erschollen	
Ericheinen, appear	er[chien	erschienen	
Erichrecken , frighten	erschrat	erschrocken	
Ertrinten, to be drowned		ertrunken	
Erwägen, weigh over (consider)	erwog	erwogen	
Effen 10, eat	ав	gegessen	
Fahren 11, drive	fuhr	gefahren	
Fallen 12, fall	fiel	gefallen	

¹ Imper. bleiche.

² bleichen, to bleach, or to whiten, is conjugated regularly.

bu bratst, er bråt. Imper. brate or brat.
bu brichst, er bricht. Imper. brich.
bu brischest, er brischet or brischt. Imper. brisch.

^{*} id darf, du darft, er darft.

* id darf, du darft, er barf.

* bu empfiehift, er empfiehit. Imper. empfiehit.

* Imper. eridalle or eridall.

* bu eridrichft, er eridricht. Imper. eridrich.

10 bu ifleft, er iffet or ift. Imper. ift.

11 bu fährft, er fährt. All verbs derived from fahren have the same irregular form, with the single exception of willfahren, which is a regular verb.

¹² bu fallft, er fallt. Imper. falle or fall.

[25

infinitive.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PARTICIPAL PAST.	PRESENT CONDITIONAL.
Fangen 1, catch	fing	gefangen	
Fecten 3, fight	focit	gefochten	
Finben, find	fanb	gefunben	
Flechten 3, plait	flocht	geflochten	
Fliegen, fly	flog	geflogen	
Fliehen 4, fly (take to flight) >	floh	geflohen	
Fliegen 5, flow	floß	gefloffen	
Fressen 6, eat (like an animal)	fraß	gefreffen	
Frieren, freeze	fror	gefroren	
Gabren, ferment	gohr	gegohren	
Gebären 7, give birth	gebar	geboren	
Geben 8, give	gab	gegeben	
Gebieten, command	gebot	geboten	
Gebeihen, prosper	gedieh	gebiehen	
Stfallen, please	gefiel	gefallen	
Gehen % go	ging	gegangen	
Gelingen, succeed	gelang.	gelungen	•
Gelten 10, be of value	galt	gegolten	gõlte
Genesen, recover	genas	genesen	
Genießen 11, enjoy	genoß	genoffen	
Gerathen, prosper	gerieth	gerathen	
Gerinnen, congeal	gerann	geronnen	geronne
Geschehen 12, happen	geschah	geschehen	gewonne
Geminnen, gain	gewann	gewonnen	\ or
Gießen 13, pour	808	gegoffen	Lgewänne
Gleichen, be equal	glidy	geglichen	
Gleiten 14, alip	glitt	geglitten	
Glimmen, glimmer	glomm	geglommen	
Graben 13, dig	grub	gegraben	
Greifen 16, seize	griff	gegriffen	
Daben 17, have	hatte	gehabt	
Palten 18, hold	hielt	gehalten	

¹ du fångst, er fångt. 2 du sichst, er sicht. Imper. stude.
2 du slichst (slechtest), er slicht. Imper. slicht.
4 Imper. sliehe or slieh. 5 Imper. sliehe or sließ.
6 du frissett (gebier).
8 du giehst (giehst), er giebt (gibt). Imper. gieb.
9 Imper. geh.
10 du giltst, er gist. Imper. gist.
11 Imper. genieße or genieß.
12 es geschiehet or geschieht.
13 Imper. genieße or gieß (geuß).
14 Begleiten is a regular verh.
16 Imper. greise or greis. 13 Imper. gieße or gieß (geuß).
15 bu grabst, er grabt.
17 bu hast, er hat.

¹⁸ bu haltft, er halt. Imper. halte or halt.

infinitive.	impe rfect Indi cative.	PARTICIPLE PAST.	PRESENT CONDITIONAL.
Hangen 1, hang	hing	gehangen	
pauen 2, hew	hieb	gehauen	shåbe or
Beben, lift	bob	gehoben	habe
Beißen, bid	hieß	geheißen	٠,
Belfen 3, help	balf	geholfen .	hålfe
Reifen 4, chide	批样	getiffen	
Rennen, know	tannte	getannt	
Klieben, cleave	flob	gefloben	
Klimmen, climb	Flomm	gettommen	
Klingen, ring	E lang	geklungen	
Kneifen 5 pinch	tniff	getniffen	
Kneipen 6 Jamen	inipp	getnippen	
Kommen 7, come	tam	getommen	
Konnen s, can	Lonnte	gelonnt	
Kriechen , creep	Ecod)	getrochen	
Ruren or Ruhren, choose	tor or tohr	getoren or ges	
		tohren	
Laben, load	lub	gelaben	
Lassen 10, let	ließ.	gelaffen	
Laufen 11, run	lief	gelaufen	
Leiden, suffer	litt	gelitten	
Leihen, lend	lieh	geliehen	
Lefen 12, read	las	gelesen	
Liegen, lie	lag	gelegen	
Lugen, tell a lie	log	gelogen .	
Mahlen 13, grind	mahite	gemahlen	
Meiben, shun	mieb	gemieben	
Melten 14, milk	molt	gemolten	
Meffen 15, measure	maß	gemeffen	
Mißfallen, displease	mißfiel	mißfallen	
Mögen 16, may	mochte	gemocht	
Mässen 17, must	mußte	gemußt	

¹ bu hangst, er hangt. Anhangen has the same irregular form, and must be as carefully distinguished from anhangen, as hangen from hången.

Imper. haue or hau.
Imper. feife or feif.

⁵ bu bilfft, er hilft. Imper. bilf.

⁵ Imper. Eneife or Eneif. 6 Imper. fneipe or fneip. Imper. tomm.

ich kann, du kannst, er kann. Imper. tried.

10 bu lässels, er lässet (läst). Imper. lasse or las.

11 bu läusst, er läust. Imper. lause or laus.

12 du liesest, er lieset (liest). Imper. lies. 9 Imper. friede or fried).

¹⁸ Imper. mable or mabl.

¹⁴ bu miltft, et miltt. Imper. melte or milt.

¹⁵ bu miffest, er miffet or mißt. Imper. miß. 16 ich mag, bu magft, er mag. 17 ich muß, bu mußt, er muß.

INPINITIVE	imp erpect indicative.	PARTICIPLE PAST.	PRESENT CONDITIONAL.
Rehmen 1, take	nahm	genommen	
Mennen 2, name	nannte	genannt	
Pfeifen 3, whistle	मिष	- gepfiffen	
Pflegen , cultivate	pflog	gepflogen	
Preisen, praise	pries	gepriesen	
Quellen 5, spring from	guoll	gequollen	
Råchen, avenge	råchte (roch)	geracht or ges	
oranjen, avengo	ond, cou,	rochen	
Rathen 6, advise	rieth	gerathen	
Reiben, rub	rieb	gerieben	
Reißen 7, rend	riğ	geriffen	
Reiten, ride	ritt	geritten	
Rennen, run	rannte	gerannt or ge=	
O 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0		rennet	
Riechen s, smell	≇oď)	gerochen	
Ringen, ring	rang	gerungen	
Rinnen, run (flow)	rann	geronnen	
Rufen, call	rief	gerufen	
Saufen , drink	भिने	gefoffen	
Saugen, suck	fog	gefogen	
Schaffen 10, create	f ďouf	geschaffen	,
Scheiben, separate	Societ	geschieben	
Scheinen, shine	fchien	geschienen	•
Schelten 11, chide	fchalt	gescholten	schölte
Scheren 12, shear	foor	geschoren	1-9****
Schieben 13, shove	Toob	geschoben	
Schießen 14, shoot	TOOB	gefchoffen	
Schinben, flay	fanund	geschunben	
Schlafen 15, sleep	folief	geschlafen	
Schlagen 16, beat	fchlug	gefchlagen	

1 bu nimmft, er nimmt. Imper. nimm.

2 Imper. nenne or nenn. 3 pfeife or pfeif.

4 viz. Freundschaft; in all its other significations it is conjugated regularly.

b du quillst, er quillt. Imper. quelle or quill.

b du rathst, er rath. Imper. rathe or rath.

s Imper.

7 Imper. reiße or reiß.

8 Imper. rieche or riech.

9 bu fäusst, er säust. Imper. sause or saus.

10 Imper. schaffe or schaff, viz. to create; in all its other significations this verb is regular, as are also abidioffen, and ver-. schaffen.

11 bu schiltst, er schilt. Imper. schilt.

12 bu fchierft, er fchiert. Imper. fchier or fchere. 13 Imper. schiebe or schieb. 14 Imper. s
15 bu schläfft, er schläft. Imper. schlafe or schlaf. 14 Imper. Schieße or Schieß.

16 bu ichlägft, er ichlägt. Rathichlagen and berathichlagen are regular verbs.

infinitive.	imperfect indicative,	PARTICIPLE PAST.	PRESENT CONDITIONAL	
Schleichen, meak	fáliá ,	geschlichen		
Schleifen 1, grind	failiff	geschliffen		
Schleißen 2, slit	dis	gefdliffen		
Schließen 3, abut	fa)loß	geschloffen		
Schlingen, intwine	schlang	geschlungen		
Schmeißen 4, smite	[d]miß	geschmiffen		
Schmelzen , melt	idymola	geschmolzen		
Schneiben, cut	(d)nitt	geschnitten		
Schnieben , snuff	fanob	geschnoben		
Schrauben, screw	fdrob	geschroben		
Schreiben, write	schrieb	geschrieben		
Schreien 7, acream	fd)rie	geschrien		
Schreiten, stride	fd)ritt	geschritten		
Schwären, fester	fd;wor	geschworen		
Schweigen 3, be silent	fd)wieg	geschwiegen		
Schwellen , swell	fc)woll	geschwollen	(schwomme	
Schwimmen 10, swim	fd)wa mm	geschwommen	or	
Schwinden, vanish	fdwand	geschwunden	Lschwämme	
Schwingen, swing	fd)wang	geschwungen		
Schwören, swear	dwor (fdwur) geschworen		
Sehen 11, see	<i>fah</i>	gesehen		
Senben, send	fanbte	gefandt		
Sein or feyn 13, be	war, bu warest	gewesen		
(warft), er war				
Sieben, boil	fott	gesotten		
Singen, sing	fang	gefungen		
Sinten, sink	fant	gefunten		
Sinnen, reflect	fann	gesonnen		
Sigen, sit	Íαβ	gefeffen		
Sollen, ought	follte	gefollt		
Spalten, split	spaltete	gespalten'		
Speien 13, spit	ípie	gespien		
Spinnen, spin	fpann	gesponnen	ſpónne	
Spleißen, split	fpliß	gespissen	•	

¹ Imper. schleise or schleis; viz. to sharpen, to whet; in all its other significations it is conjugated regularly.
2 Imper schleiße or schleiß.
3 Imper. schleiße or schleiß.
4 Imper. schmeiße or schmeiße.
5 bu schmilzest, er schmilzt. Imper. schmelze or schmilz.
6 Imper. schniebe or schmeiß.
7 Imper. schreie or schreig.
9 bu schwilk, er schwilkt. Imper. schwill or schwelle.
10 Imper. schwimme or schwimm.

bu schwillt, er schwillt. Imper. 1990.
 Imper. schwimme or schwimm.
 bu stehst, er sieht. Imper. siehe or sieh.
 ich bin, bu bist, er ist, wir sind, ihr seid or send, sie sind. Imper.
 imper. speie or spei. fei or fen.

infinitive.	IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.	PARTICIPLE PAST.	PRESENT CONDITIONAL.
Sprechen 1, speak	(pract)	gesprochen	
Spriegen 2, aprout	prof	gefproffen	
Springen, spring	fprang	gesprungen	
Stechen 3, sting	ftach	gestochen	
Stecken, stick	ftectte or ftat	geftectt	
Stehen 4, stand			∫ftånbe or
Stehen -/ Biand	ftanb	gestanben) stunbe
Stehlen 3, steal	ftahl	gestoblen	stoble
Steigen , mount	ftieg	geftiegen	•
Sterben 7, die	ftarb	geftorben	ftårbe
Stieben 8, fly quickly	ftob	geftoben	•
Stoßen , push	ftieß	gestoßen	
Streichen, stroke	ftrid)	gestrichen	
Streiten, combat	ftritt	geftritten	
Thun 10, do	that	gethan	
Aragen 11, bear	trug	getragen	
Treffen 12, hit	traf	getroffen	
Treiben, drive	trieb	getrieben	
Treten 13, tread	trat	getreten	
Ariefen, drip	troff	getroffen	
Arügen (Ariegen), de-	trog	getrogen	
Arinken 14, drink	trant	getrunken	
Berbergen, hide	verbarg	perborgen	
Berbieten, forbid	verbot	verboten	
Berbleiben, remain -	verblieb	verblieben	
Berbleichen, die	verblich	verblichen	
Berberben 15, spoil	verbarb	verborben	ver bür be
Berbrießen, vex	perbroß	verbroffen	
Bergeffen 16, forget	vergaß	vergeffen	
Berhehlen, conceal	verhehlte	verhehlet or verhohlen	
Berlieren, lose	perlor	perloren	•
Berlofchen 17, become ex-	******	verloschen	
tinguished			

¹ bu fprichft, er fpricht. Imper. fprich.

¹ bu spricht, er spricht. Imper. 140000.
2 Imper. sprieße or sprieß.
3 bu sticht, er sticht. Imper. stich.
4 Imper. steb.
5 bu sticht, er sticht. Imper. sticht.
6 Imper. steige or steig.
7 bu sticht, er sticht. Imper. sticht.
8 Imper. stiebe or stieb.
9 bu stößest, er stößt. Imper. stoße or stoß.
10 Imper thue or thu.
11 bu trägst, er trägt.

¹⁴ Imper. trinte or trint.

¹⁰ Imper, thue or thu.

12 bu trifff, er triff. Imper, triff.

13 bu trittft, er tritt. Imper, tritt.

14 I

15 bu verbirbft, er verdift. Imper, verdift.

16 bu vergisses, er vergift. Imper, vergift.

17 Imper, verlösse or versiss.

infibitive.	imperfect indicative.	PARTICIPLE PAST.	PRESENT CONDITIONAL
Berfdwinben, disappear	verschwand	verschwunden	
Bermirren, confuse	verwirrte (verworr)	verworren	
Berzeihen 1, pardon	perzieh	verziehen	
Bachsen 2, wax, grow	mudis	gewachsen	
Bafajen 3, wash	wu[đ)	gewaschen	
Bagen or Wiegen, weigh	wog	gewogen	
Weichen ', give way	wid)	gewichen	
Beifen, show	wieś	gewiefen	
Wenden, turn	wanbte or wenbete	gewandt (ge- wendet)	
Werben 6, list	warb	geworben	murbe
Werben 7, become	warb or	geworben,mor=	mürbe
•	wurbe, bu	ben (as an	
	wurbeft, er	auxiliary	
	wurde or	verb)	
	ward; wir	•	
	wurben,u.f.n	١.	
Berfen , throw	warf	geworfen	würfe
Winden, wind	wanb	gewunben	
Wissen , know	wußte	gewußt	
Wollen 10, be willing	wollte	gewollt	
Beihen, accuse	zieh	geziehen	
Bieben 11, draw	300	gezogen	
Zwingen, force	zwang	gezwungen.	

Imper. verzeiß.
 bu wächselt, er wächst.
 bu wälchelt, er wäscht.
 Imper. wäge or wiege.
 If weichen means to soften, or to mollify, it is conjugated as a regular verb.

bu mirbst, er wirbt. Imper. wirb.

bu mirst, er wirb.

bu mirfst, er mirst. Imper. wirs.

bu mirfst, er mirst. Imper. wirs.

id meiß, bu meißt, er meiß.

id mill, bu millst, er mill.

Imper. ziehe or zieh, zeuch.

a) In the following forms of the present conditional, the vowel is not the same as that of the imperfect.

Remember halfe, and verbürbe, Würbe, murbe, murbe, fidrbe; Befohle, borfte, and begonne, Empfohle, gotte, and besonne, Schölte, sponne, fichle, and gerönne; Schölte, sponne, fichle, and gerönne; so heben hube may or höbe make.

And stehen toomay å for å forsake.

PRINCIPLES OF WORD-BUILDING (from Becker).

Roots are all verbs which now have, or once had, the strong form of declension.

- (I.) Substantives. Primary derivatives (which are masculine, with few exceptions).
- 41. a) Of the ancient form (1) without any termination: formed from radical verbs, the vowel sometimes being modified, sometimes not [especially in those whose past participle has the same vowel as the present. See examples in 212.]
 - (2) With the non-significant ending er, el, em, or en: Kummer (sorrow, grief). Athem (breath). Wagen (carriage).
 - (3) With prefix ge=: Geset (law: from seten, to place, to establish). Genus (anjoyment: from geniesen, to enjoy).
- 42. b) Of the middle form (which are feminine). Radical vowel changed, and also t, b, (te, be,) ft, or e, appended.
 - g, b, become d, f, respectively before a t, when they follow a short vowel. [See examples in 249.]
 - (2) From some of these forms the final e has been dropt, which makes them liable to be confounded with primary derivatives of the ancient form. [See list 11.]
 - (3) Instead of t, we find at, ut, ob, in a few words, which are to be considered of the middle form: Bierat, bie (ornament). Deimat, bie (home). Deimat, bie (marriage). Armut, bie (poverty). Rleinob, bas (jewel). Instead of t, we often find these words printed with th: Armuth, Deimath, u.f.w.
 - (4) A few primary derivatives of the middle form have assumed the augment ges, and are feminine: Gebathe (gesture). Gebath (duty). Gebutt (birth). Gebuth (patience). Gefaht (danger). Gefahite (history). Gefahrulft (tumour). Gefalt (shape). Gewalt (force). Gewähr (security). [See 18.]

A. CONCRETE SUBSTANTIVES. (Secondary derivatives.)

- 43. a) Et [= Eng. er, or] denotes a man who does. They are derived from substantives (both abstract and concrete). These have the vowel modified: Raufet (a purchaser: from Rauf, a purchase). Bantet (a quarrelsome person; Bant, a quarrel).
 - b) A few come from cerbs; these have not the vowel modified: Reflec (a rider: from reflen, to ride). Lefer (a reader: from lefen, to read).
 - c) Many are from names of countries and places. These are also used as adjectives, but without inflection: Conboner (a Londoner). Gine Conboner Zeitung (a London newspaper).
 - d) In a few words an I or n is inserted before et for eupkony: Kunstelet (artist; Kunst, art). Schulbenet (debtor; Schulb, debt).
 - e) The termination sometimes denotes a male animal: Rater (a tom-cat).
 - f) Et is also affixed to some names of things that are made to do an action; and to some names of animals: Bohtet (gimlet).

 Spechet (sparrow-hawk).
- 44. a) In [= Eng. ess, &c.] the female door of an action, (b) also a female animal: the shepherdess (Hittin). (b) The she-wolf (bit Wölfin).
 - c) This termination also distinguishes females who have a certain rank or perform a certain duty or office: bie Pfarrerin (the clergyman's wife: from Pfarrer, the clergyman of the parish).
 - Adjectives used substantively do not, however, adopt this form. [The female relation, die Berwandte, not die Berwandte.]
- 45. a) Shen [= Eng. kin] \ These terminations form diminutives b) Lein [= Eng. ling] \ from other substantives. Lein is preferred after a mute consonant (especially after a f sound): then after a vowel or liquid (especially after I): Sohnthen (little son). Bachtein (little brook: from Bach, a brook; called in the north, a beck).
 - c) The termination el has a diminutive force in a few words: Metmel (sleeve; properly, little arm).
 - d) These terminations sometimes form diminutives of endearment [as ling in darling]: Liebthen (darling).
- 46. Ling, ing [Eng. ling], names of persons from substantives: Jungling (young man, youth). Saugling (suckling). Fundling (foundling).
 - a) This termination (like et) has been transferred to a few names

- of animale and things: Sanfling, Reftling—Schöfling, Fingersling.
- b) In modern times this termination has received a contemptuous notion in Hösling (courtier); Wiethling (kireling); Dichterling (little post).
- c) In a few words the old German termination ing is retained:

 Pfenning, Hering, u.s.

B. ABSTRACT SUBSTANTIVES,

- Expressed by infinitives, which, however, as a general rule, although declined, admit of no plural, and require, in most cases, the definite article: bas Reisen (travelling: from reisen, to travel). Das Zeichnen (drawing: from zeichnen, to draw).
- The terminations of this class of substantives are consequently the same in number as those of the verb: en, ein, ern.
- 47. Das Reisen (travelling). Das Schmeicheln (fattory, in abstract)
 Das Wiehern (the neighing).
 - a) These substantives do not, like verbal substantives, govern cases and prepositions, as is the case in: ber Cauf ber Sonne (the course of the sun). Gine Reise nach B. (a journey to B.) They are, moreover, to be well distinguished from participial infinitives, which do admit of an objective relation, as: nach England reisen ift geschrich (to travel to England is dangerous). Es ist niebrig zu schmeicheln (it is base to statter).
 - b) Exceptions are: Berlangen (desire). Bergnügen (pleasure).

 Leiben (sorrow, suffering); and a few more, which have
 assumed a definite signification.
 - c) Some have even a concrete signification, as: Schreiben (liter. writing = a letter). Wesen (liter. being = a creature). Andenten (a think-upon = a souvenir).

C. VERBAL SUBSTANTIVES.

- 48. Ung [= Eng. ing], denoting transitive relation of the verb, is generally joined (a) to transitive derivative verbs only, as: Fallung (felling: from fallen, to fell). Fahrung (leading, guidance: from fahren, to lead, guide).
 - b) To transitive compounds of radical verbs with prefixes: Etfinbung (invention: from erfinben, to invent, to find out). Berbinbung (combination: from verbinben, to combine).
 - c) Some are formed from simple radical verbs: Reigung (indination: from neigen, to incline). Spaltung (division: from spalten, to divide).
 - d) Some of them, like Exfinding (intention), Grundung

 b 5

from grunten, to found), may be said to express the effect of the action denoted by the verb.

- e) The rest have a collective sense: Altibung (clothing). Walbung (woodland).
- f) A few examples, placed in juxta-position, of some derivatives formed from the same verb, showing their different meaning, may perhaps be useful.

Mube von bem Gehen. Tired with walking.

Der Umgang mit Fremben. The intercourse with strangers.

Das Unterscheiben ift schwer. Distinguishing is difficult. Der Gang nach ber Stabt. The walk to town.

Die Umgehung ber Frage. The evasion of the question.

Der Unterschieb ist groß. The difference is great.

Die Unterscheibung bes Einen von bem Anbern, the act of distinguishing one from another.

- D. COLLECTIVE AND FREQUENTATIVE AUGMENTED SUBSTANTIVES.
- (1) Collective substantives are formed from primary ones by the prefix ge- and termination ε.
 - a) Sebirge (ridge of hills: from Berg, mountain). Seftirn (constitution: from Stern). Sebrünge (crowd: from Drang, pressure). From abstract substantives these augmented substantives strengthen the meaning.
 - b) Observe: All substantives of this form had the termination e in old German, whence arose the modification of the vowel, by which they are distinguished from augmented primary ones. [See 41 (3).]
- 50. (2) Frequentative substantives from verbs: ge= prefixed have the vowel not modified. These denote continuance or repetition of an act. Gerebe (continued talk: from reben, to speak). Gelaufe (continued running: from laufen, to run).
 - This form is, however, of more recent date.
 - E. DERIVATIVE SUBSTANTIVES FROM PRIMARY ONES

(more particularly from those that have a particle prefixed).

- 51. Kiß [= Eng. new], Bünbniß (alliance). Erlaubniß (permission). Hinberniß (kindrance).
 - (These have commonly a more restricted meaning than the primary substt. whence they derive).
 - a) Niß is joined also to the following adjectives: wild, geheim, finster, gleich. Wildniß (wilderness). Geheimniß (secret). Finsterniß (darkness). Gleichniß (likeness).

- b) Some are from verbs: Erforberniß (requisite). Besorgniß (expresension.)
- 52. Sal There are but a few substantives of this form *: Schickal (fate). Drangfal (calamity). Rathfel (riddle). Ueber=bleibsel (remnant, remainder).
 - a) Obs. From Trubsal (calamity) is formed the adjective trubsfelig (calamitous); so from Scheusal (a horrible thing, monster), sheuslich [= scheuselig] (horrible, monstrous), and others.
 - F. SUBSTANTIVES FROM PRIMARY AND SECONDARY ONES (or from radical or derivative verbs) in:
- 53. Gi [= Eng. y], denoting (a) the abstract notion (Begriff) of an act: Seudielei (hypocrisy: from heudieln, to act the hypocrite). Edimeidielei (flattery: from sidneidieln, to flatter).
 - b) The effect: Schilberei (picture: from schilbern, to depict, to represent).
 - c) The termination ex is, in certain cases (as above, in Schilberei), inserted before et; as in the following: Sclaverei (slavery). Gartnerei (gardening).
 - d) Some also have a collective or frequentative signification, like those with prefix gee: Reiterei (cavalry). Landerei [Fr. paysage] (lands). Rauberei (robbery).
 - e) They have a bad sense in Spielerei, Leserei, Lauferei (playing, reading, running, in a bad way). Ziererei (affectation).

G. ABSTRACT SUBSTANTIVES.

- (1) From primary adjectives.
- ii. 2: Wite (goodnes: from gut, good). Starte (strength: from ftark, strong).
 - (2) From primary as well as secondary adjectives.
- 55. Heit [= Eng. kood]. Schonheit (beauty: from fcon, beautiful).
 - a) Obs. If from secondary adjectives, or from primary in eler er, heit is commonly changed into
- 56. Keit: Ewigkeit (eternity: from ewig, eternal). Dankbarkeit (gratitude: from bankbar, thankful). Gitelkeit (vanity: from eitel, eain). Bitterkeit (bitterness: from bitter, bitter).
 - a) Some have the termination ig inserted for euphony: Frommsigkeit (piety). Steifigkeit (stiffness).

It hardly differs in signification from the preceding ones in niß.

- b) Either form denotes the abstract notion of the respective adjectives from which they are derived: Starte (strength: from flart, strong). Milbe (mildness: from milb or milbe). Kahnheit (boldness: from tahn, bold).
- c) Some, too, have a concrete sense: Flack (plain). Buffte (desert); from flack (flat), and wufft (desert).
- d) Some have a collective sense: Menscheit (mankind). Geistlichteit (dergy).
- H. ABSTRACT SUBSTANTIVES FROM PRIMARY AND SECONDARY NAMES OF PERSONS.
 - (1) By affixing
- 57. Schaft [= Eng. skip]: Freundschaft (friendskip: from Freund). herrschaft [liter. lordskip] (dominion: from herr, lord or master).
 - a) The greater part have a collective signification (but speaking of persons only, not things): Ritterschaft, Jubenschaft, Priestel, dast, Jews, priestel.
 - b) Exceptions are a few: Baarfchaft (cash, ready money). Canbfchaft (landscope); which are unconnected with names of persons.
 - (2) By affixing
- 58. Thum [= Eng. dom]: Subenthum (Judaism). Priefterthum (priesthood).
 - a) Exceptions (as above, in fchaft) unconnected with personal names: Alterthum (antiquity). Reichthum (riches). Bachethum (growth). Irrthum (errour).
 - I. Adjectives (PRIMARY AND SECONDARY) FROM SUBSTANTIVES.
- 59. ig: (a) From abstract primary substt. generally: fleißig (diligent: from fleiß, diligence). Rächtig (mighty: from Macht, might, power). Gunflig (favorable: from Gunft, favour).
 - b) From concrete substantives.
 - (This class is not numerous, and, as a general rule, does not admit of modification.)
 - Blumig (Novery: from Blume, Nover). Walbig (woody: from Walb, wood).
 - c) From compound substantives.

 Rahlfopfig (bald-headed: from Rahlfopf, a bald-headed person). Oreiectig (triangular: from Oreiect, triangle).
 - d) From pronouns.

 Meinig (belonging to me: from mein, mine). Deinig (belonging to thee).

- e) From adverbs of place and time.
 - Siesig (of this place: from hier, here); bortig (of that place: from bort, there); heutig (of to-day: from heute, to-day); jehig (present: from jeht, now = at present).
- 60. En: [= Eng. en, in many cases], denoting the material a thing is made of; golben (of gold or golden); seiben (silken); hölzern + (wooden); bleiern (leaden): from Golb, Seibe, Holz, Blei.
 - K. Adjectives from Names of Persons and Countries.
 - 61. Ist [= Eng. ish].
 - a) From names of persons:

Anechtisch (slavish: from Anecht, servant, slave); biebisch (thisvish: from Dieb, thisf).

- b) From names of places:
 - Spanish (Spanish); english English); irbish (earthly); himmlish (heavenly, celestial); the two latter from Erbe (earth); himmel (heaven).
- c) From abstract substantives there are only:
 - Neibisch (envious: from Neib, envy); zantisch (quarrelsome: from Bant, quarrel).
- d) Obs. This affix is especially used with proper names:
 - Der lutherische Glaube (the Lutheran belief); die gallische Schäbellehre (Gall's craniology). Also in the following words: logisch (logical); poetisch (poetical); physisch (physical).

Remarks on the affix ifth.

- e) In old German all adjectives formed from names had this termination, as: fürstisch (princely: from Fürst, prince); tönigisch (kingly: from Rönig, king); but the Germans of our day say now, fürstlich, töniglich, u.s.w., instead.
- f) Some differ in meaning according to form: so weibish (from Beib, woman) means effeminate, but weibish means female; finbish (from Kinb, child) means childish; but finblish, child-like.
- q) Obs. Adjectives formed from compound names of countries, such as Frankfurt (Frankfort), Lüneburg (Luneburg), are not inflected in this manner, but the substantive is used instead, with affix er, as: bie Lüneburger heibe (the Luneburg heath); ein frankfurter Raufmann (a Frankfort merchant).

⁺ Observe that the r in some words is merely inserted for suphony, without altering the principle.

- L. Adjectives from Abstract Primary Substantives.
- 62. Bar [= Eng. same] denote (a) possibility, as:
 - Sichtbar (visible); rathsam (advisable); gangbar (ourrent); tenksam (travable); or.
 - a disposition: bantbar (thankful, grateful); fruchtbar (fruitful); furchtfam (fearful); friebfam (peaceful).
 - c) Those in but are of more recent introduction, and agree with the English termination ble, as: lesbur (legible); trinfbur (drinkable).
- M. Adverbs from Abstract Primary Substantives and Primary
 Adjectives.

By the affixes:

- 63. Lid [= Eng. ly] (a) expressing relation of manner, as: chrlid (honestly: from Chre, honour); frieblid (peacofully: from Kriebe, peace); treulid (faithfully: from treu, faithful).
 - 6) From secondary forms and participles: Freunbschaftlich (amicably); wissentlich (knowingly); gelegenttich (cocasionally).
 - c) From the termination lidy, denoting relation of manner, must be distinguished those derivatives [of later introduction] from names of persons which originally had no adverbial signification, as: vôterlidy (paternal); ritterlidy (knightly); fôniglidy (kinghy); from Bater, Mitter, Rônig; also weightlidy (whitish); philidy (mostish), &c., which are, in fact, diminutive adjectives; and, lastly, fiterblidy (mortal); glaublidy (oredible), and similar ones; the affix of which has the name aignification as but.
- 64. Haft (like lich, from abstract primary substantives and primary adjectives): [cherzhaft (jososely: from Scherz, joke); franthaft (sickly: from trant, sick).
 - a) Some in hast derive, like those in lich, from names of persons, such as: meisterhast (masterly); schülerhast, mädchenhast (like a echoolboy, maiden).
- 65. Sift, formed [from concrete substantives] by affix ig; which latter, being a true adjective termination, takes a t, like meifilid (see above), thus: gallig (bilious: from Galle, bile); gallidt (is a bilious manner); füßlid (see above); füßlidt (in a succisis manner, &c.). The affixes icht and licht are thus equal to a compound affix.

a) Obe. that, for the greatest part, adjectives are adverbially used now, although in the old German we, in most cases, find the affix lift [= Eng. ly] to answer that purpose. The Germans of our day will say: ber Buriche ift fehr langfam (the lad is very slow); and in the same manner, for 'the child walks slowly' (bas Kinb geht langfam).

N. DERIVATIVE VERBS.

- 66. a) Derivative verbs are formed from primary ones, and in some instances also from secondary derivatives; e. g. tranten (to give drink); fatten (to fell); brangen (to press); fallachten (to slaughter); fatten (to strengthen); fchwachen (to weaken); murbigen (to design); beiligen (to consecrate); from the substt. Krant, Fall, Drang, Schlacht, and from the adji. ftart, fchwach, wurtig, beilig.
 - b) When primary derivatives are thus made into verbs, their vowel is commonly modified, except in a few intransitive verbs of this description; e.g. prangen (to sparkle); prunten (to boast); buften (to spread fragrance); burften (to thirst); geigen (to covet); erlahmen, erfatten, erftarten (to become lame, cold, strong); and some others.
 - c) Most derivative verbs are transitive. Some, however, like the adjectives used substantively, express in one word, and by way of ellipsis, a whole objective combination; e.g. [diffen (to sail); pflugen (to plough); peitden (to whip); teltern (to press grapes); hammern (to hammer); murfeln (to play with dies); filden (to fish); grasen (to graze); butstern (to make butter).
 - d) In this way, the manner or mode of an action is pointed out, e.g. in flügeln, wigeln (to play a prudent, a witty part); frommeln (to affect decotion); jübeln (to deal jewishly); näfeln (to speak through the nose).
 - e) et has a diminutive sense in frôsteln (shirer), husteln (sough a little), lucheln (to smile); and a bad sense in frommeln (to affect devotion); tunsteln (to do affectedly).

On the Prefixes.

- These particles, ver, er, zer, be, and ent, Remember, must not from their verbs be rent.
- 67. S has no longer any perceptible force.
- 68. Be: [= be in bespeak, bewail] (1) makes transitive verbs from intransitive; or (2) makes transitive verbs from transitive verbs, but with a new object; (3) forms transitive verbs from substantives and adjectives. (4) Many verbs of this class are only used in this compound form, never as simple verbs.

- 69. Er signifies a relation toward or in favour of an object conceived as a personal one.
 - a) Gr [= out, forth, up] usually denotes (1) acquisition of an object. (2) completion of an act, or (3) progressive development and improvement; but (4) sometimes seems to add but little of particular meaning.
- 70. Ber signifies a relation against or to the disadvantage of an object conceived as a personal one,
 - a) ver [= away, amiss, miss-] denotes (1) loss, (2) deterioration, (3) or mistake [the Greek παρά]; but (4) sometimes adds but little of particular meaning.
- 71. Ber [= dis, 'to pieces'] denotes the dissolution of a whole into its component parts. The whole may be either (1) the subject, or (2) the object.
- 72. Int [= se-, de-, re-, dis-: off; away; sometimes un-] has for its original motion 'against,' marking the opposite action to what the simple word denotes, the undoing what has been done; but it sometimes merely implies separation.
 - When it means un-, re-, it is prefixed to transitive derivative verbs formed from substantives and adjectives.
 - Ent sometimes stands for an; which has also taken the form of emp before f in empfehlen, empfangen, empfinben.

(Sometimes separable, sometimes not.)

73. Durch (through, thoroughly); hinter (behind); über (over); unter (under); um (round); witer (against); well (fully); mis (mis-). When separable, these particles take the principal accent.

(Separable.)

74. Un, on, at.

Bei, by, at.

Fort, forth, away. Aus, out: sometimes marks completion.

Muf, on, up: sometimes denotes opening; sometimes (like up) consumina.

Bu, to: sometimes denotes shutting or covering.

Rach, after: sometimes denotes imitation.

Bor, before: sometimes denotes doing before another what he is to imitate or follow.

DIFFERENCES OF IDIOM.

English.

1. I have seen his (her, their) father.

My father says that, &c.

Brother! my father says, &c.

2. To fear death.

To have a taste for astronomy.

- 3. To have some ink.
- 4. Any fresh milk.

GERMAN.

I have seen the • [i.e. the boy's, the girl's] father (id) have ben Vater gesehen.

My + [or the] father, &c. (mein [or ber] Bater sagt, baß, u.s...) Brother I the father [or father only] says, &c. (Bruber, her Bater [or Bater] sagt, u.s...)

Bater [or Bater] fagt, u.f.w.)
To fear the ‡ death (ben Tob
fürchten).

To find taste at or on the astronomy (an ber Stern-Kunbe Geschmack sinden).

To have ink (Linte haben). Fresh milk (frifche Mild).

* The possessive pronoun may likewise be used instead.

+ The possessive pronoun must not be used, but the definite article, in speaking of one's father, or the substantive alone, &c., to one's nearest relations, as mother, brother, sister.

- 5. The captain will soon sail or set sail.
- 6. To hold in one's hand.
- 7. A long cloak and a short one.
- 8. To live in hopes.
- 9. He has not a coat.
- 10. In any body's place.
- 11. To be dying of hunger.
- 12. The roofs are thatched.
- 13. I cannot avoid (or not well refuse) doing it.
- 14. What sort of man is he!

What kind of flower is that?

What sort of people are they?

- 15. I had rather.
 - I had rather or sooner hear, or I would rather hear, &c. (= I prefer hearing).
- 16. How are matters with him?
- 17. Such a fool. So great a man.

He is not so great a man as, &c.

18. That letter of your sister's.

The crown-lands of the king of Spain's.

GERMAN.

The captain sails* soon (ber Schiffer fegelt balb).

To hold in the hand (in ber Hand balten).

A long and a short cloak (ein langer unb ein furzer Mantel: see note to Lesson 11).

To live in the hope or of the hope (in der hoffmung or ber hoffmung or ber hoff= nung leben).

See Caution I.

On any body's place (an jemanbes Stelle).

To die before, &c. (vor Sunger fterben).

The roofs are of straw (von Strop).

I cannot round about to do it (id) fann nicht umbin, es zu thun).
What for a man is he? (mas für

ein Mann ist er?) What for a flower is that? (was

ift bas für eine Blume?) What for people are it? (was für Leute find es?)

I might more willingly (ich mochte tieber) [litr. more lief]).

I more willingly hear, &c., or I might more willingly hear, &c. (id) hore lieber or id) modite lieber horen, u.f.w.)

How stand or go the matters with him? (wie stehen or gehen bie Sachen mit ihm?)

A such fool (ein folder Thor). A so great man (ein fo großer Mann).

He is no so great man as, &c. (er ift tein so großer Mann als, u.s.v.)

Jener Brief beiner Schwester (not Schwester's).

Die Domanen (or Besitungen) bes Königs von Spanien (not Spanien's).

^{*} The present tense is used here in German, presenting the action in its reality: the ship, in this case, is presented as actually under sail.

A principle of Seneca's.

- To be of age.
 To be under age.
- 26. To pretend not to understand.
- Any body may very fikely have heard any thing.
 A thing may very likely have occurred.
- 22. To wish any body to do any thing.
- 23. The letter is to be copied.
 - No time is to be lost.
- 24. To hear any thing related.
- Not to know a syllable about it.
 To reap no harvest from it.
- 26. To make arrangements.
- 27. He is a bad child.
 Those are good people.
- 28. It slips out of his hand.
- 29. Any body is not liked.
- 30. In order to do.

I punish a boy (in order) to make him better.

To go to a bookseller's (in order) to buy a map.

GERMAN.

Ein Grundsat bes Seneca (not bes Seneca's).

To be of mouth (mundig * sein). Not to be, &c. (unmundig + sein).

To place oneself as if one did not understand (sid) stellen, als ob man night versiehe).

Any body might haply (burfte wol, u.f.w.).

A thing might haply, &c. (eine Sache burfte fich wol ereignet haben).

To wish that any body may do (wunfchen baß jemanb etwas thue).

The letter is to copy (ber Brief ift abzuschreiben).

No time is to lose (feine Beit ift zu verlieren).

To hear any thing relate (etwas fagen or erzählen hören).

To know, &c., thereof (feine Sylbe bavon wissen).

To gather, &c., therefrom (frine Ernte bavon einsammeln). To hit [upon] arrangements (Gin=

richtungen treffen). It is a wicked child (es ift ein

boses Kind).
That are good people (bas sind

gute Leute). It slips to him out of the hand

(es gleitet ihm aus ber hand). One has not any body willingly (man hat jemanden nicht gern).

Around (or about) to do (um; zu thun).

I punish, &c., around (or about) to better him (ich strafe or beftrafe einen Knaben, um ihn zu bessern).

I go, &c., around (or about) to buy a map (e.g. id) gehe zu

+ The prefix particle un denies.

^{*} From Mund (mouth), inasmuch as he may speak for himself.

[#] Similar to 'idoiroo,' implying motive, with the 'id' left out: see beshalb, bestween, 498.

31. To make a child come to one.
To have a tooth drawn.

To get a house built.

32. Any body is said or reported to have done any thing.

People say, assert, &c., that he has improved.

The child is said to have died _of hunger.

Any body is said to have taste.

- 33. Twice a day.
- 34. He thinks him a flatterer.
- 35. He is any thing but that. He is not that at all.
- 36. Pray pardon me.
- To call any body a knave (a rascal, &c.).
- 38. Any body is doing well (= prospers).

GERMAN.

einem Buchhanbler, um eine ganbkarte * zu kaufen).

To let a child come to one (ein Kind zu sich kommen lassen). To let a tooth to one-self draw out (sich einen Jahn ausziehen lassen).

To let a house build [i.e. to be built] (ein haus bauen lassen).

Any body shall have done any thing [= people will have it so +] (e.g. er foll es gethan haben).

He [i.e. the person spoken of] shall thave corrected himself (er foll fid) gebeffert haben).

The child shall & be dead before hunger (bas Rinb foll por hunger gestorben fein).

Any body shall have, &c. (jemand foll Gefchmack haben).

Two times of the day (zwei Mal bes Tags).

He holds him for a flatterer (et halt ihn für einen Schmeichler). He is nothing less than that (et ift nichts weniger als bas).

Mayest thou pardon me (bu molleft mir vergeben).

To scold any body a knave (jemanben einen Schelm [einen Schurken, u.f.w.] schelten).

It goes well to any body (es geht jemanden gut or wohl).

^{*} Liter. 'land chart,' similar to 'sea chart' in English.

⁺ If a person, 'will have a thing so and not otherwise,' this expresses necessity or compulsion on the part of another person; but follen (shall) implies compulsion.

[‡] The person asserting it will once for all have it that it is the case, true or not, so the fact for him is established and necessary.

[§] So people once for all believe it or have taken it into their heads; and since they have done so, it must, as far as their belief goes, be necessarily true; hence the follen, the latter implying what has been settled; e.g. bu follft night fithlen (it is settled that thou do not steal): so in this case people have settled the matter concerning the child's dying of hunger.

39. It is to be hoped that, &c.

It is to be wished (= it would be desirable).

40. To take pains.

41. To put out (= dislocate) one's arm.

To break, dislocate, &c., one's leg.

- 42. Any body pretended to understand.
- 43. To be chosen general.
- 44. To introduce any body to some one [in the sense of recommending him to his notice], to give him a letter of recommendation.
- 45. How is it, &c. ? how does it happen, that, &c. ?
- 46. It is not A. that has killed him.
- 47. To be considered a hypocrite.
- 48. To mend [of linen].
- 49. To be of an age to want or require, &c. [e.g. guidance].
- 50. I almost begin to think that,

GERMAN.

It is (or stands) to hope that, &c. (es ift or steht zu hoffen ", daß, u.s.w.).

It is or might-be to wish (es ift or ware zu munichen +).

To give to oneself trouble (sich) Miche geben).

To dislocate to oneself the arm (sid seis) ben Arm verrenten).
To break, &c., to oneself the (or a) leg (sid) bas or ein Bein breden, verrenten, u.s.m.).

He did as if he understood it (er that \(\pm \) als ob er es verstande).

To be elected to § a general (jum Felbherrn [liter. field-master] ernannt werben).

To recommend any body by [= with] any body (jemanben empfehlen bei jemanben).

How comes it that, &c. (wie formt es or wie formt es boch || wol, baß, u.f.w.).

Not A. I has killed him (nicht A. hat ihn ermorbet).

To be held for a hypocrite (für einen heuchler gehalten werben). To put to rights (in Ordnung bringen).

To be in such an age that one wants (in einem Alter sein, baß

man beharf).

I almost come upon the thought that, &c. (id) fomme fast auf

^{* &#}x27;Il est à souhaiter.'

^{+ &#}x27;Il était à souhaiter.'

[‡] Liter. 'made as if,' quite the German idiom, inasmuch as 'do,' thun, is synonymous with 'make;' both 'do' and 'make' in French, for instance are faire, and the Germans render faire by either thun or maden (to make). 'They made (sie thaten) as if they were ambassadors.'

[§] Probably elliptically for 'elected or raised to (the rank of) a general.'

H The latter stronger term similar to 'how after all,' or 'for goodness' sake,' 'did it happen, that,' &c.

[¶] A stress being laid on the word denoting the doer.

- 51. That never entered my head.
- 52. After you have done it.
- 53. To advise a person to take no step whatever.
- 54. As might be wished.
- 55. You had better try.
 We had better go.
- 56. The news of it spread.
- 57. To have been long expected.
- 58. To set a good example.
- 59. This morning.

To-morrow morning.

60. The village is going to be decorated with green boughs.

The sun becomes eclipsed.

- 61. Whenever he could (i.e. do a thing).
- 62. That is the case, or it is as you say (Less. 50).
 - To be willing or predisposed to do = to intend to do.
- 63. He answers my question.
- 64. Is it you that, &c.

GERMAN.

ben Gebanken daß, u.s.w.). See Exercise 67.

That never is fallen into me (i.e. into my mind) (bas ist mir nie eingefallen).

After you are ready therewith (nachbem bu bamit fertig bift).

I advised him to do in-no-way one [or throughout no] step (e.g. ich rieth ibm keinesweges einen [or burchaus keinen] Schritt zu thun).

As one well might wish (wie man wol wünschen möchte).

Try it rather [more lief] (verfuchen Gie es lieber).

Let us rather go (laß uns lieber gehen).

The intelligence thereof spreads itself (bit Radyricht or Kunbe bavon verbreitet sich).

To be expected since long (seit lange erwartet werben).

To give, &c. (ein gutes Beispiel geben).

To-day morning (heute Morgen, or like the Eng. biefen Morgen). To-morrow early (morgen frub).

The village decorates itself, &c. (bas Dorf schmudt sich + mit grunen Zweigen, Less. 44).

The sun eclipses itself (die Sonne verfinstert sich).

Where he but was-able (mo er nur tonnte, Less. 50).

To that is so (bem ist so).

To be of will to do (Willens sein zu thun).

He answers upon my question (er antwortet auf meine Frage). Are you it that, &c. (find Sie es, ber, u.f.w.).

Observe the present tense is here used in German instead of the future perfect, similar to idiom 5.

[†] This term, in some instances, may be looked upon as producing, in some degree, the effect of the verbs inchastive in escere in Latin, denoting the commencement of an act.

- 65. I met (or have met) him.
 She has met her sister.
- 66. To like to do a thing.
- 67. To meet or oppose an evil.
- 68. Any thing prevents a person from doing.
 - I have fallen into poverty by playing for money.
- 69. It is all ever with any body.
- 70. It would be as well if, &c.
- 71. To wink at any thing.
- 72. Things may change or alter.
- 73. To make any body's compliments, or to give a person's respects to any body.

Make my compliments to him.

74. To be alive.

GERMAN.

He is met to me (er ift mir besgegnet).

Her sister is met to her (ihre Schwester ist ihr begegnet).

To do a thing willingly [or liter. likingly] (eine Sache gerne thun).

To meet to an evil (einem Uebel begegnen).

Any thing hinders any one to do it (etwas verhindert jemanden, es au thun).

I have fallen, &c., in that I have played about money (ich bin in Armuth gerathen, indem ich um Gelb gespielt habe *).

It is done about any body (es ift um jemanben geschehen).

It would be even so good, if, &c.

(es wurde even so gut fein [or
wure even so gut], wenn, u.f.w.).
To look through the suggest at any

To look through the fingers at any thing (burd) bie Finger feben: see note to Exercise 52).

The things can alter themselves (bie Sachen tonnen sich anbern).

To salute any body from [= on the part of] any body, or to make to any body one's recommendation (jemanb von jemanben grüßen, or jemanben feine Empfehlung machen).

Greet him from me (grußen Sie ihn von mir, or machen Sie ihm meine Empfehlung).

To be on or at life (am Leben sein).

See also the examples on the participial substantives at the end of the 'Cautions.'

CAUTIONS.

(1.)

Rein (no): Er hat teinen Rod (he has no coat); but you may not say in the positive, Er hat night einen Rod for 'he has not a [= no] coat;' this would convey the notion of 'his having not one coat' [see remark in Exercise 12]; although it is not wrong to say in the interrogative, , hat er night einen Rod?' for 'has he not-a [= no] coat' but even then, by placing a stress on einen, the meaning of 'not one' [= a single] would be produced.

(2.)

'To kill,' is theten; but do not use theten in speaking of cattle or fowl, but [dlachten [liter. 'to slaughter'].

Two of them were killed (e.g. of Iwei bavon wurden geschlachtet. gesse).

Two of them were killed (e.g. Zwei von ihnen wurden getöbtet. speaking of the Horatii).

(3.)

Do not leave out the article in German in the following and similar sentences.

Man can think.

To be in school.

To adduce testimony from Holy Writ.

The man can think (ber Mensch) fann benten).

To be in the school (in ber Schule sein).

To adduce, &c., from the, &c. (Beugniß or Beweise aus ber beiligen Schrift barbringen or anführen).

(4.)

Take care to conjugate with sein (not haben) intrans. verbs that denote (1) a change and transition from one state into another (e.g. to

burn, break, putrefy, moceed, recover, coagulate, ripen, disappear, die, grow, become, de.): (2) those that imply motion from one place to another (e.g. hasten, move, fall, go, climb, come, creep, run, travel, ride, shoot, sail, stride, swim, sink, leap, step, wander, yield, de.).

Thus, bas Eis or die Eisbecke ist geborsten (hat gebrochen or geborsten, can only be used transitively).

(5.)

Take care not to translate neighbour by Radbar, but Rådfit*, when it is used in the scriptural sense.

(6.)

Do not construe burfen by dare in phrases similar to this:

Er burfte sich wol geirrt haben (He may very likely be mistaken: see Lesson 20).

7.)

Take care not to construe auf jemand warten +, 'to wait upon,' but 'to wait for any body:' I have waited for you this hour (ich habe auf bich eine ganze Stunde ich gewartet).

'To wait upon' would be jemanten auf-marten, and is a separable verb, which governs the dative; instead of which, bie Aufwartung maden is used.

(8.)

Do not translate 'for' by fur in the following instances:

Any thing serves for a pretext.

To long for death.

To accept of an invitation for to-morrow.

Any thing serves to, &c. (etwas bient zu einem Bormanbe).

To long (oneself) after death (sich nach bem Tobe sehnen).

To accept, &c., upon to-morrow (eine Einladung auf morgen annehmen).

(9.)

Do not translate 'misfortunes' by Unglude, but Ungludefalle ‡.

(10.)

. 'In' and 'into' are not to be rendered in German by the corresponding preposition in the following instances:

To live in the country.

To live upon, &c. (auf bem Lande wohnen).

^{*} The same difference as in French between 'mon voisin' and 'mon proche.'

⁺ Although liter. 'to wait upon any body.'

¹ Liter. 'falls' [= cases: similar to 'casus graves,' &c.]

To go into the country.

To be wounded in one's arm.

To increase in wisdom.

Sound is body and mind.

To act is such a manner.

In the street.

To go upon, d.c. (aufé [=auf bas] Land gehen).

To be wounded on the arm (am Arme permundet sein).

To increase on wisdom (an Beisheit zunehmen).

Sound on, &c. (an Leib und Seele gesund).

To act upon, &c. (auf folche Weise handein).

Upon the street (auf ber Strafe).

But if a possessive pronoun precede the article, the German idiom agrees with the English; e.g. 'in our street' (in [not auf] unfrer Straße); or if a street be designated by a noun appellative, as: in ber Mühlen-Straße (in Milstreet).

To die in great agonies.

To die under great pains (unter großen Schmerzen sterben).

(11.)

Take care not to translate 4 of 2 by post in German in the following and similar phrases, as:

To fall ill of a fever.

What is become of the matter !

A thing is manufactured of steel.

To become ill on a fever (an einem Fieber trant werben).

What is become out of the matter? (was ift aus ber Sache ges worden?)

A thing is manufactured out of stoel (eine Sache ift aus Stahl verfertigt).

We may however say gemacht von.

To be dying of hunger.

To be dying before, &c. (vor Sunger sterben: but of a disease, an with dat.)

But the gen. may also be used: Sungers sterben.

To be ill of any thing (e.g. a To be ill on, &c. (an einem Fieber frant sein or frant barnieber liegen: lie. 'to lie down there').

(12.)

Although the German issum agrees with the English in einen hut auf * haben (to have a hat on), we must say: einen Mantel, not an, but um + haben; and einen Rock an haben.

^{*} i.e. 'on one's head.'

⁺ Liter. 'around' (understand 'one's body').

(13.)

Sefabren haben (to have): of one who acts the part of the coachman (conduire). Sefahren fein (to be): of one who goes in a carriage without (at least necessarily) taking the reins himself (aller en carrosse).

Do not use mogen for may, if prohibition is implied, but say burfen or mustead.

You may not do this or that.

Du barfit er mußt biefes ober ienes nicht thun.

(15.)

Do not translate with by mit in the following phrases:

To dine with any body.

To dine bei any body (mit would only mean in his company, whether at home or abroad).

To have great influence with any body.

To be-at-great-valuation* by any body (viel bei jemanben getten).

(16.)

Do not translate 'may' by migen, but tonnent, in the following cases :

a) If you may turn it by 'to have reason,' as:

You may consider yourself happy (= you have reason to do so).

He may be glad that he has (or to have) escaped (= he has reason to be so).

Du fannft bich gladlich fchagen.

Er tann froh fein, bag er ent= tommen ift.

 β) If absence of obstacle, either physical or moral, is implied:

You may now play in the garden, since your foot is better, and your father does not object to Du tannft jest in bem Garten fpielen, ba bein Fuß beffer ift, und bein Bater nichts bawiber bat.

+ Ronnen implies physical as well as moral possibility : Ein Dreiect kann nicht rund sein (a triangle cannot be round). Er kann ihn nicht haffen, benn er ift fein Bruber (be cannot hate him, for be is his

brother).

^{*} Gelten, to which Gelb (money) is related, means literally 'to cost' or 'to have a standard value' (the French taker): thus it conveys the notion of a person being considered as having standard value, and, as such, to be looked upon with a degree of consideration or estimation, as a sterling coin, for instance, would be.

May I have the pleasure !

Rann ich bas Bergnagen haben?

7) You may thank beaven for Du tannft+ ben himmel für beine Rettung banten. being saved.

Mogen (may) presupposes that the person who 'may' is also willing t to do what he is told 'he may.' Du magft nun fpielen (you may now play). Du tannft nun spielen, although it implies permission, presupposes absence of obstacle: see (β) .

(17.)

'May' and 'like' (mogen and gern haben) are synonymous; but do not translate 'to like beef' by gerne baben, but by mogen or gerne effen &.

(18.)

Collen, as a general rule, implies coercion or necessity of any sort; Er foll fterben (he shall die): but follen must not be used for shall, if a mere future act is expressed.

Shall you see him to-morrow ! We shall set out early. Shall not you be there ! I shall have no objection.

Berben | Sie ihn morgen feben? Wir werden früb abreisen. Berben Sie nicht ba fein ? Ich werbe nichts bawiber haben.

Sollte is rightly used for should if a supposition, &c., be expressed, or if 'in case that' may be used before it, as: Should you hear of any thing (Sollten Sie etwas boren) ! Sollte er kommen (should he come [= in the supposed case of his coming])? but it is translated by murbe in the following cases:

I should see him, if, &c.

Ich würde ihn sehen, falls, u.s.w. Should not you have spoken to Burben Gie nicht mit ibm gefprochen haben?

We should have gone on foot, if, &c.

Wir murben ju Fuß gegangen fein, wenn, u.f.w.

[•] It will be seen that in English the notion of permission is prevalent in this question: hence, the 'may.' In German, that of inquiring previously, 'is there nothing to oppose itself to my doing so:' hence, the 'can;' and if there is not, 'may I' in that case is understood.

⁺ Rannft (can) in German, inasmuch as the person is supposed actually to have it in his power to do so, for instance, by some charitable act, &c.

The leading idea of mogen, in fact, is 'to like,' e.g. Birnen mogen (to like or be fond of pears). 'You may now be punished for it' (bu magst nun bafür bestraft werben) should rather be considered as ironical, although used in a proper sense.

[§] Liter. 'to eat willingly."

But 'I am to see him' (in consequence of a promise or from some necessity) is: 3d foll ihn morgen feben.

The reverse takes place in sentences like the following, implying some degree of amazement at a given fact, as:

Would you believe it?

Sollten (not murben) Sie es glauben?

(19).

a) Gerne haben, mogen, lieben, stand all for 'to like;' but although you may say, Ich liebe bergleichen nicht (I do not like things of that sort), beware of the very frequent mistake of saying, Ich liebe nicht Rinbfleich, alten Rie, u.f.w., which, in the ear of a German, would sound as if one were to say in English, 'I don't love beef, old choese,' &c.

Say instead: Ich mag keinen Rase, u.s.w., or ich effe nicht gerne Rafe.

- B) You may translate 'to like' by gern haben, as: Er hat ihn nicht gern (he does not like him): but do not say, Er hat nicht gerne Obst, for 'he does not like fruit;' but Er ist nicht gerne Obst (liter. 'he eats not willingly fruit').
 - γ) In a similar manner:
 - 'He does not like travelling by himself' (er reiset nicht gerne allein); but not er hat nicht gerne allein reisen, as in the above phrase, er hat ihn nicht gern, 'like' being used in English in both cases.

(20.)

Alle Age in German means 'every day;' but take care not to translate 'all day' by alle Age, but by ben ganzen Age (liter. 'the whole day').

(21.)

Do not use shall for follen in the instance following:

Er foll febr gelehrt fein.

He is said to be very learned (see Lesson 22).

(22.)

The German idiom for 'to be at a school or university' is: 'upon a school,' &c., speaking of a person who resides there as a member; but in other cases 'in' is more correctly used.

Do not use an ber Thur for our 'at the door,' but nor (before) if the person is represented as standing there either to look out or to

wait for admission.

(23.)

Do not use will for wollen in:

Er will ihn gesehen haben. He says or pretends that he has seen him.

Er will ein Bermandter von ihm He claims relationship with him. sein.

(24.)

Somebody has given a thing to Iemand hat etwas bem Bater antended of (giving it) to the son.

Anflatt with the gen. would convey this meaning: that some one instead of the son has given an object to the father; this will be better exemplified thus:

(25.)

Take care not to use any of the oblique cases of the possessive pronoun, as ihm, ihn, u.f.w., preceded by a preposition, if a thing is spoken of: the Germans, for instance, will say 'with him' (mit ihm), but not 'with it,' but 'therewith' (bamit); 'through it' (baburd, litr. 'therethrough'); 'of or from it' (banon, liter. 'therefrom'); 'on it' (barauf, liter. 'therson'); 'under it or among it' (barunter, liter. 'there under or there beneath'), &c.

(26.)

Take care not to translate miffen by must (but by can) when it only denotes an impossibility that we infer to be the necessary consequence of a preceding statement.

Let us suppose now the introduction to the sentence to be this: 'That his life, I told him in my letter, depended on his leaving town immediately, and yet you saw him just now, you say;' in this case we express it in German thus:

Er muß also meinen Brief nicht erhalten haben (he then [most assuredly *] cannot have received my letter).

(27.)

Will and would.

(1) Beware of using et, fie, u.f.w., will (he, she, &c., will), if no volition, but a mere future act, is expressed:

He will be here at ten o'clock.

Er wird (not will) um zehn Uhr hier fein.

She will not be able to come.

Sie wird (not will) nicht tom= men konnen.

- The difference may be seen best by some sentences in juxtaposition.
- a) She will not see her sister, since she cannot come so soon.
 β) She will not see her sister, since she has given her great offence.

This is implied in the German muffen.

- Sie wird ihre Schwester nicht Sie will [= does not wish] ihre sehen, indem dieselbe nicht so Schwester nicht sehen, indem bieselbe sie sehr deleibigt hat.
- (2) Leave out the English 'will' in German if it expresses habit or semething unusual, or introduce pflegt [solet], as:
 - (a) He will very often get up before day-break and walk about in the garden.
 - (b) He will stare at me at times, as if he had never seen me before.
 - (a) Er fleht oft vor Tagesanbruch auf und spaziert im Sarten, or Er pfleat oft vor Tagesanbruch aufzusteben, u. f.w.
 - (b) Er ftarrt mich zuweilen an, als wenn er mich nie zuvor gesehen.

(28.)

- The preceding also relates to "would" if taken in the above sense.
- (a) He would sometimes get up at five in the morning and go out, cold as it was.
- (b) The old king would sometimes say: I leave to my children a mighty empire, if they agree.
- (a) Er stand zuweilen um funf Uhr bes Morgens auf, um in aller Kälte auszugehen, or Er pflegte [= solebat] aufzustehen, u.s.w.
- (b) Der alte König sagte oft, or pflegte oft zu sagen: Ich hinterlaße meinen Kinbern ein mächtiges Reich, wenn sie unter einanber einig sind.

ON TRANSLATING_THE PARTICIPIAL SUBSTANTIVE. (See Lesson 66.)

a) By the infinitive or a conjunctive with baß (that).

ENGLISH.

1. Without asking.

GERMAN.

Without to ask: or that he (she.

&c.) aaked.

(Ohne zu fragen; or baß er (sie, u.s.w.) fragte.)

2. Without being asked. Without to be asked; or that he (she, &c.) was asked.

(Ohne gefragt zu werben; or baß er (sie, u.f.w.) gefragt wurbe.)

3. Without having asked. Without to have asked; or that (she, &c.) had asked.

(Ohne gefragt zu haben; ober bağ er (fie, u.f.w.) gefragt hatte.)

GERMAN.

- 4. Without having been asked. Without to
 - Without to have been asked; or that he (she, &c.) had been asked.
- (Ohne gefragt worben zu sein; or ohne baß er (sie, u.s.w.) gefragt worben war.)
 - So with 'instead of,' e.g. 'instead of asking' (anftatt or flatt au fragen; or bas er fragt, u.s.w.)

I think (thought) of aoing.

Ich bente (bachte) ju geben.

- 5. The inconvenience of dwelling tegether.
- The privilege of being admitted.
- recht eingelassen zu werben).
- 7. Far from wishing that, &c.
- Far distant to wisk that, &c.

(Weit entfernt zu munichen baß, u.f.m.)

8. Far from attempting to hurt Far distant to kurt him.

(Weit entfernt ihm gu ichaben.)

9. He insisted upon writing to my He insisted thereon, to write, &c. father.

(Er beftanb barauf, meinem Bater ju fcreiben.)

But:

- 10. He insisted upon Mr. A.'s He insisted thereon, that Mr. A. writing to my father. should write, &c.
- (Er beftanb barauf, baß herr A. meinem Bater ichreibe or fchriebe.)
 - He insisted upon my keeping He insisted thereon, that I should keep, &c.
- (Er bestand barauf, baß ich bas Geheimniß für mich behalten follte or behielte.)
- 11. He regrets not being able to Er bebauert, baß er nicht tomcome. men tann (that he can not).
- 12. He regrets not having been He regrets that he has not been (or not to have been) there.
- (Er bebauert, bağ er nicht ba gewefen ift, or nicht ba gewefen ju fein.)

Englism.

GERMAN.

 β) By an adverbial sentence.

13. On asking him.

When he (she, &c.) asked him.

(Mle er (fie, u.f.w.) ibn fraate.)

- 14. On being asked, he said, &c. Als or ba er (fie, u.f.m.) ihn fragte, fagte er, u.f.m.*
- 15. On arriving in port.

In that or as soon as he (she, &c.) arrived, &c.

(Inbem or fobalb er (fie, u.f.w.) im Safen ankam.)

After having duly considered After he (she, &c.) had duly, &c.
the matter.

(Rachbem er bie Sache gehörig erwogen hatte.)

17. Upon saying this [he did so After he (she, &c.) kad thus and so].

(Rachbem er alfo gefprochen hatte.)

- y) Sometimes with wenn (if) preceded by bavon (of it).
- 18. These are the consequences of That are the consequences thereof staying out after midnight.

 That are the consequences thereof if one stays out, &c.
 - (Das find bie Folgen bavon, wenn man nach Mitternacht ausbleibt.)
 - δ) Preceded by a peculiar form denoting cause or circumstance (see 462).
- 19. I can tell by your blushing. I see it thereon, that you blush. (Id) febe es baran, daß bu errothest, or an beinem Crrothen +.)
- I know him by his walking I know him thereon, that he walks, very lame.

(3d) kenne ihn baran, baß er fehr lahm geht.)

21. I can tell him, by his walking I recognize him thereon, that he on crutches.

(3d) ertenne ihn baran, bağ er an Kruden geht.)

22. He has injured himself by not speaking the truth.

He has, &c., thereby, that he has not spoken, &c.

(Er hat sich baburch geschabet, daß er die Wahrheit nicht gerebet hat.)

+ The infinitive errotten, in fact, substantively used, in which case boson is to be left out.

^{*} Or by man: ba man ihn fragte; and, lastly, by the passive voice: ba er gefragt murbe (when he was asked).

GERMAN.

- 23. He has made himself ill by He has, &c., thereof, that he has eating unripe fruit. eaten, &c.
- (Er ift bavon krank geworden, baß er unreifes Obst gegeffen hat.)
- 24. He has lest his good name by behaving ill to an old relation.

 He has, &c., therethrough, that he has ill-treated, &c.
- (Er hat feinen guten Ramen baburd verloren, bağ er einen alten Bermanbten mißhanbelt hat.)
- 25. He laughed at his attempting to persuade him. He laughed thereover, that he attempted it, to, &c.
- (Er lachte barüber, baß er es verfuchte [or versuchen wollte] ihn zu überreben.)
- 26. We were tired to death from We were thereof that we had been having sat up all night. we had been up all night, &c.
- (Bir waren bavon, baf wir bie ganze Nacht aufgeblieben waren, jum Rieberfinten mabe.)
- 27. It is the consequence of (or It comes thence, that he does not, comes of) his not obeying &c.
 - (Es tommt baber, baf er feinen Befehlen nicht gehorchet.)
- 28. All this comes of your being All that comes thence, that you too careless.

(Mles bas tommt baber, baß Sie zu forglos finb.)

- 29. He seemed offended at his He seemed, &c., thereby, that he not taking off his hat.

 did not, &c.
 - (Er ichien baburd beleibigt, baß er feinen but nicht abnahm.)
- 30. You must not suppose that from the circumstance of your being taller, &c.

 You must not, &c., that thence because you are, &c.
- (Sie muffen nicht glauben, daß baher or barum weil Sie größer finb, u.f.w.)
- 31. From certain hopes he entertained, of being made a general one day.
- (Gewiffer hoffnungen halber, bie er hatte, eines Lages zum Felbherrn ernannt zu werben.)

GERMAN-ENGLISH INDEX.

Mas, bas, carcass. ab'=becten, (litr.touncover,) to take off the (table-)cloth. Abend, ber, evening. Abentheuer, bas, adventure. aber, but. ab'=fallen, to fall off. ab'shalten, to keep off. Ablehnung, bie, declining, refusal. ab'sliefern, to deliver, to send in. ab'=nehmen, to take off: (intrans.) to decrease; of the moon, to wane. ab'sreisen, to set out. bideulid, horrible, abominable; (as adv.) horribly, abominably. Abschieb, bet, departure, leave; -nehmen, to take leave. ab'sidreiben, to copy ab'=fenden, to send off, to despatch. Absicht, die, intention. ab'sftammen, to descend; to be descended (from). ab'swerfen, to throw off. Abwesenheit, bie, absence. act, genuine, right. aditen, to esteem, to pay attention aditigjährig, eighty years old. Ader, ber, acre, field. abelig, noble. Aber, die, vein; zur Aber laffen, to bleed (trans.). Abler, ber, eagle. Meltern, see Eltern. Africa, bas, Africa.

africanisch, African. ahnlich, like, similar; - fein, to resemble. Atabemie, bie, academy. all, all. allein, alone; - only, but. aller, alle, alles, all, whole. allerbings, certainly, indeed. allerliebst, most lovely; (as adv.) charmingly. allgemein, common, general, public. als, as, when, than; [other] than. alsbann, then, at that time. alt, old, aged. Alte, ber, old man. Alten, bie, (pl.) ancients. Alter, bas, age. Ameritaner, American. Amt, bas, office. an, on, at, by, near. andaditig, devout, devoutly. ander, other. Unbere, ber, the other one. anbern, to alter. anbers, otherwise. anbetswo, elsewhere. Anerbieten, bas, offer. an'=ertennen, to acknowledge. an'sfangen, sfing, sgefangen, to begin. an'sfuhren, to lead, to command. Angelegenheit, die, affair, business, concern. angenehm, agreeable, pleasant,

an'sgreifen, sqriff, sqegriffen, to attack, to set to work about. Angriff, ber, attack. angftigen, to make uneasy, to alarm. an'=balten, =bielt, =gebalten, to stop, to continue, to last. an's fleiben, to dress. an'=tommen, =tam, =aetommen, to arrive. Ankunft, bie, arrival. an'smaken, to pretend. an'smagend, assuming, presumptuous an'=nebmen, =nabm, =genommen, to accept; to presume; to assume; to take for granted; fich annehmen, to interest oneself for. an'=reben, to address; to speak to. an'sidauen, to look at, to contemplate. an'=foliegen, =folog, =gefoloffen, to join; fid), to attach oneself to, to join aby's party. an'sfeben, sah, seefeben, to look at, to behold. Anfeben, bas, authority. Ansicht, die, view. anståndig, proper, respectable; decent, civil, ---ly. anffatt, instead. Anstrengung, die, exertion. anstreten, strat, sgetreten, e.g. eine Reise -, to set out on a journey. an'streffen, straff, saetroffen, to meet, to fall in with. Antwort, bie, answer. antworten, to answer. an'swenden, to employ. an'=zieben, =zog, =gezogen, to draw, to put on, to dress. Anzug, der, dress. an'sunben, to kindle. Araber, Arab ; Arabian (of a horse). Arbeit, die, work, labour. arbeiten, to work. arg, bad, wicked. arm, poor.

Arm, ber, arm. Armee, bie, army. Armuth, bie, poverty. Art, die, kind, sort. Arzenei, die, medicine. Arzt, ber, physician. affatisch, Asiatic. Athem, ber, breath. athmen, to breathe. aud, also, likewise. auf, upon, on (385). auf =bieten,=bot,=aeboten, to exert. e.g. one's powers, seine Krafte. Aufgabe, bie, task, lesson. Aufgebracht, enraged. auf'=geben, =ging, =gegangen, to go up; to be even. auf'=halten, =hielt, =gehalten, to hold up; to stay, to keep, to cease. auf = heben, see heben. aufmertfam, attentive, -ly. auf reißen, riß, geriffen, to pull open, to tear up. aufrichtig, upright, sincere, ---ly. auf'=fegen, to set (put) up or on. auf'=fpringen, =fprana, =gefprun= gen, to rise hastily. auf'=fteben, =ftanb, =geftanben, to stand (get) up, to rise. auf'=fuchen, to seek for. Auftrag, ber, commission. Aufwand, der, expense, extravaance, luxury; — machen, to live expensively. Auge, bas, eye (App. 3). Augenblick, ber, moment. aus, out, out of (385). aus'=brucken, to express. ausfindia machen, to find out. ausführbar, practicable. aus'=geben, =gab, =gegeben, to spend. aus'=geben, =ging, =gegangen, to go out. Ausland, bas, foreign country or countries. aus'=nehmen, =nahm, =genommen, to except. aus'=reißen, =riß, =geriffen, to pull

or pluck up; to draw out.

aus'=sehen, =sah, =gesehen, to look, | bebenken, to consider, to delito look out. Musichen, bas, appearance. auger, without, out of; except (385).außerorbentlich, extraordinary, exceedingly. außerhalb, without (=not within). außern, to show, to express. augerft, last, extremely. aus'eftreuen, to scatter. aus'=suchen, to search; to cull. aus'=trinten, =trant, =aetrunten, to drink out, to empty. auswendig, external, outer; lernen, to learn by heart.

Bach, ber, brook, rivulet. baden, bud (or badte), gebaden, to bake. Bab, bas, bath (App. 4). baben, to bathe. bald, soon, shortly. Ballon, ber, balloon. Band, ber, volume. Band, das, ribbon: tie. Banbe (pl.en), ties, fetters ; (sing.) obligation. banbigen, to tame, to restrain. barbariid, barbarian, -ous, -ly. Baron, ber, baron. Bau, ber, structure, building. bauen, to build. Bauer, ber, tiller of the ground: peasant. Baum, ber, tree. Baumchen, bas, small or young tree. baumen sich (of a horse), to rear. Baumwolle [lit. tree wool], bie, cotton. baummollen, made of cotton, cotbeantworten, to answer; sich -, to be answered. Becher, ber, cup. Becten, bas, bason. Bebacht, ber, consideration, deliberation, caution. bebeden, to cover.

berate. bebeutenb, important, considerable, -ly. bebienen, to serve : to wait on : -fich einer Sache, to make use of a thing. Bebiente, ber, servant. beburfen, beburfte, beburft, to need, to stand in need of. bebürftia, needv. befebben, to carry on a foud. befehlen, befahl, befohlen, to command. befinden (fich), befand, befunden, to find oneself, to be found. befleißen, befliß, befliffen or befleißigen sich, to apply oneself to; to study. begeben, begab, begeben, to go, to repair (to any place); to resign. begegnen, to meet, to prevent (an evil): governe dat. begehen, beging, begangen, to commit. beachren, to request, desire. beginnen, begann, begonnen, to begin. Begleiter, ber, companion. begleiten, to accompany. Begnadigung, bie, pardon. begraben, begrub, begraben, to bury. beareifen, beariff, beariffen, to seize; also mentally, hence, to comprehend. Begriff, ber, notion, idea ; im fein, to be on the point of (doing any thing). behalten, behielt, behalten, to koop. behaupten, to maintain, to assert. behenbe, handy, dextrous, —ly. cautious. bebutfam, bei, by, at, with (385). beibe, both; bie beiben, the two. Beil, bas, hatchet. Bein, bas, leg. Beispiel, bas, example ; jum -, for example. beißen, biß, gebiffen, to bite.

Beiftanb, ber, assistance. bei'sfteben, sftanb, sgeftanben, to stand by, to assist. befannt, acquainted. betlagen (fid), to complain. eflommen, depressed in mind. befommen, befam, befommen, to get, to obtain. betritteln, to ariticisa. beleben, to animate. belebt, enlivened, animated, ---ly. belehren, to inform. belieben, to please. belohnen, to recompense, to reward. beluftigen, to amuse. bemächtigen, to take possession bemeiftern, to make oneself master bemerten, to remark. bemühen, to trouble. Bemuhung, bie, troublo, pain. benachbart, neighbouring. beneiben, to envy. benothigt fein, to be in want of. beobacten, to observe. bequem, convenient, comfortable, -ly. bereichern, to emrich. bereiten, to prepare, to dress (of meat). bereits, already. Berg, ber, mountain. Bericht, ber, report, despatch. berichten, to inform. berften, barft, geborften, to burst. berühmt, renowned, celebrated. berühren, to touch. beschäftigen, to occupy. Befchaftigung, bie, occupation. beideiben, modest. beideiben fich, beidieb, beidieben, to acquiesce in. beschimpfen, to insult; to injure. befegen, to occupy. befinnen fich, befann, besonnen, to recollect. befigen, befaß, befeffen, to possess. beffer, better. beffern, to better, to improve.

beft, best: Befte, ber, the best_ bestanbig, constant, -ly. Befted, bas, case. befteben, beftanb, beftanben, to last, to endure : auf etwas ---, to insist upon any thing, to persist in any thing. fellen, to appoint ; to cultivate. bestimmt, appointed; positive, -ly. bestrafen, to punish. Besuch, ber, visit. besuchen, to visit; to haunt. beten, to pray. betrachten, to contemplate. considerable. betrådtlid, { −lv-Betragen, bas, behaviour, demeanour, conduct. betragen fich, to comport eneself: to behave. betrůbt, afflicted, ---ly. Betrüger, ber, deceiver. imposter. betrügen, betrog, betrogen, to deceive, to impose upon. betrunken, drunk. Bett , bas, bed. beurtheilen, to judge of. Beurtheiler, ber, judge, comoisseur. bevor, before. bewahren, to keep, to preserve, to treasure. bewegen, to move. benefice, to weep over, to bewail. bewunbern, to admire. bewußt, conscious, known. bezahlen, to pay. Bilb, bas, image (App. 4). bilben, to form, to fashion. billig, right, reasonable, -ly. binben, band, gebunben, to bind. binnen, within. bis, till, until. bisher, hitherto. bitten, bat, aebeten, to contreat, to bitter, bitter. -- lv. Bitterteit, die, bitterness; acrimony. bitterlich, bitterly.

blaff, pale. Blatt, bas, leaf, sheet of paper. blau, blue. bleiben, blieb, geblieben, to remain, to stay, Blick, ber, look. blind, blind. Blis, ber, lightning. bligen, to lighten, to glitter. bluben, to bloom, to blossom. blubend, blooming. Blume, bie, flower. blumig, flowery. blutig, bloody, sanguinary, -ly. Boot, bas, boat; pl. Boote or Båte. Borfe, bie, purse. bose, wicked, angry, bad, -ly. boshaft, malicious, wicked, -ly. Bote, ber, messenger. Botichaft, bie, message. brach, fallow, unploughed. braten, briet, gebraten, to roast. brauden, to made use of; to want. Braune, ber, bay horse. brav, valiant, brave. breden, brad, gebreden, to break. breit, broad. Brief, ber, letter. Brille, bie, spectacles. Brob, bas, bread. Brud, ber, breach. Bruber, ber, brother. Buch, bas, book. bûchen, beechen. Budhandlung, die, library, bookseller's shop. Buchstab, ber, letter. Bunbel, bas, bundle. Bunbnis, bas, alliance, treaty, league. bunt, coloured; party-coloured, mixed. Burge (werden), to bail, to take the guarantee for any body or any thing. Burger, ber, citizen. burgerlich, civil. Burgichaft, die, bail, guarantee. Burgunber, ber, Burgundy wine. Burgverließ, see Berließ.

Cafar, Casar. dirurgija, surgical. Constitution, die, constitution. conftruiren, see Dreieck. ba, there; as; because; whereas. babei, thereby; by that; thereat. Dady bas, roof. baburd, thereby, by that means, by it. bafür, for it, in return of it. baher, thence; from thence; therefore, for that reason. babin, thither, to that place. bamit, therewith; in order that. Dant, ber, thanks : mit ---, thankfully. banfbar, thankful, -- lv. danken, to thank. Dankbarkeit, bie, gratitude. bann, then; bann unb mann, now and then. baran, thereon; in that, in it, on it; near that, of it. barauf, thereon, on it, after it. barben, to starve. bar'=bieten, =bot, =aeboten, to offer t (fid) -, to give oneself up to. bar'=bringen, =brachte, =gebracht, to bring, to offer. barum, around that; on that account. barnad), after it, according to that. barüber, thereover, over it, at it. concerning it. baß, that. Datum, bas, date. bauern, to last. bavon, thereof, therefrom; away. becken, to cover. Degen, ber, sword. bein, thy, thine. beinia, thine. bemnady, therefore, according to. benten, bachte, gebacht, to think; (fid)) —, to fancy, to imagine. benn, for, then; es fei -, baf,

unless.

Burfd, ber, companion ; lad.

ber, bie, bas, the; who, which; ber welcher, he who. beraleichen, such like. berfelbe (biefelbe, baffelbe), the bestalb, for this reason, therefore. befregen, on that account. befmillen, see befmegen. besto, the; je großer - besser, the greater, the better. beutich, German. Deutichland, Germany. bid), thee. Dichter, ber, poet. Dichttunft, bie, poetry. bid, thick. Dieb, ber, thief. bienen, to serve. Diener, ber, servant. Dienst, ber, service. biefer, biefe, biefes, this. Ding, bas, thing. Dinte, bie, ink. bir, to thee. bod, yet, however, I pray; menn er fie, u.f.m.) -, would that he, &c. Donau, bie, Danube. Donner, ber, thunder. Dorf, bas, village. Dorn, ber, thorn; ein — im Auge fein, to be looked upon with an evil eye. bort, there. borthin, see babin. breben, to turn. brei, three. Dreiect, bas, triangle; ein - conftruiren, to describe a triangle. britte, third. broben, to threaten. bruden, to press; Jemand bie pand —, to press any body's hand = take him by the hand, or shake hands with him. Du, thou :-Du, G. beiner, D. bir, Ac. bich. Ibr, G. euer, D. euch, Ac. euch. bulben, to bear, to suffer, to enbumm, dull, stupid. bumpf, hollow.

bungen, to manure.
buntel, dark, dusky.
Duntel, bas, obscurity, dark colour.
bunn, thin, fine.
burd, through, by means of.'
burd/=[efen, to read through.
burfer, burfte, geburft, to dare.
burt, dry, withered.
Dugenb, bas, dozen.

eben, even, just. Cher, ber, boar. Ecte, bie, corner. ebel, noble, -ly. ehe, ere, before. The, bie, marriage. Ehre, bie, honour. ehren, to honour. ehrlich, honest, -ly. Gi, bas, egg. Gide, bie, oak-tree, oak. eichen, oaken, made of oak. eifersüchtig, jealous. eigen, own, proper, -ly. eigennüßig, selfish, -ly. Eigenthumer, ber, proprietor. eigentlid, properly, after all. Gile, die, haste. eilen, to hasten. ein, eine, ein, a. an; one. einander, one another. ein'=bilben, to imagine. einfach, simple, -ly. einfaltia, simple, silly, -ly. eingebilbet, presumptuous, conceited. eingebent, mindful. einiger, -e, -es, some, any. ein'=laben, =lub, =aelaben, to invite. Einladung, die, invitation. einmal, once; auf -, at once; nicht —, not even. ein'=nehmen, =nahm, =genommen, to take (of a town, also of physic). Einrichtung, die, contrivance, management. einfam, lonely, solitary. ein'sichleichen, sichlich, sgeschlichen, to creep in, to steal in.

ein'sidmeideln, to insinuate oneself, to curry favours. ein'=feben, =fah, =gefeben, to perceive, to comprehend, to be convinced of. ein'=willigen, to consent to. einzig, only, exclusive. Gis, bas; Gisbecte, bie, ice. Gifen, bas, iron. eitel, vain. Gitelfeit, bie, vanity. Elend, bas, misery. elend, wretched, -ly. Clephant, ber, elephant. Eltern, die, parents. empfehlen, empfahl, empfohlen, to recommend; fich -, to take leave. empfinblich, keen, irritable, -ly, touchy, pettish; auf's (= auf bas) empfinblichfte, very sensibly. empfinbfam, sentimental, -ly. Empfindung, bie, feeling, sentiment. enben, to end. Enbe, bas, end. enblich, at last, at length. enge, narrow. Engel, ber, angel. englisch, English. England, England. entbehren, to want; to dispense with; to.do without. entbeden, to discover. entfernen, to remove, to withdraw, to retire. enthalten (fich), enthielt, enthalten, to abstain from. entlang, along. entrathen, entrieth, entrathen, to be without, to do without. enticheiben, to decide. entschlagen, entschlug, entschlagen, to rid oneself of, to forget (e.g. care; Sorge, with Gen.). Enticular, ber, resolution. entsinnen sich, to think of; to remember. entubriaen, to exempt; to save

oneself (e.g. Muhe, trouble).

entmeber, either. entwehren, to defend, (fich) to refrain from. entziehen, entzog, entzogen, to deprive of. entameien, to disunite, to disagree, to quarrel, to alienate. er, he :-Er, G. feiner, D. ihm, Ac. ihn. Sie, G. ihrer, D. ihnen, Ac. fie. erbarmen (sid), to have compassion with. erbleichen, erblich, erblichen, to grow pale, to die. erblicken, to perceive, to observe. erbulben, to endure, to suffer, to bear. Erbe, bie, earth. Erdfunde, die, geography. Erfahrung, bie, experience. Erfolg, ber, success. erforbern, to require, to demand. erfreuen, to rejoice. erfrieren, to freeze to death. erfrischen, to refresh. erfullen, to replenish, to fulfil, to accomplish. ergeben sid, to show itself; to submit to, to devote oneself to. to surrender. ergreifen, to seize; to take up (e.g. arms). erhalten, to hold up, to maintain, to obtain, to receive, to find, to meet with (one whose services one secures). erholen, to recover, to recreate, to take recreation. erinnern, to recollect. Grinnerung, bie, remembrance. recollection. erflåren, to declare, to show itself (the latter of things that manifest themselves). erfennen, to perceive; to acknowledge. erlauben, to allow. Erlaubniß, die, permission. erleben, to live to see. erlegen, to kill. erloiden, to be extinguished.

ermangeln, to be wanting, to be without, to omit, to fail. ermorben, to murder. ermüben, to tire, to fatigue. ermuthigen, to encourage. erniebrigen, to lower, to degrade. Crnft, ber, earnest. ernft, serious, seriously. Ernte, bie, harvest. ernten, to harvest. erquiden, to refresh. erreichen, to reach. errôtben, to blush. Erscheinung, bie, apparition, vimon. eridreden, eridrad, eridroden, to be terrified, to terrify, to frighten. erfegen, to replace, to restore. erft, first, at first; but now. erstaunen, to be assonished, to astonish, to surprise. Erftaunen, bas, surprise. ertragen, ertrug, ertragen, to bear, to endure, to suffer. ermabnen, to mention. erwarten, to expect, to wait for. Grwartung, bie, expectation. erweisen, erwies, ermiesen, prove, to show. ermiebern, to reply, to show a kindness in return. **Etz,** bas, ore. eradbien, to relate. Grziehung, bie, education. es, it, G. feiner, D. ihm, Aco. es. Gfel, ber, ass. effen, af, gegeffen, to est; zu Mittag —, to dine; zu Abenb -, to sup. etlide, some, several, divers. ctivas, somewhat, some, something. euer, your, yours. Fabel, die, fable. facieln, to fan.

Fabel, bie, fable. fåcheln, to fan. fabe, insipid. fåbig, capable. fabren, fuhr, gefahren, to ride; to

go in a carriage or ship; to drive. Kährmann, ber, forry-man. falls, fallow, pale grey or yellow. Falls ber, fall, case, accident; in bem -, in that case; einen thun, to get a fall. fallen, fiel, gefallen, to fall, to drop; auf etwas -, to fall upon. falls, in case, if. falfd), false, —by. falten, to fold. Familie, bie, family. Fang, ber, catch. fangen, fing, gefangen, to catch, to seize. farbe, bie, colour. oft, almost, nearly. aul, foul, idle, -ly. fecten, focht, gefochten, to fight, to fence. Teber, bie, feather, pen ; spring. Kebermeffer, bas, penknife. fehlen, to err, to miss; to be wanting. Kehler, ber, fault, error, mistake; einen - machen, to make a mistake. feig, soft, timid, coward, —ly. Feind, der, fiend, enemy. feinblich, inimical, hostile, —ly. felb, bas, field. Felbherr, ber, general Fell, bas, hide, skin. Felsenwand, bie, stoop side of a rock, precipice. Relien or Kels, ber, rock. Tenfter, bas, window. fertig, ready. fest, fast, firm, --- ly. Kestung, die, fortress fortification. fett, fat. feucht, moist, damp. Feuer, das, fire. eurig, fiery. Fieber, bas, fever. Figur, die, figure. finden, to find. Finger, ber, finger; burch bie -

feben, to wink at any thing.

finfter, dark. Fisch, ber, fish. flach, flat. Flacis, ber, flax. Flamme, bie, flame. Flasche, bie, bottle. Flect, ber, spot, blemish. Klebermaus, bie, bat. Fleisch, bas, flesh, animal food, fleiß, ber, diligence. Keißig, diligent, ---- ly. fliegen, flog, geflogen, to fly. flieben, flob, gefloben, to flee, to fly. fließen, floß, aeflossen, to flow. flimmen or flimmern, to glitter. Flos, bas, float, raft. Flucht, bie, flight. fluchten, to fly. Klugel, ber, wing (of a bird, also of an army). fluß, ber, river. Kluth, bie, flood, water. folgen, to follow, to obey. folgenbermaßen, in the following manner. folglich, subsequent, consequently. forbern, to demand, to ask. Frage, die, question. fragen, to ask. Frantreich, bas, France. Frau, woman, wife; Ihre Frau Mutter, your mother. rei, free, frank. reigebig, liberal, generous, -ly. fremb, foreign, strange, —ly. rembe, ber, stranger. Freude, bie, joy; mit Freuden, joyfully. reudig, joyful, cheerful, ---ly. freuen sid, to rejoice. Freund, ber, frieud. Freundin, bie, female friend. freundlich, friendly. Freundschaft, die, friendship. Krevel, ber, enormity, atrocity, misdeed. riebe, ber, peace. frieblich, peaceable, --- ly. friebsam, peaceful, -ly.

frisch, new, vigorous, —ły. roh, joyful, glad, happy, fromm, pious, --ly. Froid, der, frog. Frost, der, frost. frucht, die, fruit. ruh, early. frůber, earlier, formerly. Frühling, ber, spring. rubroth, bas, dawn of day. fugen, to suit; to come to pass; to happen. fühlen, to feel. führen, to lead. Kührer, ber, leader, guide. fünfte, flfth. funfzehn or fünfzehn, fifteen. Funte, ber, spark. fûr, for. Kurcht, die, fear. furchtbar, formidable, fearful, ---ly. fürchten, to fear. furchtsam, timid, —ly. Fürst, der, prince. Fuß, ber, foot, footing. Fußpfab, ber, foot-path. futtern, to food. Gabel, bie, fork. Gans, die, goose. ganz, whole, entire, all. ganglich, complete, entire, -ly. gar nicht, by no means; not at all; gar nichts, nothing at all. Garten, ber, garden. Garten=Gewäche, bas, garden, plant. Gärtner, ber, gardener. Gartnerei, die, gardening. Gaft, ber, guest, visitor. Gasthof, ber, great inn, hotel. gebären, to bring forth. geben, gab, gegeben, to give; es giebt, there is or are.

gebieten, gebot, geboten, to com-

gebilbet, accomplished. Gebirge, bas, mountains, ridge of

Gebrauch, ber, use, custom.

mand.

mountains.

Geburtstag, ber, birthday. Bebante, ber, thought; auf ben Bedanken kommen, (athg) occurs to one's mind; Gebanten uber -, considerations or reflections on. gebeihen, gebieh, gebiehen, thrive, to prosper. gebenten, gebachte, gebacht, to think of, to remember. Gebicht, bas, poem. Gebulb, bie, patience. gebulbig, patient, -ly. Gefahr, bie, danger. gefährlich, dangerous, —ly. Sefabrte, ber, companion. gefallen, gefiel, gefallen, to please. Gefangniß, bas, prison. Gefecht, bas, fight, battle. gegen, against, towards. Begenftand, ber, object. Gegentheil, bas, counterpart; im -, on the contrary. gegenüber, over against, opposite. gegenwärtig, present, -ly. gehåssig, spiteful. Gebeimniß, bas, secret, mystery. geben, ging, gegangen, to go, to walk. gehorden, to obey. gehoren, to belong to. gehörig, proper, -ly. gehorsam, obedient, dutiful. Gehorsam, ber, obedience. Geift, ber, gliost, spirit, mind. Geiftestraft, bie, power or faculty of the mind, intellectual power. Beizige, Geighals, ber, miser. geizig, avaricious, —ly. Gelb, bas, coin, money. Gelbbeutel, ber, purse. gelegen (es ift baran), it is of moment or consequence. Gelegenheit, bie, opportunity. gelebrt, learned. gelingen, gelang, gelungen, to succeed. gelten, galt, gegolten, to be worth or of value. gemáß, conformable; conformably.

gemäftet, fattened, fat. Gemuth, bas, mind, heart. gengu, minute; intimate, —ly. General, see Feldherr. genefen, genaß, genefen, to recover. geniefen, genoß, genoffen, to enjoy. genug, enough. Genuß, ber, enjoyment. geometrisch, geometrical, -ly. gerade, straight, just, exactly. Geradheit, die, uprightness. gerathen, gerieth, gerathen, to fall into, to get into; to succeed. gerecht, righteous, —ly. gerinnen, gerann, geronnen, to curdle. gern, willingly; - haben, to like: - mollen, to be desirous or to be anxious. Beruch, ber, smell. Gerückt, bas, report. Gerüft, bas, scaffolding. Gesang, der, singing, song. Geschäft, bas, business. geschehen, geschah, geschehen, to come to pass. Geichent, bas, present. Geschichte, bie, history, story. geichicht, able, clever, -ly. Gefdmad, ber, taste. Gefchus, bas, artillery. gefdmåcht, weakened. geschmäßig, talkative, —ly. Gesellschaft, die, society. Gefes, bas, statute, law. Gesicht, bas, sight; face. gefinnt, disposed, being in a certain disposition of mind. Geftalt, die, form, shape. gestatten, to grant. gestehen, gestand, gestanden, to confess. gestern, yesterday. gefund, sound, healthy, —ly. Gefundheit, bie, health. getroften, to hope with confidence, to trust in. Gewäche, bae, plant. gewahr, sensible, aware; - werben, to perceive.

Gewalt, bie, force, violence.

aemartia, expecting; - fein, to | Gruft, bie, pit, grave. expect. Gewicht, bas, weight. Gewinn, ber, gain, profit. gewinnen, gewann, gewonnen, to win, to gain. gewiß, certain, -ly. Gewiffen, bas, conscience. gemiffenhaft, -ig, conscientious, zemőbnen, to accustom. Gemobnheit, bie, custom, practice. gemohnlich, customary, general, usual, -ly. gewohnt sein, to be wont, to be accustomed. Gift, bas, poison. glänzend, brilliant. Glas, bas, glass. latt, smooth, --ly. Glaube, ber, faith ; belief. alauben, to believe, to put faith in. gleid), like, equal, immediate; . barauf, immediately after. aleichen, to be like, to be equal. gleichseitig, equilateral. Glieb, bas, limb, member. Glad, bas, luck, fortune; zum ---, luckily. gluction, lucky, luckily, prosperous, happy, -ly. Gluctlicherweise, happily, luckily. Gold, bas, gold. golben, made of gold, gold. gonnen, not to envy; to grant. Gott, ber, God. Grab, bas, grave, tomb. Graben, ber, ditch; über einen - segen, to leap a ditch. Graf, ber, earl, count. Gras, bas, grass. Greis, ber, old man. griedisch, Greek. grob, coarse, gross, clumsy, heavy, ---ly. roß, great, big, large. Große, bie, greatness. großmuthig, magnanimous, --- ly. größtentheils, for the most part. heben, bob, gehoben, to heave, lift.

grün, green. Grund, ber, ground, foundation, reason. grunben, to found; (fich) to be founded or established. Grundsat, ber, principle. grußen, to greet, to salute. Gunft, die, favour. gut, good, well. Sut, bas, estate; gift. Sute, bie, goodness, kindness. gutig, good, kind. Haar, bas, hair. haben, to have. Habicht, ber, hawk. Bafen, ber, haven, port. halb, half; halber, on account of. Balfte, bie, half ; um bie -, by one half, or by half. Pals, ber, neck. halt, ber, hold, support. halten, hielt, gehalten, to hold; to esteem, to deem. Hand, die, hand. banbeln, to deal, to act, to do. bandbaben, to handle, to manage. Banblung, bie, action. hånfen, hempen. hangen, hing, gehangen, to hang, to be suspended. bangen, to hang, to suspend. hanna, Anna. Barfe, bie, harp. harren, to wait. hart, hard, severe, ---ly. hårten, to harden. Harz, das, resin. Paselhuhn, das, hazel-hen. Has, ber, hatred. hassen, to hate. håßlid), ugly, nasty, bad, —ly. Saufe, ber, heap. haufig, frequent, common, —ly. Baus, bas, house; zu Baufe, at home; nach Saufe geben, to go home. Saut, bie, hide, skin.

Paupt, bas, head.

beftia, violent, eager, ---ly. Deftigfeit, bie, violence, vehemence. Beibelberg, Heidelberg. heill hail! Deil, bas, prosperity. wholesome. mlutary. heilfam, -ly. Beirath, bie, marriage. beirathen, to marr heißen, hieß, geheißen, to call : to bid; to be called. heiter, serene, clear, -ly. Deld, ber, hero. helfen, half, geholfen, to belp. hell, clear, light, bright, -ly. herab, down (from any elevation). berauf, up (to this place). Berbit, ber, harvest, autumn. berbfilich, autumnal, -ly, as in autumn. bereinkommen, =kam, =gekommen, to come (step) on. herein! come in! Berold, ber, herald. herr, ber, gentleman; master. heruber, over (to this place). Seri bas, heart Bergog, ber, duke. Beu, das, hay. Beuchler, ber, hypocrite. heute, to-day. heutia, of this day ; beutiges Tages, now-a-davs. bieher, hither, to this place. bier, here. himmel, ber, heaven, sky. hin, to that place; hin und her, to and fro. hinab, down; -- Schiffen, to ship down, to go down by water; fleigen, to step or go down. hinaus, out (from hence). hindern, to hinder, to prevent. Hinberniß, bas, obstacle. binein'streten, strat, sgetreten, to step in. binken, to limp. hin'=gehen, =ging, =gegangen, to go (proceed) to. hin'slegen, to lay down.

hinsrichten, to execute. Dinfict, bie, view; consideration. regard. binten, behind. binter, binter ber, hintergeben, hinterging, binter= gangen, to circumvent. to deceive. Hirich, der, stag. bige, die, heat. both, high. hof, ber, yard, court. boffen, to hope. hoffentlich, as is or may be hoped: as I hope. hoffnung, bie, hope; ber - leben, to live in hopes. hohl, hollow. boble, bie, hollow, cave. holb, kind, graceful, —ly. holen, to fotch. Bolz, bas, wood. bonia, ber, honey. horen, to hear. Bügel, ber, hill. hillock. huhn, das, chicken. hūbíd), pre**tty, ---ly**bulfe, die, help. hulfsbedurftig. wanting belp. needy, poor, forsaken. Sund, ber, hound, dog. hunger, ber, hunger, famine. Hut, der, hat. Hütte, bie, cottage, hut. huten, to look after, to watch, to take care not to commit, to avoid. ich, I (G. meiner, D. mir, Aca. wir, we (G. unfer, D. uns, Acc. une). Ihr, your, you (see Du). immer, always; ouf -, for ever. in, in, into. inbem, while.

indes, indesen, in the mean time,

meanwhile, however. Indien, bas, India.

inner, within.

Inhalt, ber, contents, mennis

im Innern, at home, opp. abroad.
innerhalb, within.
irbifd, earthly, of this world.
irren, to wander.
fidy to be mistaken.
irgenb einer, eine, ein, any, any
ome.
Stelling hee Italy.

Italien, bas, Italy. italienifc, Italian.

ja, yea, yes; also emphatically = surely, certainly. Raab, die, chase, hunt. jagen, to chase, to hunt. Zahr, bas, year. Sahrezeit, bie, season. je, ever, always; je eber, je lieber, the sooner the more agreeable; je nachbem, accordingly. jeber, —e, —es, every, every one. jebermann, every one, any one. jemanb, somebody. jener, -e, -es, that, the former. jenseit, or jenseits, on the other side of. jenseitia, of (or being on) the other side: bas -e ufer, the opposite shere. je**š**t, now, at pre**sent.** ubein, to rejoice, to exult. Zugend, bie, youth. ung, young. Jüngling, ber, young man, youth.

tabl, bald, --by. Rahn, ber, boat, wherry. Raiser, ber, emperor. tatt, cold, cool, --- ly. Ralte, bie, cold. Ramm, ber, comb. Rampf, ber, combat, fight. tampfen, to combat, to fight. Rampfgenoß, ber, companion in arms. Rapelle, die, chapel. targ, parsimonious, stingy. Rarl, Charles. Rage, die, cat. Eaufen, to buy. Räufer, der, buyer. Raufmann, ber, merchant.

foum, hardly, barely, scarcely, febren, to turn, to return. feimen, to germinate, to spring up. fein, no. teiner, —e, —es, pone. feinesweges, by no means. tennen, tannte, getannt, to know. Kind, bas, child. ťindiíď, ch**ildish. —ly.** Rirche, die, church. Rissen, bas, cushion. flor, clear. Rleib, bas, dress. flein, little, small. Rleinigkeit, bie, triffe. Klima, bas, climate. flopfen, to knock. Rlog, ber, log, block. flug, prudent, able, —ly. Anabe, ber, boy. Inapp, close, —ly. inecitist, shovish, ---iy. fneipen, to pinch. fneten, to knead. Koch, ber, cook. Romet, ber, comet. fommen, fam, gefommen, to come. Konig, ber, king. Kôniginn, bie, queen. toniglid, royal, kingly. tonnen, fonnte, getonnt, can, to be able. Körper, ber, body. forperlich, bodily. toftbar, costly, precious, --ly. kostlich, see kostbar. Rraft, die, strength, power; meines Amtes, by virtue of my office. Aragen, ber, collar. trant, sick i**ll.** Rranke, ber (the siek man =), the patient. franten, to grieve, to ven, to injure. Arantheit, bie, illness, sickness. Araut, bas, herb. Areis, der, circle. Krieg, der, war. Krieger, ber, warrior.

Ruh, bie, cow.
Thin, bold, —ly.
Runbe, bie, knowledge, information.
Tunbig, acquainted (with a thing), informed.
Runft, bie, art, skill, science.
Runft-Ausstellung, bie, exhibition.
Runftler, ber, artist.
Tury, short, brief, —ly.
Ruste, bie, coast.
Rutster, ber, coachman.

lackin, to smile (at). lachen, to laugh, with gen. Laben, ber, shutter, shop. Lager, bas, couch, camp. lahm, lame. Lamm, bas, lamb. Land, bas, country. Lanbfarte, bie, map. Landmann, ber, husbandman. Landstraße, die, high road. Landvogt, ber, bailiff. lang, long, tall. långs, along. langiam, slow, -ly. laß, weary, —ly. laffen, ließ, gelaffen, to let, to permit, to allow; also to cause (any thing), to make (any body do any thing), to see (any thing done, to be done). See p. 47. Lafter, bas, vice. lasterhaft, vicious. -- ly. Latein, bas, the Latin language. lateinisch, Latin. Laub, bas, leaves, foliage. laufen, lief, gelaufen, to run. laugnen, to deny. lauf, loud: according to some document, &c. 394. leben, to live. Leben, bas, life. Lebensart, or speise, die, manner of living, livelihood. Lebenswandel, ber, manner, mode of living. legen, to lay, to place. lebren, to teach. Lehrer, ber, teacher.

Leib, ber, body. leicht, light; easy, -ly. leichtfinnia, thoughtless, frivolous, leiben, litt, gelitten, to suffer, to endure. leiber, alas! also = I am sorry to вау. leiben, lieb, gelieben, to land. leiten, to lead. Lerche, bie, lark. lernen, to learn; auswenbia —, to learn by heart. lesen, las, gelesen, to read. lest, last; zu lest, at last. Leute, people. Licht, bas, light, candle (pl. =er). lieb, dear; - fein, to be agreeable, to be glad of; - baben, to love, to like. Liebe, die, love. lieben, to love, to like. lieber, rather, sooner; - nicht, rather not. lieblich, lovely. Lieb, das, song. liegen, lag, gelegen, to lie: es liegt baran, it is of importance. lint, left; wrong. Lift, bie, cunning, fraud. liftia, artful, cunning, —ly. loben, to praise. lobern, to blaze. Loffel, der, spoon. Conbon, bas, London. los, loose; — werben, to get rid lò(d)en, to put out, to extinguish. losen, to dissolve. Lubwig, Lewis. Euft, die, air, breeze. Luge, bie, lie, falsehood. lugen, to lie. Lugner, ber, liar. luftig, gay, merry, -ly.

machen, to make. machtig, mighty, powerful, —ly; — sein, e.g. einer Sache, to be master of a thing. Måbden, bas, girl, maid. måben, to mow. Mai, ber, May; branch of a Maytree Mal, bas, repetition of any act: time ; ein -, once ; brei three times: noth ein -, once more, over again; ouf ein -, mit einem Male, at once. man, people [the French on]; -faat, they say. mander, =e, =es, many a -Manbel, bie, almond. Mandel, bas, a number of fifteen. Mangel, ber, want, deficiency. Mann, ber, man. månnlich, manly. Mantel, ber, mantle, cloak. maridiren, to march. martern, to torment. Marterthum, bas, martyrdom. måßig, moderate, temperate, —ly. Måßigung, bie, moderation. Maft, ber, mast. Mathematik, bie, mathematics.' matt, tired, weary, faint. Mauer, die, wall. Marime, die, maxim. Marimilian (a German emperor). Meer, bas, sea. Mebl, bas, flour. mehr, more; nicht —, no more; no longer; - unb -, more and more. mehrere, several (persons). meiben, mieb, gemieben, to avoid. mein, meinig, -e, -, my, mine. meinen, to mean; to be of opinion. Meinung, die, meaning; opinion. meift, most. Meifterftud, bas, master-piece. melben, to announce. melten, to milk. Menge, die, great number, multitude. Mensch, ber, man, person. Metall, bas, metal mid, me (acc. of id). Miene, bie, mien, look, appearance. miethen, to hire, to rent.

Mild, bie, milk. milb, mild, soft, gentle, -ly. mifchen, to mix. Miggestalt, die, misshapen form. Miftlang or Mifton, ber, dissodiscordant discord, nance, sound, cord, or note. mismuthia, discontented, -ly. mit, with; by, at, on, to. mit'=geben, to give along with. mithin, consequently. Mitleiben, bas, compassion, pity. Mittag, ber, mid-day, noon; ju - speisen, to dine. Mittagessen, bas, dinner. Mittel, bas, middle, midst; means. mittlerweile, meanwhile. motern, to moulder. mogen, may; ich mag, I like; ich mochte, I should like : gemocht. moglich, possible; — erweise, possibly. Monat, ber, month. Mond, ber, moon. Montag, ber, Monday. Moos, bas, moss. morben, to murder. Morber, ber, murderer, assassin. morberisch, murderous, -ly. Morgen, ber, morning. morgen, to-morrow : morrow morning. morgens, in the morning. mube, weary, tired, -ly. Műdigfeit, bie, weariness. Mühe, die, trouble. Mühle, die, mill. Mund, ber, mouth. Musit, bie, music. muffen, mußte, gemußt, must, to be obliged. Müssiggang, ber, idleness. Muth, der, courage; gutes Muthes fein, to be of good cheer. Mutter, bie, mother.

nadh, after, next, behind, to; e.g.
— ber Stadt gehen, to go to
town.
nadh'sahmen, to imitate.

Nachbar, ber, neighbour. nachbem, afterwards; after, when, according, as. nach'=benken, =bachte, =aebacht, to reflect, to meditate. nach'=geben, =gab, =gegeben, to give in, to yield. nother, afterwards, after that. nach siggen, to chase after, hunt after. Madricht, bit, news, accounts, intelligence. nach'-feben, =fab, =gefeben, to look after, to revise. nådift, next. Racifte, ber, neighbour, relation. Racht, bie, night: - frost, night frost. Rachtigall, bie, nightingale. nahern, to draw near. Rahrung, bie, nourishment. food. Rame, ber, name. nas, wet, moist. Ratur, bie, nature. Mation, bie, nation. Reapel, bas, Naples. neben, next to, on the side of (385).nebelicht, misty. nebit, together with (385). necten, to tease. nehmen, nahm, genommen, to take; fid in Most -, to take care, to heed. neibisch, envious. -- ly. Meigung, bie, inclination. nein, no. nennen, nannte, genannt, to call by name, to name. Reft, bas, nest. neu, new, fresh, modern. nicht, not; burchaus --, not at Nichte, bie, niece. nichte, nothing. nie, never. Nieberlage, bie, discomfiture, defeat, overthrow. nieder'=reißen, =riß, geriffen, to pull down. niedrig, low, lowly.

Riemand, no one, nobody.

ninmer, never.

nitgend, nitgends, no where.

noth, still, yet; — nicht, not yet;

— halb io viet, half as much
again.

Roth, bit, need, necessity.

nothig, necessary.

nun, now.

nur, only, but.

Ruß, bit, nut.

Ruß, bit, nut.

Rußen, to be of use, to be useful.

Rußen, bet, use, utility.

nüßlich, useful, —ly.

ob, whether, if ; all -, as if_ oberflachlich, superficial, --- ly. obgleich, obidon, although (415). obwel, Obst, bas, fruit. ober, or. Del, bas, oil. Ofen, ber, oven. offen, open. offenherzig, open-hearted. offnen, to open. oft, often. obne, without. ohnebem, ohnedieß, besides. ohnehin, J Ohr, bas, ear. Opfer, bas, offering, sacrifice: vietim. Opfertucien, ber, cake offered as an oblation. Drt, ber, place, spot. Oftern, Eastern.

Paar, das, couple.
Pantoffel, der, slipper.
Papier, das, paper.
Pappel, die, poplar.
Paris, das, Paris.
paffen, to fit, to de adapted.
Pelsninge, die, fur cap.
Pfab, der, path.
Pfeil, der, anrow.

Øferb, bas, korse. Oferdchen, das, pony. Pferberennen, bas, horne-race. Pflanze, die, plant. pflanzen, to plant. Pflege, bie, care, nursing. pflegen, to bestow care upon, to take care of; to be in the habit. Pflicht, bie, duty. pfluden, to pluck. pflügen, to plough. Pforte, bie, door, gate ; the Porte. pfui! bah! platt, flat. ploblich, sudden, -ly; all on a sudden. plump, unfashioned, clamsy, unhandy. Politur, bie, appearance, polish. Pracht, bie, splendour, pomp. prangen, to make a show; mit ben Segeln -, to crowd sail. Prediger, der, preacher, minister. Predigt, bie, sermon. Preis, ber, prize ; price ; praise. preifen, pries, gepriefen, to praise, to commend. Prozeß, ber, lawsuit. Pubel, ber, poodle dog. Punct or Puntt, ber, point. pugen, to clean, to wipe, to polish.

Quelle, bie, spring. Quittung, bie, acquittance, ceipt.

Rand, ber, border, brink. Rath, ber, counsel, advice : senate, counsellor. rathen, rieth, gerathen, to guess; to counsel, to advise. rathfam, advisable. zauben, to bereave, to rob, to take from. raudern, to fumigate. roup, rough, harsh. Rednung, bie, reckoning, account, bill recht, right, correct, -ly. Recht, bas, right, law.

rechnen, to reckon, to cast up acconnts. rechtschaffen, righteous, honest, —ly. Rechtsgelehrte, ber, jurist. Rebe, bie, speech, discourse. reben, to speak. reblich, honest, -ly. Regen, ber, rain. Regierung, bie, government. reanen, to rain. reiben, rieb, gerieben, to rub. reich, rich, ---ly. reichen, to reach : to offer. reidilid, abundant, copious, -ly. Reichthum, ber, riches. reif, ripe. rein, clean, pure, -ly. reinigen, to clean, to polish. Reife, bie, journey, voyage. reisen, to travel. reißen, riß, geriffen, to rend, to tear, to split. reißenb, rapid. reiten, ritt, geritten, to rido. Reiterei, die, cavalry. reizent, charming, -ly. retten, to save, to rescue. Rettung, bie, deliverance, salva-Rhein, ber, the river Rhine. richten, to direct; to point (of artillery). Richter, ber, judge. richtig, right, just, —ly. Riese, ber, giant. Ring, ber, ring, circle. Ritt, ber, riding, a ride. ritterlich, knight-like, knightly. Rock, der, coat. roh, raw, crude, rough, --- ly. Rohr, das, reed, cane. Rolando (a proper name). Rom, bas, Rome. romijd), Roman. Ros, bas, steed, korse. roth, red. Ructtehr, bie, return. rudern, to row. Ruf, ber, call, vocation, reputation.

rufen, rief, gerufen, to call: laffen, to send for. Rube, bie, rest, repose. ruben, to rest, to repose. rubig, quiet, tranquil, ---ly. Ruhm, ber, renown, fame, glory. ruhmen, to glorify, to praise; (fich) -, to boast of. rund, round. Rusland, das, Russia.

Saame, see Saat. Saat, die, seed, green corn, crop. Sache, bie, matter, affair. fact, soft, gentle, -ly. faen, to sow. fagen, to say, to tell. Salz, bas, salt. fammeln, to gather, to collect. Sand, ber, sand. fanft, soft, gentle, -ly. att, satisfied; weary. attein, to saddle. auer, Bour. aumen, to hem; to delay. Schabe, ber, damage, harm ; es ift —, it is a pity. schaben, to hurt, to injure. Schaf, das, sheep. Schafer, ber, shepherd. Adaffen, schuf, geschaffen, to bring about, to create, to procure. ichallen, to sound. chamen sich, to be ashamed. ídiánolidi, shameful, disgraceful, infamous, -ly. **ľď**)arf, sharp. Shat, ber, treasure, store. ព្រំងំទូខព, to value, to estimate. íchauderhaft, horrible. schaufeln, to shovel. Schauspielhaus, bas, playhouse. Scheit, bas, billet. Schelm, ber, knave. fcetten, schalt, gescholten, to scold. Scherz, der, jest, joke. schicken, to send; to suit, to be becoming. ichielen, to squint.

to appear, to seem; ber Zag scheint (poet. it is light). fciegen, ichof, gefchoffen, to shoot; to pounce upon. idenen, to dread, to be in fear of. Schiff, bas, ship, vessel. Schiffer, der, captain; boat-man, ferry-man. Shilb, ber, shield. Shilf, bas, rushes, reeds. Schimmel, ber, white horse. Schimmer, ber, glitter, glimmer. Schlacht, bie, battle, action. schlachten, to slaughter, to kill. Schlachtpferd or Ros, bas, battlehorse, charger. Schlaf, ber, sleep. fclafen, fclief, gefclafen, to sleep; to be asleep; noch nicht ganz-, not to be quite or fast asleep. ídlaff, slack, —ly. Schlag, ber, clap; stroke, blow. Schlagbaum, ber, turnpike. fchlagen, fchlug, gefchlagen, to beat; sid —, to fight. falant, slim, slender, —ly. dlau, sly, cunning, —ly. folicht, mean, base, bad, wicked, fdließen, fdloß, gefdloffen, to shut, to conclude. Schloß, bas, castle, palace; lock. Schlüssel, ber, key. schmal, narrow, -ly. ichmecken, to taste; to taste well. imeideln, to flatter. schmelzen, schmolz, geschmolzen, to melt. Schmerz, der, pain. idmucten, to adorn, to decorate. schmuhig, dirty, —ly. Schnee, ber, snow. (d)nell, quick, swift, —ly. Schock, das, threescore: — weise, by three scores. (d)on, already; in time. don, fine, fair; beautiful. idonen, to spare, to save. Schönheit, die, beauty, fairness. Schoof, ber, lap. icheinen, ichien, geschienen, to shine. | Schrant, ber, press, cupboard.

Schreck, ber, terrour. fcrediid, terrible, -ly. fdreiben, fdrieb, gefdrieben, to schreien, schrie, geschrieen, to cry, to scream. schreiten, schritt, geschritten, to stride, to step; to walk. Schrift, bie, writing. Schriftsteller, ber, writer, author. Schritt, ber, stride, step. ichroff, steep, —ly. Schulb, bie, guilt, debt. schulbig, guilty; due. Schulbner, ber, debtor. Schule, bie, school. Shuler, ber, scholar, pupil. Schurfe, ber, rogue, rascal. ſďutteľn, to shake. ichugen, to shelter, to defend, to protect. íchwach, weak, feeble, ---ly. Schwäche, bie, weakness; foible. Schwalbe, die, swallow. Schwan, ber, swan. fdmarz, black, dark. schweigen, schwieg, geschwiegen, to be silent, to observe silence. Schwein, bas, swine. fomer, heavy, hard, difficult. idimerlia, hardly, with difficulty. Schwester, bie, sister. Schwert, bas, sword. fchwierig, hard, difficult, —ly. fdwimmen, fdwamm, gefdwom= men, to swim. fdwirren, to make a shrill trembling noise, e.g. of the flight of a bird; to whirr. Sclave, ber, slave. sechezehn, sixteen. See, bie, sea. -, ber, lake. Seele, die, soul. Segel, bas, sail. fegeln, to sail. fegnen, to bless. fehen, fah, gefehen, to soe. sehnen sich, to long for. fehr, very; very much. seicht, not deep, shallow.

feiben, silken, made of silk. Seil, bas, cord, rope. fein, his. sein, or senn, to be. seinesaleichen, people like himfeit, since. feitbem, since. felbst, self; even. felten, rare, —ly ; seldom. seltsam, singular, strange. senden, sandte, gesandt, to send. segen, to set; to seat, to put; über etwas seken, to leap. senn, see sein. íid), oneself. Sichel, bie, sickle. ficter, sure, safe, —ly. ficherlich, surely, certainly. fichern, to secure ; to make sure of. Sie, you; fie, they; fie, she. Sieb, bas, sieve, cribble. Sieg, ber, victory. fiegen, to conquer. Sieger, ber, conqueror; - fein, to be victorious. Silber, bas, silver. filbern, silver, made of silver. fingen, fang, gefungen, to sing. finten, fant, gefunten, to sink. Sitte, die, custom, (pl.) manners. Sig, ber, seat. figen, faß, gefessen, to sit. so, so, thus; if, so as; so viel als, as much as : — bag, so that, in a manner as; fo! indeed! fobalb, as soon (as). Socte, bie, sock. fogleich, immediately. Sohn, der, son. fold=er, =e, =es, such, such a one. Solbat, ber, soldier. sollen, to be obliged, ought. Sommer, ber, summer. sondern, but. Sonne, bie, sun. Sonntag, ber, Sunday. fonft, else, otherwise, formerly. Corge, die, care. forgfältig, careful, diligent, carefully.

femal or femali - als, as well fparen, to spare, to save. fpåt, late. Spartacus, Spartacus. spaziren or spazieren, to walk leisurely, to take a walk. specific, specific. Spect, bas, lard, bacon. Speife, bie, food, nourishment. speisen, to eat, to dime, to sup, to give food. Spiegel, ber, mirror, looking= glass. spielen, to play. Epelt, bas, coarse ground wheat. Spieß, ber, spear. fpinnen, fpann, aefponnen, to spin: Berrath -, to meditate treachery. spigig, pointed. spotten, to mock. Sprache, bie, speech, language. fprechen, fprach, gesprochen, to speak. fpringen, fprang, gesprungen, to spring; to jump; to crack. Spruch, ber, saying. Sprung, ber, spring, leap, jump. Staat, ber, state, pomp. Stadt, bie, town, city. Stabl, ber, steel. Ctamm, ber, stem, trunk (of a Stand, ber, stand; state, station, position. ftart, strong, strongly. Starte, bie, strength, force. ftarr, rigid, stiff; - anseben, to stare at. Statt, die, place, stead: - bes Kürsten, instead of the prince. ftechen, to pierce, to stick ; im See -, to put to sea. ftecten, to stick ; to be fixed. ftehen, ftanb, geftanben, to stand. ftehlen, ftabl, geftohlen, to steal. fleil, steep. Ctein, ber, stone, rock. Etille, bie, place, spot, passage. ftellen, to put, to place; to assume

a certain appearance, to pretend. fterben, **ftar**b, geftorben, to die. Stern, der, star. Sternkunde, die, astronomy. stets, always. Stiefel, ber, boot. ftill, still, calm, -ly. Stille, bie, stillness, quietness. Stimme, bie, voice. Stirn, bie, forehead, front. Stock, ber, stock, stem, stick, ftoly, proud, haughty, -ly. Stord, der, stork. storen, to disturb. ftopen, fließ, geftopen, to thrust, to push, to knock. strafen, to punish. ftraff, stretched, tight, —ly. strablen, to radiate. Straße, bie, street. streicheln, to stroke. fireuen, to strew. Stroh, bas, straw. Strom, ber, stream. Strumpf, ber, stocking. Strumpfband, das, garter. Stud, bas, piece; in allen Studen, in all things, in every respect. Student, ber, student. studiren, to study. Stubl, ber, chair. ftumm, dumb**. mute.** ftumpf, blunt, —ly. Stunde, bie, hour ; lesson. Sturm, ber, starm, tempest. ftürmisch, stormy. ftúrzen, to fall, to rush. uchen, to seek for, to endeavour. ündigen, to sin. Ιάβ ([úβlid)), sweet (sweetish). Sylbe, die, syllable.

Aabel, ber, blame, consure.
tabeln, to blame, to consure.
tabelnswerth, blameable.
Aag, ber, day; bei Aage, in the
day-time; heut zu Aage, or
heutiges Aages, now-a-days, at

these days. Nagelohner, ber, day-labourer. taglid, daily. tanbein, to dawdle, to trifle, to play. Nante, bie, aunt. Tanne, bie, Scotch fir. tenzen, to dance. tapfer, brave, valiant, ---ly. Tapferteit, die, bravery, valour. Zajdje, bie, pocket. Zau, bas, rope. taub, deaf. Taube, die, dove, pigeon. Naucher, ber, diver. taufen, to baptize. tauschen, to deceive. taufenb, thousand; taufenb Mal, a thousand times. Zeig, ber, dough. Testament, bas, testament. That, bas, valley, dale. That, bie, deed, action. thatig, active, -ly. thauen, to thaw; to dew. Thee, ber, tea. Theil, ber, part, portion. theilhaft, theilhaftig, partaking, sharing, participant; - machen, to impart, to communicate; merben, to share, to participate. Thier, bas, animal, beast. Ahor, das, gate. Thor, ber, fool. Thorheit, die, folly. thố richt, foolish, silly, --ly. Abron, der, throne. thun, that, gethan, to do, to make; - als ob, to pretend, to simulate. Thur, bie, door. Thurm, der, tower. tief, deep, low. Tifch, ber, table, board. Nochter, bie, daughter. Tob, ber, death. tobt, dead. tödten, to kill. tonen, to sound, to resound. trage, lazy.

present; biefer Tage, some of | tragen, trug, getragen, to bear. Trank, ber, drink, potion. Trappift, monk of La Trappe. trauen, to trust, to put faith in. treffen, traf, getroffen, to bit; fich -, to happen. treiben, trieb, getrieben, to drive, to lead. trennen, to separate. treu, true, faithful, -ly. trinten, trant, getrunten, to drink. trocten, dry. Troja, bas, Troy. Arost, ber, comfort. troften, to comfort, to console. Tros, ber, haughtiness, pride; in spite of. trůbe, troubled, not clear; sad. Truppen, bie, troops. Zud, bas, cloth; handkerchief. tuchen, cloth (as adj.); made of cloth. Tugend, bie, virtue. tugenbhaft, virtuous. —ly. Türke, der, Turk. Anroler, Tyrolese.

Uebel, bas, evil. uben, to exercise, to practise. úber, over, above, on, about, at. überall, all over, every where. űberaus, exceedingly. überbieß, besides, moreover. überbrüßig, tired of. überein'=stimmen, to accord, to agree. Ueberfluß, ber, superfluity, abundance. überflüßig, superfluous, —ly. übergeben, übergab, übergeben, to deliver up, to surrender. Ueberlegung, bie, consideration. überreben, to persuade. übersehen, sah, sehen, to overlook ; übergesehen, (trans.), looked over (= examined). übertragen, to transfer, to convey. überzeugen, to convince; — fich, to come to the conviction. úbrig, remaining.

Ufer, bas, shore. Uhr, bie, clock. watch. um, around, about: for, in order Umagna, ber, intercourse. umgemandelt, entirely changed. um'shauen, to cut down. Umftant, ber, circumstance. ummanbeln, to change entirely. umwerfen, swarf, sgeworfen, to upset; to throw round (one); to put on, e.g. a cloak, Mantel. unangenebm, unpleasant, agreeable, -ly. unbekannt, unknown. unb, and. unbantbar, unthankful, ungrateful, ---ly. Unbantbarfeit, bie, ingratitude. uneigennüßig, disinterested, unselfish, —ly. unentschieben, undecided, -ly. unerfahren, inexperienced, -ly. unerwartet, unexpected, -ly. ungeachtet, notwithstanding. ungefähr, about, thereabouts. Ungebeuer, bas, monster. ungehorsam, disobedient, -ly. ungehörig, improper, —ly. ungemein, uncommon, -ly. ungern, unwilling, -ly. ungluck, bas, bad luck, misfortune. unglåælich, unlucky. ungludlicherweise, unluckily. ungunftig, unfavourable, —ly. Unfraut, bas, weed. unmöglich, impossible, -ly. unnothig, unnecessary, -ly. unnüğ, useless, —ly. unrecht, not right, wrong, -ly. Unrecht, bas, wrong. unreif, unripe. unrichtig, wrong, erroneous, -ly. uns, us (dat. and acc. pl. from ich). unschulbig, innocent, -ly. unfer, our, ours. unfinnig, insane, —ly. unsterblich, immortal, —ly. Unfterblichteit, bie, immortality. unten, below.

unter, below, underneath, among. unterbeffen, meantime. unterfangen fich, fing, fangen, to undertake, to dare. unterhalb, below. unterhalten, bielt, balten, to support; to entertain. unterhaltend, entertaining. unterrichten, to instruct, to inform. unterliegen, lag, legen, to lie under, to succumb, to be subdued. unternehmen, nahm, nommen, to undertake. Unternehmen, bas, undertaking. unterrichtenb, instructive. unterwinden fich, to venture, to unthâtia, inactive, -ly. untrostlich, inconsolable, -ly. unvermeiblich, inevitable, -ly Unwahrheit, bie, untruth, falsehood. unwahrscheinlich, unlikely. unweit, not far from. Unwirksamteit, bie, inefficacy. unwohl, unwell, indisposed. Urfunde, bie, document, record. Urfache, bie, cause, reason. urtheilen, to judge.

Bater, der, father. vaterios, fatherless. verachten, to despi**se.** Berachtung, bie, contempt. veraltet, grown old, obsolete. verbieten, verbot, verboten, to forbid. Berbindung, bic, connexion, association. Berbot, das, prohibition. Berbrechen, bas, crime. verbreiten, to spread. verbrennen, verbrannte, ver= brannt, to burn. verbåditig, suspected. Verbeck, das, deck. verderben, verbarb, verdorben, to spoil, to destroy, to ruin. Berberbtheit, bie, corruption, corruptness.

perbienen, to deserve, to earn, to merit. Berbienst, ber, gain, earnings. Berbienft, bas, merit. perbienfluoll, meritorious. Berbruß, ber, displeasure. pereiteln, to frustrate. verfehlen, to miss. perfertigen, to make, to manufacture. perfinftern, to eclipse. perfolgen, to pursue. pergangen, see lest. vergeben, verging, vergangen, to pass away, to disappear. vergelten, vergalt, vergolten, to reward for, to acknowledge a kindness, to recompense. peraeffen, peraak, peraeffen, to forget. pergeuben, to waste. Bergleich, ber, comparison. Vergnügen, bas, pleasure. perheblen, to conceal. perhindern, to hinder, to prevent. vertaufen, to sell. perflagen, to accuse, to summon before a judge or court. verlangen, see forbern. verlaffen, verließ, verlaffen, to leave, to abandon. perlieren, perlor, perloren, to lose. Berlief, bas, dungeon (of a stronghold). Berluft, ber, loss. verluftig, losing; sid - maden, to forfeit. vermeffen fich, to dare, to presume, to make bold. vermittelft, by means of. vermoge, by virtue of (394). permogen, to be able to do, to have power. Bermogen, bas, property. vernehmen, vernahm, vernommen, to hear, to learn, to be informed of. Bernunft, die, reason. vernunftig, reasonable, -ly. perrammeln, to ram up. Berrath, ber, treason, treachery.

verrenten, to dislocate. verrichten, to do, to achieve. Berfammlung, bie, assembly. verschieben, different. verschmähen, to disdain, to despise. verschreiben, veridrieb. idrieben, to prescribe. verschwinben, verschwand, verfdmunben, to disappear, to vanish. verseben, versah, verseben, to see wrong, to overlook; fid v. (with gen.) to expect. versidern, to assure, to affirm. verschließen, verschloß, verschloffen, to shut, to lock up. versprechen, versprach, versprochen, to promise. Beriprecken, das, promise. vertreten, vertrat, vertreten, to represent (e.g. a party, hence = to favour). verstånbig, judicious, —ly. verftehen, to understand; fich -(of a thing), to be understood. verstellen, to dissemble, to pretend. perfterben, perftarb, perftorben, to die, to decease. versuchen, to try, to attempt. vertheibigen, to defend. Bertheibigung, bie, defence, apovertrauen, to trust, to confide in. verurtheilen, to condemn. permanot, related to. Bermanbte, ber, relative. permeilen, to abide, to tarry, to dwell upon, to fix the mind upon. permetten, to wither, to fade. Bermerfung, bie, rejection, refusal. vermideln, to entangle, to involve. Bermirrung, bie, confusion. verwunden, to wound. verzagen, to despair. Berzeichniß, bas, specification. list. verzeihen, verzieh, verziehen, to pardon. Bergug, ber, delay. d 5

Bieb, bas, cattle. vielmehr, rather. viel, much ; viele, many ; um vieles, by much, or by a great deal. piclicidat, perhaps. vier, four. pieredia, quadrangular. vierte, fourth. vierzebn, fourteenth. Bogel, ber, bird. Bolt, bas, folk, people. poll full. pollenben, to fulfil, to accomplish, to perpetrate (of a crime). pollig, full, entire, entirely. polltommen, perfect, -ly. Bollmond, ber, full moon. vollståndig, complete. pon, of, from. per, before: - ber Thur, at the door. poraus'=feben, =fab, =gefeben, see porber. voraus'=fegen, to presuppose. vorbei'=geben, =ging, =gegangen, to pass by. porcilia, over-hasty. Borfall, ber, accident, event, occurrence. vorher'ssehen, sfah, saesehen, to foresee. por'sriden, to advance. Borfchlag, ber, proposal. Borfehung, bie, providence. vor'=fegen (fich), to determine, to resolve upon. Borficht, bie, providence. por'sftellen, to present, to introduce. Bortheil, ber, advantage vortrefflich, excellent, Lly. poruber, past, over. Bormand, ber, pretext. porzeigen, to show, to present. Borgug, ber, advantage.

Maare, bie, ware, merchandize. wachen, to wake; to guard. wachen, wuche, gewachsen, to wax, to grow.

Baffen, die, weapons, arms. Wagen, ber, waggon, carriage. Bagnis (Bageftuct), bas, hazard. bold or daring act. wählen, to choose, to elect. mahr, true. måbrenb, whilst, during. Wahrheit, bie, truth. mahrlid, verily, truly. mahr'=nehmen, =nahm, =genom= men, to perceive. mabricheinlich, probable. - ly. Walbaber, forest. Ball, ber, rampart. manbeln to wander. manbern, to wander. manfen, to waver, to shake. mann, when. marm, warm. marten, to wait (for): to attend to. marum, why. mas, what. Waster, bas, water. Wedsel, ber, change; bill of exchange. meder — noch, neither—nor. Beg, ber, way, path. megen, on account of, because of. mehen, to blow. Wehen, bas, the blowing (of the wind). weich, soft, -ly. weichen, wich, gewichen, to give way, to yield, to go hence. meiben, to pasture, to feed, to graze. weigern sich, to refuse, to be unwilling. Weihnachten, Christmas. weil, because. Beile, bie, the while: mittler= meile, meanwhile. Wein, der, wine. meinen, to weep. Beinstock, ber, vine. weise, wise, sage. Weise, die, mode; auf solche —, in such a manner. Beisheit, bie, wisdom. meiß, white.

weit, wide, far ; bei weitem, by far.

weiter, further; ohne weiteres, without any further ceremony. melder, who, which. welch ein (eine)! what a (e.g. fool)! melten, to wither. Welt, bie, world; - forper, heavenly body. wenben, wandte, gewandt, to turn : fich - an, to address oneself to. menia, little, few; ein -, a little. weniger, less. menn, when, if: - schon, - aleich, -auch, even, if, although (415). mer, who, whoever. merben, murbe (or marb), ae= morben, to become. werfen, warf, geworfen, to throw. Wert, bas, work. Wertzeug, bas, instrument. mefentlich, essential, -ly. meghalb, why, for what reason. Befte, bie, waistcoat. mefilid, western, westerly. Wetter, bas, weather. wichtig, important. wiber, against, contrary. wiberfprechen, =[prach, =[prochen, to contradict. wiberfteben, wiberftanb, wiber= ftanben, to withstand, to resist. wibrig, contrary, opposed to. wie, how, as; wie groß (flein, u.(.w.) aud, however great, &c. mieder, again, anew. wieber-febren, to return. wieberum, again, afresh. Wiese, bie, meadow. wievielste, of what number (as counted from the beginning). wild, wild, savage. Wild, bas, game. Wille, ber, will; Willens fein, to intend, to purpose; to be minded. Wind, ber, wind. winseln, to moan. Winter, ber, winter. wir, we; nom. pl. of id). wirflich, real, true, -ly.

wirtsam, efficient, -ly.

Wirthshaus, bas, inn. tavern. miffen, mußte, gemußt, to know. mo, where; - nur, wherever. Boche, bie, week. mofern, in case that, if. moher, whence, from what place. mohin, whither. mobi, moi, well. Wohlfahrt, die, welfare, prosperity. Boblfein, bas, prosperity, health. Wohlstand, ber, prosperity. Mobility bie, benefaction, benefit, favour. mohnen, to dwell. Wolf, der, wolf. Bolte, bie, cloud. mollen, woollen; worsted (as adj.). mollen, to be willing, to wish; [et= mas | haben -, to command [athg]. Wort, bas, word. Wunde, die, wound. Wunder, bas, wonder. Bunich, ber, wish. wunschen, to wish. wunschenswerth, desirable. Burbe, bie, dignity. wurbig, worthy, -ly. Burf, der, cast, throw. Buth, bie, wrath. zagen, to tremble, to be disheartened.

agen, to tremble, to be disheartened.
3ahm, tame, tractable.
3ahmidh, quarrelsome.
3art, 3artlich, tender, —ly.
3eichen, bas, sign, token.
3eichen, to draw; to sign, to mark.
3eigen, to show.
3eit, bie, time, season.
3eitraum, ber, space of time.
3eitrug, bie, newspaper.
3eith, bas, tent.
3ertgliebern, to dismember.
3ertgliebern, 3erriß, 3errißen, to tear.
3eugniß, bas, testimony, testimonial.
3iehen, 3og, gezogen, to draw; to
proceed.
3iel, bas, aim, mark.

ziemen fich, to suit, to be becoming. | zuruck'-ziehen, -zog, -gezogen, to ziemlich, tolerable, —ly. Bimmer, bas, room. Bimmermann, ber, carpenter. Birtel, ber, circle. aittern, to tremble. Born, ber, wrath, anger. au, to; at; by, in, on. zu'ebringen, ebrachte, egebracht, to pass time. zu, too (e.g. zu lang, too long). Bucter, ber, sugar. Bufall, ber, chance; accident. Bufluchtsort, ber, asylum, shelter. aufolge, in consequence of (394). aufrieben, contented, -ly. ¿u'=frieren, to freeze up. augleich, at the same time. Bugvogel, ber, migratory bird. Butunit, die, futurity, future : in —, in future. zulest, at last; for the last time. au'=machen, to shut. zu'=nehmen, =nahm, =genommen, to increase, to wax (of the moon). | smolf, twelve.

withdraw, to retreat. zurück'=kehren, to return, to retire. aufammen, together. ju'=fammen=zichen, =zog, =gezogen, to draw together. Zuschauer, ber, spectator. Bustand, der, condition, state. zu'stragen, strug, sgetragen, to come to pass. aunor, before, formerly, previously. aumider, contrary to, to be offensive to; — sein, to be against. mei, two. 3meifel, ber, doubt. zweiselhaft, doubtful, -ly. zweifeln, to doubt. Breig, ber, branch, twig, bough. ameimal, or amei Mal, twice. ameit=er, =e, =es, second. awingen, to force, to coerce, to compel. zwischen, between.

ENGLISH-GERMAN INDEX.

Nouns that have gen. =es (dat. =e), form the plural either in =e or ser (see Table, page 25); it is not sufficient, therefore, as, for instance, in Latin, to give the gen. and sing. only, without pointing out the plural at the same time, in order to show the form of declension a noun belongs to; both, therefore, the gen. sing. as well as the plur. have been added after every noun in this part of the Index. Thus, Buch (=es; pl. =er, mod.), means that the gen. is Buches, and that the plur., besides appending ser, is modified (i.e. Bucher). This arrangement was less necessary in the preceding German-English part, since, in the German portion of the Exercises, the nouns already appear in the form which they assume in their respective cases. Feminines being indeclinable in sing., the plur. only has been added; which latter is either the weak or strong form (vid. p. 26, 27); e.g. Nacht (pl. =e, mod.), i.e. Rachte; or Frau (pl. =en) i.e. Frauen.—(=6; pl. —) means that the gen. has =6 and the plural is like the singular; e.g. Pubel. If modified, (pl. — mod.) is added ; e.g. Mantel (pl. Mantel). If the plur. is not or little in use, it has not been given at all. Compound nouns are declined after the last component factor; e.g. Lands mann after Mann. In nouns of the weak form, as Graf, (sen)—or in case of a preceding =e, (=n)—has been added, the plur. coinciding with the inflexion en of the oblique cases of the singular. In those few cases where an additional & is appended to the weak form :en (e.g. Berg, gen. Bergens), this has been pointed out thus: (=en[8]).

A, ein, eine, ein.
Able, fåhig; to be able, können, konnte, gekonnt.
About, um.
Above, oben, über; oberhalb.
Absence, Abugesenheit, bie.
To Abstain from, enthalten sich (with gen.).
Abundance, tlebersluß, ber (sed).
Abundant, \ reichtich, über=
Abundantly, \ flussig.

Academy, Atabemie, bie (pl. =n).
To Accept, an'-nehmen (nahm, genommen).
Accident, Zufall, ber (=e&; pl. =e, mod.).
To Accomplish, erfallen.
Accomplished, gebilbet.
According to, zufolge; laut; ge= måß (394).
According as, nachdem.
Account, Rechnung, bie (pl. =en).

On Account of, wearn, balben or halber (394).

To Accustom, gewöhnen.

Accustomed, gowohnt or gewöhnt (with gen. of object).

To Acknowledge, ertennen, ertannte, ertannt.

To Acquaint with, see to Inform. Acquainted with, funbia (with gen. of object).

To Acquiesce, bescheiben (beschieb, beschieben) fich.

To Acquire, erwerben, erwarb, er= morben.

To Act, handeln, thun.

Action, That, Handlung, bie (pl. sen).—To bring an a. against any body, jemanben verklagen, or por Gericht forbern; daring a., Bageftuct, bas.

Active. thåtig, belebt. Actively,

scharf, fein. Acutely

To Address, an'ereben (rebete, ge= rebet).

To Admire, bewundern.

To Advance, por'sruden (rudte, aerūct).

Advantage, Bortheil, ber (=8; pl.

Adventure, Abentheuer, bas (=es; pl. ≤e).

Advice, Rath, ber (=es; pl. not used, instead of which, Rath= fallåge).

Advisable, rathfam. To Advise, rathen, rieth, gerathen.

Affectionate, zártlid).

To Afflict, betrüben.

Afflicting, betrübenb; betrübt. Afraid, bange, beforgt; to be a.,

fürchten. Afresh, von Reuem ; aufe Reue.

African, afritanisch. After (conj. of time), nachbem

(410) After (prep.), nad (dat.).

Against, gegen, wiber, zuwiber .-

a. the wall (hanging), an ber

Mauer; an die Mauer (to hang. trans.).

Age, Alter, bas, or Beitalter (=8 : pl. not in use).

Aged, old, alt, beiabrt.

Agony, großer Schmerz, ber (=6; pl. =en

Agreeable, angenehm, anmuthig. Aim, Biel, bas (=es; pl. =e); 206=

sicht, die (pl. sen) ; 3weck, ber (**≈e8;** pl. ≈e).

Air, Luft, die (pl. =e, mod.). All, alles; alle, pl.

To Allow, erlauben; gestatten; to be Allowed, burfen.

To Ally, verbinden, verband, verbunden; an'=schließen, schloß, geschlossen (sich).

Almond, Manbel, bie (pl. =n). Almost, faft, beinabe.

Alone, allein.

Along, långe, entlang.

Also, audy bazu. Although, obgleich, obicon, obwol, wiewol, wenn - fcon, wenn -

gleich, wenn — auch. Always, immer.

America, America, bas (=8). American, Ameritaner, ber (=6).

To Amuse, beluftigen. And, unb.

Angel, Engel, ber (=e8). Anger, Berbruß (=e8); 3orn, ber (=e8); Buth, bie. Animal, Thier, bas (=e8; pl. =e).

— food, Fleisch, bas (=es).

To Announce, melben. Another, ein anberer (= a different one), noch einer (lit. still one = one more); one another,

einanber. To Answer, antworten, beantworten.

Answer, Antwort, bie (pl. =en). Any, irgend einer; any body, irgenb femanb; any thing, etwas;

irgend etwas (or was). To be athg but, nichts weniger fein, als.

To Appear, icheinen, ichien, geschienen; erscheinen, u.s.m. To Apply, anwenden; to a. oneself, befleißigen fich; to a. to any body, sich wenden an. To Approach, nahern sich (with dat.). To Arise or rise, auf'sgehen (ging, gegangen); auf'=fteben (ftanb, geftanben). Arithmetician, Rechner, ber (=8; pl. --). Arm, Arm, ber (=e6; pl. =e). Arms, Baffen, bie (pl.). Army, Armee, bie (pl. =n); Beer, das (=es; pl. =e). Arrangement, Ginrichtung, (pl. =en). Arrogant, see Assuming. Arrival, Ankunft, bie. To Arrive, an'=tommen, tam, ge= tommen. Arrow, Pfeil ber (=es; pl. =e). Art, Runft, bie (pl. =e, mod.). Artillery, Geschüt, bas (ses; pl. =e). Artist, Runftler, ber (=6; pl. ---). As, ba, als; inbem (p. 128, n. +); as if, als ob; als wenn (247); as great as, fo groß wie; as often as, fo oft als; fo oft (445). Asiatic, asiatist. Ashamed, beichamt; to be a., icamen (fich). To Ask, fragen. - for, verlangen, forbern. Asleep (to be), see to Sleep. Ass, Efel, ber (=6). Assembly, Berfammlung, bie (pl. To Assert, behaupten; es haben wollen, e. g. er will - baben, with past partic, inserted, To Assist, bei'sstehen (stand, ges stanben). To Associate with, fich gefellen gu; Umgang haben mit. Association, Berbindung (pl. an); Gesellschaft, die (pl. =en). To Assume, an'snehmen (nahm,

genommen).

Assuming, anmakenb, eingebilbet. To Assure, verfichern. Astonishment, Erstaunen, bas (=B). Astronomy, Sternkunde, die. Asylum, Zufluchtsort, der (≈6). At, zu, in, bei, an, auf, zufolge; at length, enblich. Attack, Ungriff, ber (=es; pl. =e). To Attempt, persucien, suchen. To Attend, auf'=warten; see also to Wait. Attention, Aufmerksamkeit, bie : to pay a. to, achten; beachten. Attentively, aufmerksam. Attorney, Unwalt, der (=6; pl. =e). Attractive, reizenb. Aunt, Zante, bie (pl. =n). Author, Autor, Schriftsteller, ber (=8; pl. —). Authority, Unfeben, bas (=8). Autumn, Berbft, der (=es; pl. =e). To Avail, nugen. Avaricious, geizig. To Avoid, meiben (mieb, gemieben). Awake (to be), machen. Aware, gewahr. Ax, Beil, bas (=es; pl. =e).

Bacon, Speck, bas (=e8). Bad, ichlecht. Bah! pfui! Bailiff, Landvogt, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). To Bake, bacten, but or bactte, gebacten. Bald, fabl; fablforfia. Ball, Ball, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). To Baptize, taufen. Bar (to go to the), Movocat or Rechtsgelehrter [jurisperitus] werben. Barbarous, barbariid. To Barricade, see to Ram up. Bath, Bab, bas (=es; pl.=er, mod.); to take a b., ins Bad geben. To Bathe, baben fich. Battle, Schlacht, bie (pl. =en); bat-

tle-field. Schlacht-Kelb, bas.

To Be, sein or senn; what is he going to be (speaking of a profession)! was will er werden [litr. become] ! To Bear, tragen, trug, getragen; see also to Endure. To Beat, schlagen, schlug, gefclagen. Beautifully, fchon, hubich. Because, weil. To Become (to grow), merben, wurde, geworden: to become of, merben aus. Becoming, schictlich; it is b., es fdict fich, es ift paffenb. Bed, Bett, bas (ses; pl. sen). Beechen, of beech-wood, buchen. Beer, Bier, bas (=es). Before, ehe, bepor; por. To Bog, bitten, bat, gebeten. Beggar, Bettler, ber (=6; pl. -). To Begin, beginnen, begann, be= gonnen; an'sfangen, fing, ges angen. To Behave, betragen fich; begegnen. Behind, hinten, binter. Belief, see Faith. To Believe, glauben; - benten, bachte, gebacht (= think). Beloved, geliebt, beliebt. Below, unten, unter, unterhalb; from b., von unten. Besides, außer, außerbem, überbieß Best, Befte, bas; vid, adj., Less. Better, beffer. Between, zwischen. Beyond, über, jenseit (the latter with gen.). To Bid, beißen, bieß, gebeißen. Big, see Great. Bill. Bedfel, ber (=6). To Bind, binben, band, gebunben. Bird, Bogel, ber (=8; pl. -, mod.). Birthday, Geburtetag, ber (=es; pl. ≉). To Bite, beißen, biß, gebiffen. Bitter, bitter.

Black, fdmarz. To Blame, tabeln. Blamed, getabelt. To Blaze, lobern. To Bleed, tr., jur Aber laffen. ., intr., bluten. Blemish, Flect, ber (ses; pl. se). To Bless, fegnen. Blind, blinb. To Blossom, blüben. Blow, Schlag, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). To Blow, mehen; the blowing of the wind, bas Weben bes Winbes. Blunt, ftumpf, ungeschliffen. To Blush, errothen. Boar, Eber, ber (=8; pl. —). Board, Brett, bas (ses; pl. ser). To Boast, ruhmen (fich). Boat, Boot, bas (ses; pl. Bote or Boote). Boatman, Schiffer, ber (=8; pl. -). Body, Korper, ber (se; pl. -). }kāhn. Bold, Boldly, Boldness, Rühnheit, bie. Book, Bud, bas (res; pl .=er, mod.). Bookshop, Buchhandlung, bie (pl. ≠en). Boot, Stiefel, ber (=6; pl. -). Both, beibe (adj.); fo wohl - als (= as well as). Bottle, Flasche, bie (pl. sen). Bough, Zweig, ber (=es; pl. =e). Boy, Knabe, ber (=n; pl. =n). Brave. stapfer. Bravely, Bravery, Bravour, Tapferteit, die. Breach, Bruch, ber (=es; pl. st, mod.) Bread, Brob, bas (ses). To Break, bredjen, brady gebrochen: the ice is broken, bie Gisbecte ift geborften. Breakfast, Frühftuck, bas (=es; pl. ≠). Brightly, bell, glanzenb. To Bring, bringen, brachte, gebracht.

Broad, breit.

Brother, Bruber, ber (=6; pl. | mod.). Brow, Stirn, bie (pl. sen). To Build, bauen. Building, Gebaube, bas (=es; pl. —); Bau, ber (=e8). Bullock, Stier, ber (=e6; pl. =e). Bundle, Bunbel, bas (=8; pl. --). To Burst, berften, barft, geborften. To Bury, begraben, begrub, be= graben. Business, Geschäft, bas (=es; pl. ≠e). Busy, beschäftigt. But, aber, allein, fonbern (170); if but, wenn nur, wenn boch. To Buy, taufen. By, burd, vermittelft, nach, neben, bei; by it, dabei. vor'=sprechen. getonnt; I could not but -

Call, rufen, rief, gerufen; nennen; schelten: to call upon, besuchen, Can (to be able), tonnen, tonnte, ích konnte nicht umhin zu. Capable, fanig (with gen. of object). Captain, Capitain (=es; pl. =e); Hauptmann, ber. Carcass, Mas, bas (=es; pl. =er, mod.). Care, Gorge, bie (pl. =n); to take care of (= to nurse), pflegen, pflegte, gepflegt. Carefully, forgfaltig. Carpenter, Bimmermann, ber. Carriage, Bagen, ber (=6; pl. -). To Carry, tragen, trug, getragen. Case, Fall, ber (=8; pl. =e, mod.); in c., im Fall, falls (410). Castle, Schloß, das (=es; pl. =er, mod.). Cat, Rage, bie (pl. =n). To Catch, fangen, fing, gefangen. Catch, Fang, der (=e8). Cautious, borsichtig, behutsam. Cautiously

Cave, Soble, bie (pl. =n).

Celebrated, berühmt. To Censure, tabeln. Certain, gewiß; certain of, gewiß (with gen.). Certainly, gewiß, ficherlich. Chair, Stuhl, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). Chamber, Rammer, bie (pl. =n); little ch., Rammerlein or Ram= merchen, bas (=6; pl. —). Chance, Zufall, ber (=e8). To Change, wechseln, andern ; to c. entirely, ummandeln. Chapel, Rapelle, die (pl. =n). Charles, Rarl (=8). To Chase, jagen. Chase, Jago, die (pl. sen): to go on the ch., auf die Jago geben. Chattering, geschwäßig. Cheerful, freudig. Child, Kind, bas (=es; pl. =er). Childhood, Rinbheit, bie. Childish, kindisch. To Choose, wahlen (of election. choosing); mollen (to wish, to be willing); not to ch., nicht wollen. Christmas, Weinacht, bie. Church, Kirche, bie (pl. =n). Circle, Rreis (=es ; pl. =e); Birtel, ber. Circumstance, Umftand, ber (=e8; pl. =e, mod.). Citizen, Bürger, der (=8; pl. —). City, see Town. Civil, anftanbig; höflich; burgers Clap of thunder, Donnerschlag, ber (vid. Schlaa). To Clean, reinigen, puten. Clear, Elar, rein. Clearly, Clever, Cleverly, geschickt. Climate, Klima, bas (=8). Cloak, Mantel, ber (=8; pl. --, mod.). To Close, see Shut. Close, geschlossen, bicht, knapp; c. to, nabe an or bei, neben.

Cloth, Tuch, bas (=ts); of or made of c., tuchen. Clothes-press, Schrant, ber (=8; pl. ≈, mod.). Cloud, Bolte, bie (pl. =n). Cloudy, moltia, trube. Clumsy, plump. Chumsily. Coach, Rutiche, bie (pl. =n). Coachman, Rutscher, der (3). Coast, Rufte, bie (pl. =n). Coat, Rock, ber (=8 ; pl. =e, mod.). To Coerce, see to Ferce. Coldly, latt. Cold, s. Ralte, bie. Colour, Farbe, bie (pl. =n). Colar, Kragen, ber (=6). To Collect, see to Gather. Comb, Ramm, ber (≉6; pl. ≈, mod.). To Combat, fampfen; see also to To Come, tommen, tam, getom= men; to come down, herunter, berab, tommen. Coming (= future), funftig. Comet, Romet, ber (=n; pl. =n). To Comfort, troften; erquicten. Comfortable, bequem. To Command, befehlen, befahl, befohlen; gebieten, gebot, ge= boten, befehligen (of an army). Command, Befehl, ber (ses; pl. =e). Commission, Auftrag, ber (=e6; pl. ≈, med.). To Commit, übergeben; verhaften; begeben. Companion, Gefahrte, ber (=n). – in arms, Kampf=Ge= noß, ber [liter. Combat-mate]. Company, Gefellichaft, bie (pl. =n); Umgang, ber. To Compare, vergleichen. Comparison, Bergleich, ber (ses; pl. ≤e). Compassion, see Pity. Compatriot, Landsmann, der (like To Compel, nothigen; zwingen.

To Complain, beklagen (fich) ; kla= aen über. Complete, vollstånbig. To Complete, vollenden. Completely, vollig, ganglich. To Complicate, verwideln. Compliment, Empfehlung, die (pl. =n). To Conceal, verbeblen. To Concentrate, zusammen-ziehen, zog, gezogen. Concorn, Angelegenheit, bie (plan). Condemn, verurtheilen. To Conduct, führen. To Confess, betennen; gefteben : ein'sgestehen(gestanbigestanben). Confession, Gestanbnis, Betennts nis, bas (=es; pl. =e). To Confide, trauen; vertrauen. Confusion, Bermirrung, bie(pl.en). Connoissour, Renner, Beurtheiler, ber (3; pl. -). To Conquer, siegen. Conscience, Gewissen (=8); Be= wußtsein, das (=6). Conscientions, \ gewiffenhaftig; Conscientiously, most c., guf bas Gewiffenhaftene. Conscious, bewußt; to be c. of, fid bewußt fein (with gen. of object). To Consent, ein'avilligen. Consequence, Folge (pl. =n), Wid= tigkeit, die; to be of e., von Wichtigkeit sein; it is of c., es liegt baran (218); in e. of, zufolge, vermöge. Consequently, folglich. To Consider, betrachten, ansehen, balten. To be Considered, gehalten werben. Considerable, \ bedeutend, ansehn= Considerably, Iich, betrachtlich. Consideration, Betracht, ber (ses); Ueberlegung, bie. Consisting, bestehend. To Console, trosten. Constitution, Berfaffung, bie (pl. =en) ; Gesundheit's Buftand

[state of health].

To Contemplate, see to Consider.

Contempt, Berachtung, bie. Contented, zufrieden, befriediat. To Continue, bauern; mabren; an'=balten, bielt, gehalten. Continual, brace fortwährend. Continually, To Contradict, miberiprechen. Contrary, entgegen, zuwiber. -, the, Gegentheil, bas (=e8). To Convince, überzeugen (fich); überführen: to be convinced. überzeugt fein. Conviction, Ueberzeugung, Ueber= führung, bie (pl. =n); to come to the c., see to Convince. Cook, Roch, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). To Copy, ab'schreiben, fcrieb, ge= schrieben. To Correct, perbeffern ; ftrafen ; berichtigen: to c. oneself, sich beffern. Correct, riditia. Corruptness, Berberbtheit, bie. Cotton, Baumwelle, bie. - (adj.), baumwollen. Couch, Lager, bas. To Counsel, see to Advise. Counsel, Rath, ber (=e6; pl. Rath= fallage). Counsellor, Rath, ber (ses; pl. se, mod.). Count, Graf, ber (=en). Countenance, Gesicht, bas (ses; pl. =er); Blict, ber (=es; pl. =e); Miene, die (pl. =n). Country, Land, Baterland [fatherland], bas. Countryman, Landsmann, ber. Couple, Paar, bas (=es; pl =e). Courage, Muth, ber (=e8). Courageous, muthig. Courageously, muthig, mit Muth. Court, hof, ber (=e8; pl. =, mod.). To Cover, beden, bededen (also with sid). Cow, Ruh, die (pl. se, mod.). Coward, } feig, feige, zaghaft. To Crack, berften, brechen, fprin= gen (e.g. of glass); irr. vid. Germ. Ind.

To Create, icaffen, ichuf, geichaf= fen; see also to Make. Crime, Berbrechen, bas (=8). Cripple, Kruppel, ber (=6). To Criticise, tabeln, betritteln. Crowd, Menge, bie; Gebrange, bas (=es). To Crowd (sails), prangen (n. t.). To Cull, aus'=suchen, pflacen. Cunning, Cunningly, liftia. Cunning, s. Lift, bie. Cup, Zaffe, bie (pl. =n), Becher, ber (=6). To Curdle, gerinnen, gerann, geronnen. Custom, see Use. Daily, taglids. Dam, Damm, ber (=e6; pl. =e, mod.). Danube, Donau, bie. To Dance, tangen. To Dawdle, tanbein. Danger, Gefahr, die (pl. =1).

Dangerous, gefåhrlich. Dangerously To Dare, burfen, burfte, geburft; unterfangen fich [after fangen]. Dark, buntel; finfter. Darkness, Duntelbeit, bie. Date, Datum, bas. Daughter, Tochter, bie (pl. ---. mod.). Day, Tag, ber (=es; pl. =e): this very d., noch heute; every d., taglich; to-day, heute.

Day-labourer, Lagelohner, ber (≠8).

Dead, toot. Deaf, taub.

Deal (a great), viel or fehr viel; by a great d., um ein Bebeu= tenbes, um ein Großes (not by a good d., bei weitem or lange nicht).

To Deal, handeln; to d. with, bebanbeln.

Death, Tod, ber (=08). To Deceive, betrugen, betrog,

betrogen; hintergeben; taufcen. Deceiver, Betrüger, ber (=8). To Decorate, fdmuden. To Decrease, ab'=nehmen (nahm, genommen). Deed, That, bie (pl. sen); indeed, in ber That, mabrlich, ficherlich. Deep, tief. Defence, Bertheibiauna, bie (pl. =en). To Defend, vertheibigen. To Defend oneself from, mehren or entwehren (fich). To Defile, besubein. Deformity, Diggeftalt, bie (pl. sen). To Deliver, übergeben, =aab, =ae= ben ; befreien. - a speech, eine Rebe balten. To Depart, ab'sreisen; to d. from life, verscheiben, verschieb, ver= schieben. Departure, Abreise, bie; to take one's d., abreisen; Abschieb neh= To Depend, ab'=hången (hing, ge= hangen). To Deprive, berauben ; entziehen. To Descend, ab'=ftammen. Do Describe, beschreiben, conftruiren (e.g. a triangle, ein Bierect). To Deserve, perbienen. Desert, Bufte, bie. To Despair, verzagen, verzweifeln. Despatch, Bericht, ber (ses; pl. =e); Depesche, bie (pl. =n). To Despise, verachten. To Destroy, zerftoren; verberben, verbarb, verborben. To Determine, bestimmen; por's nehmen, vor fegen (fich). Detestable, abscheulich. Devoutly, and adding, fromm. To Die, fterben, ftarb, geftorben; — of. — an *or* vor. Difference, Unterschieb, ber (ses). | Dough, Teig, ber (ses; pl. se).

Different, \verschieben, anbers Differently, [aliter]. Difficult, ichwer, ichwierig. Difficulty, Schwierigkeit, bie (pl. zen). To Dig, graben, grub, gegraben. Diligence, Fleiß, ber (=e8). Diligent, fleißig. Diligently, To Dine, ju Mittag effen or fpeifen. Dinner, Mittageeffen, bas (=6). To Direct, richten. Directly, fogleich. Dirty, schmutig. To Disagree, entameien (fich). Disagreeable, unangenehm. To Disappear, verschwinden, veridmand, veridmunben. Discontented, unzufrieben. Discord, Diston, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). To Discover, entbeden. Discretion, Rlugheit, bie; gutes Urtheil, bas (=es; pl. =e). Disinterested, uneigennübig. Disinterestedly. To Dislocate, perrenten. To Dismember, zergliebern. To Dismiss, entlaffen (vid. laffen). Disobedient, } ungehorsam. Disobediently, To Dispense, entbehren; also ent= rathen, with gen. of object [after rathen]. To Dissemble, verftellen (fich). To Dissolve, lofen, auf'=lofen. Distinguishing, Unterfcheiben, bas; compare with Unterschied (=es), Appendix, 48. To Distress, see to Hurt. Ditch. Graben, ber (=6; pl. -, mod.). Divine, göttlið). To Do, thun, that, gethan. Document, Urfunbe, bie (pl. =n). Dog, bund, ber (ses; pl. se). Door, Thur, bie (pl. sen). To Doubt, zweifeln. Doubt, 3meifel, ber (=8; pl. -). Doubtful, zweifelhaft.

Dozen, Dugend, bas (=es; pl. =e). To Draw, ziehen, jog, gezogen; zeichnen: to draw near, see to Approach. Drawing, Beichnung, bie (pl. sen). Dreadful, } furchtbar. Dress, Kleib, bas (=es; pl. =er); Angua, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). To Dress, an'stleiben (fich). To Drink, trinten, trant, ge= trunken. To Drive, fahren, fuhr, gefahren. To Drop, see to Fall. Drunken, betrunten. Dry, troden. Duke, herzog, ber (=e8; pl. =e, mod.) Dull, trube, trauria. Dumb, ftumm. During, währenb. Dutiful, gehorfam. Duty, Pflicht, die (pl. sen). To Dwell, auf'shalten fich, bielt, gehalten; wohnen.

Eagle, Abler, ber (=8; pl. --). Early, fruh. Earth, Groe, bie. Ease, Ruhe, die: to set at ease, berubigen. Eastern, Oftern (pl.) Easy, } leicht. Easily, f To Eat, effen, af, gegeffen. To Eclipse, verbunkeln, verfinstern. Eclipse of the sun, Sonnen-Kinfterniß, bie. Education, Grziehung, bie. Efficient, wirtfam. Eighteenth, achtzehnte. Eighth, achte (ber, bie, bas). Either . . . or, entweder . . . ober. Elder, ålter. Elephant, Elephant, ber (=en; pl. ≠n). Else, fonft; elsewhere, fonftwo. Emperor, Raifer, ber (=8; pl. -). To Encourage, ermuthigen, Muth einflößen.

End, Enbe, bas (=8; pl. =n). To End, enden; beendigen. To Endure, ertragen, ertrug, er= tragen; see also to Suffer. Enemy, Feind, ber (=e8; pl. =e). Engaged, eingelaben, ausgebeten, verfagt. England, England, bas. English, englisch. To Enjoy, genießen, genoß, ge= noffen. Enjoyment, Genuß, ber (:es; pl. =e, mod.). To Enlist, Solbat werben. To Enquire (after), erfundigen (fich), fragen nach. Enraged with, aufgebracht gegen. To Enrich, bereichern. To Entangle, see to Complicate. To Enter, ein' or herein's, hinein's treten. Enterprise, Unternehmen, bas (=8; pl. —); —ung, bie. To Entertain, unterhalten fafter balten 1. Entertaining, unterhaltenb. Entire, see Whole. To Envy, beneiben. Equal, gleich; equal (to perform athg), fahig,—gewachsen (with gen.). Equilateral, gleichseitig. To Equal, gleichen, glich, geglichen. Error, Irrthum, ber (ses; pl. ser, mod.). wesentlich; the e. Essential. thing, bas Wesent= Essentially, liche. Estate, Gut, bas (=es; pl. =er, mod.). To Esteem, achten. Esteem, Achtung, die. Evasion, Umgehung, die (compare with Umgang, Appendix, 48, f.). Even, eben; selbst: not even, nicht einmal. Evening, Abend, ber (=8; pl. =e). Event, Bufall, Umftand, ber (=es;

pl. se, mod.); Greigniß, bas

(=e8; pl. =e).

Ever, immet; ftets; je: for e. | Fable, Fabel, die (pl. =n).
and e., auf ewig. | Faet, Ahatsache, die; is ibrat un

Every, jeber; every body, ein jeber; jebermann: every thing, alles.

three hours, alle brei Stunben.

Evil, Uebel, bas (=6; pl. --). Example, Beispiel, bas (#6; pl. se); to set an e., ein B. geben. Exceedingly, febr, außerorbent-

lid. Excellent, portrefflich.

To Except, aus'enchmen, nahm, genommen.

Except, ausgenommen.

Exception, Ausnahme, bie (pl. =n); with the e. of, ausae= nommen.

To Execute, aus'=uben; aus'= führen ; aus'=richten.

Exercise (task), llebung, bie (pl. =en).

To Exert oneself (bemühen, an-

ftrengen fich). Exertion, Unftrengung; Bemå=

hung, die (pl. sen). Exhibition, Ausstellung (pl. sen); Runft=Ausstellung (if of artistical objects), bic.

To Expect, erwarten; verfeben sid (with gen.).

Expectation, Crwartung, bie pl. sen); Erwarten, bas (=8); e. g. without e., wiber Erwarten; in e. of, geneartig, with gen. of object.

Expense, Roften; at my e., auf meine R.

Experience, Erfahrung, bie (pl. =en).

Expire, aus'=hauchen, e. g. bie Seele ; fterben.

Exploits, Thaten, bie, pl. To Expose, aus'=fegen.

To Express, aus'=bruden, außern; to ex. regret, fein Bebauern a.

Expressly, ausbrücklich.

Extremely, fehr, außerorbentlich. Eye, Auge, bas (=es; pl. =n).

historical f. 1 ift bas bistorisch mabr?

To Fade, welten, verwelten. Fagot, Reisbundel Bunbel Reiser.

Fair, hubich (pretty); billin (equitable).

Faith, Glaube or Glauben, ber (=8).

Faithful, treu, getreu.

Faithfully,

To Fall, fallen, fiel, gefalten; to f. off or down, ab-fallen; to f. ill of, frant werben with an.

Fall, Kall, ber (ses) if = in case; (pl. =0, mod.): to have a f.. einen Fall thun.

Fallow, falb. False. Falsely, | falid).

Falsehood. Ummabrheit, bie (pl.

Family, Familie, die (pl. -n). To Fan, facheln.

To Fancy, ein-bilben fich.

Far, weit; by f., bei weitem; not f. from, unweit.

Farewell, Lebemobl, bas; Abichieb, ber (=es); to take f., A. nehmen. Fast, schnell.

Father, Bater, der (ses; pl. —, mod.).

Fatherless, vaterios. To Fatigue, ermüben.

Fatigue, Ermubung; Befdmerbe, bie (pl. =en); to drop down with f., jum Nieberfinten ermabet fein.

Fault, Fehler, ber (=6; pl. --); it is my f., es ift meine Schulb, or ich bin S. baran.

To Favour, begånftigen. Favour, Gunft, bie.

Favorable, \ gunstig, holb. Favorably,

Fear, Furcht, bie.

To Fear, fürchten.

Fearfully, furchtbar, foredlich. To feed, fpeifen; futtern.

Perry-man, Kahrmann, Schiffer, ber (=8; pl. --). To Fetch, holen. Feud, Febbe, die; to carry en a f., befehben fich. Fever, Fieber, das (=es; pl. --). Fow, wenig, einige, wenige. Field, Felb, bas; Acter, ber (=8; pl. —, mod.). Fiery, feurig. Fifteen, funfachn or fünfachn. Fifth, funfte. To Fight, fecten, focht, gefochten; fich fclagen, fclug, gefchlagen; to f. a battle, ein Ereffen, or eine Schlacht liefern. Fight, Rampf, ber (=es; pl. se, mod.) ; Gefecht, bas (=e8; pl. =). Figure, Figur, Gestatt, die (pl. =en). To Find, finben, fand, gefunden: to f. out, ausfindig machen. Fine, fein, bunn. Finger, Finger, ber (=6; pl. --); burch bie Finger feben, to overlook any one's faults; to wink Finish, endigen, beenbigen. Fire, Feuer, bas (=8). First, erfte, ber, bie, bas; adv. zuerst; erstlich. Fish, Fifch, ber (ses; pl. se). Five, funf. Flame, Flamme, die (pl. =n). To Flash, bligen, fceinen. Flat, flach, platt. To Flatter, ichmeichetn. Flatterer, Schmeichler, ber (=6; pl. —). Flattery, Schmeichelei, bie (pl. Flavour, Seruch (=e6; pl. =e, med.); Geschmad, ber (ses). Flax, Flache, ber (=e8). To Flee, flieben, floh, geflohen. Flight, Hucht, die; to put to f., in die F. schlagen. Flour, Mehl, bas (=8). To Flourish, gebeihen, gebieh, gebiehen; see also to Blossom. To Flow, flieben, flot, gefloffen.

Flower, Blume, bie (pl. =#). To Fly, fliegen, flog, geflogen (of a bird). To Fly (= take to flight), fliehen, floh, geflohen. To Fold, falten, zusammen legen. Foliage, Laub, bas (26). To Follow, folgen. Folly, Thorheit, die (pl. sen). Fool, Thor, der (sen). Foot, guß, ber (=es ; pl. =e, mod.); on £., zu Fuß. Footpath, Fußpfad, ber. Food, Rahrung, bie. For, für; mahreno (e. g. a month). To Forbid, verbieten, verbot, ver= boten. Force. Gewalt, bie. To Force, awingen, awang, geawungen. Foreign, fremb; f. countries, bas Ausland [litr. the out-land]. Foreigner, Frembe (=n); Anslander, der (=8). To Foresee, porque's or porber's feben, fab, gefeben. Forfeit, fich verluftig machen (gen.). To Forget, vergeffen, vergaß, ver= geffen. To Forgive, vergeben; see geben. Fork, Gabel, bie (pl. =n). To Form, bilben ; ichaffen. Fortnight, vierzehn Tage. Fortress, Feftung, bie (pl. sen). Fortunate, gluctlich. Fortunately, gluctlicher Beife; zum Stúck. Four, vier. Fourteen, vierzehn. Fourth, vierte. France, Frankreich, bas (=6). Free, frei. To Freeze, frieren, fror, gefroren; erfrieren, erfror, erfroren. Freighted (e.g. ship), belaben. French, französisch; Franzosen (pl.) (e.g. they are . .). Frequent, }håufig. Frequently, Fresh, frifd). Friend, Kreumb, der (ses; pl. se).

lid; in the most f. manner. auf's -fte. Friendship, Freundschaft, die (pl. =en). To Frighten, erichreden. Frog, Frofd, ber (=6; pl. =e, mod.). From, pon, aus; f. above, pon oben; f. below, von unten; f. hence, von hier. Frost, Froft, der (se6). To Frown, bie Stirne falten ; to f. at any body, jemanben mit einem finfteren Blide an'sfeben. Fruit, Frucht, bie (pl. se, mod.); Dbft, bas. To Fulfil, erfüllen. Full, poll. Fully, vollia, ganzlich. Full-moon, Bollmond, ber. To Fumigate, raudern. Further, meiter. Future, funftig. Future, Butunft, bie: for the f., ins Runftige.

To Gain: see to Win. Gain, Bewinn, ber (=e8). Garden, Garten, ber (=6; pl. mod.). Gardener, Gartner, ber (=8; pl. -). Gate, Thor, bas (28; pl. 26). To Gather, sammeln; see also to Reap. To Gaze at, an'sftaunen. General, General (=es; pl. =e, mod.); Felbherr, ber (=n). Generally; see Usually. Generosity, Großmuth, die. Generously, großmuthig. Gentle, (fanft, facht; see also Gently, Pleasant. Gentleman, Berr, ber (=n; pl. =en). Geography, Erbfunde, Geogras phie, bie. Geometrical, geometrifd. German, beutsch. Germany, Deutschland.

Friendly, freundlich, freundschaft- | To Get, erhalten, betommen ; to g. done, maden lassen; to g. into, gerathen in (with acc.); to g. up, auf'sfteben; to g. up by heart, see Heart. Gift, Gabe, bie (pl. =n). Girl. Mabden, bas (=8; pl. -). To Give, geben, gab, gegeben; to g. in, nad'=geben; to g. up, auf'sgeben or begeben fich (with gen. of object), aufsopfern (= to sacrifice). Glass, Glas, bas (ses; pl. ser, mod.). To Glitter, glanzen, fcimmern, flimmern. Gloomy, trube, bufter. Gloomily, finster. Glorious, rühmlich, glänzenb (e.g. victory, Sieg). Glove, Handschuh, ber (=e8; pl.=e). To Go, gehen, ging, gegangen; to . out, aus'sgehen; to g. up, binauf gehen. Gold, Gold, bas (=e8). as adj., golden (of gold). Golden: see Gold. Good, gut (beffer, beft); as g. as, so gut als. Goods, Waaren, bie. Goodness, Gute, bie. Gown ; see Dress. Grace, Anftanb, ber (=e8) ; good graces, Gunft, bie. To Grant, gewähren ; gonnen: to take for granted, für gewiß an'=nehmen, or an'=nehmen simply. Grass, Gras, bas (=es; pl. =et, mod.). Gratitude, Dankbarkeit, bie. Grave, Grab, bas (=es; pl. =et, mod.); Gruft, bie (pl. =e, mod.). Great, groß. Greatness, Größe, die. Greek, griedjijd). Green, grùn. To Greet; see to Salute. Ground, Grund (=e6; pl.=e, mod.); Boben, ber (=6).

To Ground, grunben.

To Grow, machien, muche, gemach= fen; see also to Become. Growth, Wachsthum, ber (=e8). To Guard, húten. To Guide, führen. Guide, Führer, Begleiter, ber (=8; pl. -Guilty, schulbig.

Habit, Gewohnheit, die (pl. =en). Half, Balfte, bie; halb (adj. and adv.); h. of it, bie Balfte bavon; by h., um bie B. Hand, Sand, bie (pl. se, mod.). Handkerchief, Tuch, bas (=06; pl. =er, mod.). To Handle, handhaben. To Hang (trans.), hangen; (intrans.) hangen, hing, gehangen. To Happen, geschehen, geschah, gefcheben; ereignen fich; fugen fich; ju'=tragen fich. Happiness, Gluct, bas (=08). Happily, gludlich, froh. To Harangue, an'sreben. Harbour, Bafen, ber (=8; pl. ---, mod.). Hard, hart. To Harden, harten, ab'=harten. Hardly, schwerlich. Harm, Schaben, ber (-8; pl. --, mod.); to do h., schaben. Harp, Sarfe, bie (pl. ≤n). Harvest, Ernte, die, (pl. =n). To Harvest, ernten. To Hasten, eilen; beeilen fich. Haste, Gile, die; to make h., sich beeilen. Hastily, eilig, eilfertig, voreilig. Hat, but, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). Hatchet, Beil, bas (=es; pl. =e). To Hate, haffen. To Have, haben, hatte, gehabt. Hawk, Sabicht, ber (ses; pl. se). Hazel-hen, Saselbubn, bas. He, er. Head, Ropf, ber (=es; pl.=e, mod.): to enter one's h., in ben Ropf, or auf ben Gebanten kommen.

To Heal, beilen. Heap, Soufen, ber (=8; pl. -). To Hear, horen. Heart, Berg, bas (=en [8]; pl.=en): to learn by h., auswendig lernen. Heat, Sige, bie. Heaven, himmel, ber (=8; pl. -). Heavy, ichmer; grob (of artillery). To Help, helfen, half, geholfen: I cannot h. doing, ich kann nicht umbin, with infinitive (331); sich nicht enthalten können (e.g., laughing, with gen.). To Hem, faumen. Hemp, Banf, ber (=es): made of h., hanfen. Hempen; see Hemp. Her; see She. Her, ihr, ihre, ihr (as poss. pron.). Herald, herold, ber (=es; pl. =e). Herb, Kraut, das (=es; pl. =er, mod.). Herd, Beerbe, bie (pl. =n); Rubel, bas (=8; pl. —) (of stags). Here, hier; see also Hither. Heretofore, zuvor. Hero, Belb, ber (=en; pl. =en). To Hesitate, Bebenten tragen; unschluffig fein. Hesitation, Bebenten, bas (=6); Unschläffigkeit, bie. High, hoch. Hill, Sugel, ber (=8; pl. -). Hinder, hindern, ab'=halten; see halten. To Hire, miethen. His, fein, feine, fein. Historical, geschichtlich, hiftorisch (e.g., fact, Thatfache): to be an h. fact, geschichtlich mahr fein. To Hit, treffen, traf, getroffen. Hither, hieher, bierber. Hitherto, bisher. To Hold, halten, hielt, gehalten. Hold, Halt, ber. Hollow, hohl. Holy, beilig Home, nach Sauft (e.g. to go): at h., zu D. Honest,

ebrlich.

Honestly,

Honour, Ehre, bie (pl. sn). To Honour, epren. Hope, hoffnung die (pl. sen). To Hope, hoffen. Horse, Pferd, das (ses; pl. se); a white h., ein Schimmel (=6; pl. -); a black h., ein Rappe (=n; pl. =n). Horse-race, Pferbe-Rennen, bas. Hostile, } feinblich, feinbfelig. Hostilely, Hour, Stunde, bie (pl. =n). House, Haus, bas (=es; pl. ser, mod.). However, bennoch, boch, indes. - great, wie groß auch; wie-auch (if with a verb, see Hunger, hunger, ber (=6). To Hunt, jagen. Hunting; see Chase. To Hurt, schaben; any body's feelings, tranten. Husbandman, Landmann, ber. Hut, Butte, bie (pl. =n). Hypocrisy, Seuchelei, bie. Hypocrite, Beuchler, ber (=6; pl. --).

Ice, Eis, bas (=es); Eisbecke, bie. Idle, tråge. If, wenn-falls [or im Kalle] = in case; sometimes, wo, wofern, fo (412); if not, mofern nicht; es fei benn baß; as if, als ob (or menn). Ignorant, unwissend. Ill, frant, ubel; to fall ill, frant merben. Illness, Krankheit, bie (pl. sen). To Imagine, ein'sbilden fich ; glaus To Imitate, nach'=ahmen. Immediately, gleich; fogleich. Immense, ungeheuer. Immortality, Unfterblichfeit, bie. Important, wichtig. Impossible, unmoglid.

Impostor, Betrager, ber (=6; pl. —). Improbable, unwahricheinlich. To Improve (trans.), perbeffern; (intrans.), beffer werben ; fich beffern. In. into. in. Inactive, unthatig. Inactively, Inclination, Reigung, bie (pl. =en). Inclined (to be), geneigt fein, mogen, wollen, Luft haben. Incorrect. } unrichtig. Incorrectly, To Increase (trans.), permebren. vergröffern i (intrans.) zu'= nebmen, nabm, genommen. India, Indien, bas (=8). Industrious, | fleißig, emfig. Industrious, Industry, Fleiß, ber (=e8). Inefficacy, Unwirtsamteit, bie. Infamous, } scanblic. Infamously, Influence, Ginfluß, ber (=e6); to have great i. with any body, viel gelten bei (dat.). To Inform, unterrichten; belehren; benachrichtigen; unterweisen. Information, Unterricht (=88); Bericht, ber (=e6; pl. =e). Inhabitant, Ginwohner, ber (=6). To Initiate, ein'sweihen: to be initiated in a secret, um ein Ge= heimniß wissen. Injure, icaben, beeintrace tiaen. Injurious, schablich; to be i., fcaben. Ink, Dinte, bie. Inn, Wirthshaus, bas (=es; pl Gasthof, der (ses; =er, mod.). pl. =0, mod.). Innocent, unschulbig. To Insinuate oneself, fich ein's faleichen. Insipid, Insipidly, fabe. To Insist, befteben, bestand, bestanden (on it, barauf). Instead, flatt: anflatt; für.

To Instruct, belehren. To Insult, beleibigen. Intellectual. Intellectual, geistig. Seifes= Intellectual powers, Rrafte; Berftanbes-Rrafte. Intelligence ; see News. Intend, beabfichtigen, wollen. Intention, Absidit, bie (pl. sen). Intercourse, Umgang, bet (=06). To Interest oneself for, an'=neh= men fich (with gen.). To Interrupt, unterbrechen; floren. Intimate, Intimately, genau. Intoxicated, betrunden. To Introduce, ein'sführen, führte, geführt; por'=ftellen. Invention, Erfindung, die (pl. =en). Invitation, Ginlabung, bie (pl. To Invite, ein'=laben, lub, gelaben. Iron, Eifen, bas (=8). It, es;—it is, ja (litr. yes, e.g. is it true ! it is). Italian, italieniid. Italy, Italien, bas (=8).

Joke, Scherz, ber (263 pl. ≥). Journey, Reise, bie (pl. =n); to go on a j., verreifen. Joy, Frende, die (pl. =n). Joyful, froh. Joyfully, mit Freuben, freubig. Judge, Richter, Beurtheiler, ter (≤6). To Judge, richten; urtheiten; be= urtheilen. To Jump, springen, sprang, geforunaen. Jurist, Rechtsgelehrte, ber (like adj. gelebrt Just, gerecht, billig; just now, ge= rabe jest.

To Keep, halten, hielt, gehalten, behalten: to k. the house, bas haus haten; to k. off, ab'shalten (e.g. the coast, von der Kuste).

Key, Schlüssel, der (s ; pl. —). Kind, gatig. Kindly, j Kindness, Gute, bie. King, Konig, ber (ses; pl. se). Kingdom, Ronigreich, bas (283 pl. 🕫). Knave, Schelm, ber (=e8; pl. =e). To Knead, fneten. Knight, like a, ritterlich. To Knit, fricen; to k. one's brow. bie Stirne falten. To Knock, flopfen. To Know, tennen, tannte, gefannt (cognoscere); wiffen, wuste, aes must (soire); also with um etwas (about any thing) :-- to know by, ertennen an (with dat.); to be known, beformt Knowledge, Renntnis, Runbe, bie.

To Labour, arbeiten. Lad, Buriche, ber (=n; pl. =n). Lake, See, ber (:6; pl. =n). Lame, lahm. Lance, Lange, bie (pl. =n). Language, Spracke, bie (pl. =n). Large, groß, geräumig. Lark, Lerdje, bie (pl. =n). Lassitude; see Weariness. Last, lest, vergangen (= past : e.g. last year); zulest (adv.): the l. time, das legte Mal. To Last; see to Continue. Late, fpåt; verftorben. Latin, Latein (subst.), lateinifch (adj.). To Laugh, laden. Law, Gefes, bas (=es; pl. =e). Lawsuit, Prozeß, der (26; pl. 20). To Lay, legen. Lazy, trage, faul. To Lead, leiten. Leaf, Blatt, bas (ses; pi. ser, mod.). To Leap, springen, sprang, ges fprungen. Leap, Sprung, der (ses; pl. se, mod.).

To Learn, lernen. Learned, gelehrt. Least, tleinfte; menigfte (with def. art.): not in the l., nicht im geringften ; at 1., jum wenigften. Leave, Abschieb, ber; to take l., A. nehmen, fich empfehlen. To Leave, verlaffen; see laffen; to 1. out, aus'=laffen. Left, links: to the l., zur Linken. Leg, Bein, bas (=es; pl. =e). To Lend, leiben, lieb, gelieben. Lesson, Lettion, Stunde, die (pl.=n). To Let, laffen, ließ, gelaffen. Letter, Brief, ber (=es; pl. =e). (alphabetic), Buchftabe, ber (=n [6]; pl =n). Liar, Lugner, ber (=8; pl. —). Liberal, freigebig. Liberty, Freiheit, bie. Lie, Luge, bie (pl. =n). To Lie, lugen, log, gelogen. , liegen, lag, gelegen. Life, Leben, bas (=8). To Lift, heben, bob, gehoben. Light, leicht; light-minded, leicht= finnig. Light, Licht, bas (=es). To Light, leuchten. To Lighten, bligen. Lightning, Blig, ber (=es; pl. =e). Like, gleid); wie (= as); to be l. one another, gleichen sich; a person l. him, seinesgleichen. To Like, gern haben, mogen; gern mogen; leiben mogen: to make oneself liked, fich beliebt machen; he likes to be, er ift gern. Likely, wahrscheinlich; he, it, &c., may very l., cr, es, &c., burfte mol (with infin.). To Limp, hinten. Line, Beile, die (pl. =n). Linen, Bafche, bie; Leinenzeug, bas (=e8) To Lisp, lifpeln. List, Berzeichniß, bas (=es; pl. =e). Literally, mortlid). Literary, literarisch, gelehrt. Little, flein, wenig. To Live, leben; to l. in hopes of,

ber Hoffnung leben; to 1. to see any thing, etwas erleben. Livelihood, Unterhalt, Lebens=Un= terhalt, ber (=e8); to get a l., leben fonnen (by any thing, von etwas). Living; see Livelihood. Loaf, Brob, bas (=es; pl. =e). Lofty, hoch, erhaben. Log, Rlog, ber (=es; pl. =e). London, London, bas (=6). Lonely, cinfam. Long, lana. To Look for, fehnen fich (nach). To Look, feben, fab, gefeben ; aus'= sehen; to l. at, an'ssehen. Look, Blick, ber (=e8; pl. =e). Looking-glass, Spiegel, ber (=6; pl. —). Loose, los. Loquaciously, } geschwäßig. Loquacious, To Lose, verlieren, verlor, verloren. Loss, Berluft, der (=es; pl. =e, mod.); suffering the l. of, per= luftig, with gen. of object. Loud, laut. To Love, lieben. Love, Liebe, bie. Lovely, lieblich. Low, niebrig. Luxury, Aufwand (expensiveness), ber (ses); Reppigkeit, Schwelgerei, die (pl. =en). Mad, toll, unfinnig. Made of, von ... gemacht; aus ... perfertiat. Magnitude; see Greatness. To Maintain, unterhalten (support); behaupten (assert, &c.). He m.'s that he saw me, er will mich gesehen haben (see 140, b). To Make, machen, perfertigen. Malicious. boshaft. Maliciously,

Malt, Malz, bas (=es).

(pl.), Personen.

Man, Mann, (=es; pl. =er, mod.);

Mensch, ber (=en; pl. =en; also

To Manage, handhaben a ver= 1 richten; aus'=führen; to be managed (of tools, &c.), hanb= haben sich. Manly, mannlich. Manna, Manna, bas (=6). Manner, Art, bie (pl. =en) ; in this m., auf biefe Art or Weife; in the following m., folgenber= magen; manner of living, Lebensmeile, bie. Manners, Sitten, bie, pl. To Manure, bungen. Many, viele (pl.), mancher (many a); m. things, vieles (= much). Map, Landfarte, die (pl. =n). To March, maridiren. To Mark, zeichnen, bezeichnen. Marriage, Beirath, bie (pl. sen). To Marry, heirathen. Mast, Maft, ber (=es; pl. Maft= baume, or irr. Maften). Master, Berr (=n; pl. =en); Lehrer, ber (=8; pl. -Masterpiece, Meifterftuct, (=e6; pl. =e). Mathematics, Mathematit, bie. Matter, Sache, bie (pl. =n). Maxim, Marime, die (pl. =n); Sas, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). May, mogen, mochte, gemocht; burfen, burfte, geburft. Me, mid). Meadow, Biefe, bie (pl. =n). Meal, Mahl, das (=6; pl. =er, mod.). Means, Mittel, bas (=6); by no m., feinesweges; by m. of, ver= mittelft. Meanwhile, indeg, indeffen, unter= beffen. Measure, Maß, das (=es). Meat, Fleisch, bas (=e8). Medicine, Arznei, die (pl. sen). To Meet, begegnen (dat.). To Melt, schmelzen, schmolz, ge= ichmolzen. Mend, aus'=beffern; in Ordnung bringen (the latter of linen). To Mention, ermannen, with gen. of object.

Merchant, Raufmann, ber (like Mann). Merit, Berbienft, bas (=es; pl. =e). Meritorious, verbienstvoll. Merry, froh; frohlich; luftig. Message, Botichaft, bie (pl. =en). Messenger, Bote, ber (=n; pl. Middle, Mitte, bie; in the m. of. mitten in. Might, Macht, Stårke, bie. Migratory bird, Bug-vogel, ber. Mild, milb, milbe. Milk, Mild, bie. Mill. Muble, bie (pl. =n). Mind, Gemuth, bas (=es; pl. =er); Beift, ber (=e6): to have a m., wollen, beabsichtigen. Mindful, eingebent; to be m. of, eingebent fein, with gen. of object. Minute, genau, umstånblich. Minutely, (Miserly, geizig, targ Misfortune, Ungluck, bas (=es); Ungludefall, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). To Miss, fehlen; verfehlen. Mistake, 3rrthum, ber (=e8; pl. =er, mod.); Berfehen, bas (=6; pl.-). Mistaken, to be, sich irren. To Mix, mischen. To Moan, winfeln. To Mock, spotten. Moderation, Mäßigung, bie. Modest, Modestly, bescheiben. Moment, Augenblick, ber (=e8; pl. =e); Wichtigkeit, bie. Monday, Montag, der (like Zag). Money, Geld, das (=es; pl. =er). Monk, Mond, der (=es; pl. =e). Month, Monat, der (=es; pl. =e). Moon, Mond, der (=e8; pl. =e). More, mehr. Moreover, ohnehin; überbies. Morn, Morning, Morgen, ber (=6; pl. -); in the m., bes Morgens. Morning-light, Morgenlicht (=es), or Morgenroth, bas (=e8). Morose, mismuthig.

To-Morrow, morgen.
——morning, morgen früh.
Mortal, sterblich.
Most, meist.
Mostly, größtentheils, meistens.
Mother, Mutter, bie (pl. mod.).
To Moulder, mobern.
Mountain, Berg, ber (ses; pl. se).
Much, wiel.
Murderous, mörberisch,
Music, Music, Music, Dusst, bie.
Must (wo be obliged), müssen,
muste, gemust.
My, mein, meine, mein.
Mystery; see Secret.

Name, Rame, ber (=n[6]; pl. =n).

To Name, nennen, nannte, ge= nannt. Naples, Reapel, bas (=8). Narrow, enge, schmal. Nation, Ration, bie (pl. sen). Nature, Natur, bie. Naughty, unartig, fchlecht, bofe. Necessary, nothig, nothwendig. Near, nahe: to be the nearest, ber Rachfte fein (e.g. to oneself, fid). Need, Roth, bie; to stand in n. of, bedürfen, bedurfte, bedurft; be= nothigt fein, with gen. of object. Neighbour, Rachbar, ber (=6; pl. sen); ber Rachfte (like adj.). Neither . . . nor, weber . . . noch. Nephew, Reffe, ber (=n; pl. =n). Nest, Meft, bas (=es; pl. =er). Never, nimmer; nie; niemals. New, neu. News (any), etwas Renes; Rach= richt, die. Newspaper, Beitung, die (pl. sen). Next, nåchft, folgend. Niece, Richte, die (pl. =n). Night, Racht, bie (pl. =e, mod.). Nightingale, Rachtigall, die (pl. sen). Nine, neun. Nineteenth, neunzehnte. No (negation), nein. No (adj.), fein.

Noble, ebel ; abelia. Nobody, Riemand, Reiner. Noise, Larm, ber (=es). None, teinser, teinse, tein s n. whosoever, gar teiner, &c.; n. whatever, gor tein or teins. North, Rord, der (sen). Northern, nôtblid). Not nicht; not only ... but also. nicht nur . . . sonbern auch ; n. yet, noch nicht; n. at all, aar nicht, um nichts. Nothing, nichts: n. at all, car nichts. To Notice, bemerken. Notwithstanding, ungeachtet. Now, jest, nun: n. that, nun bas. Now-a-days, heutiged Tages. No where, nirgend or nirgends. Number, Babl, Anzabl, die. Nat. 92us, bie.

Oak, Eiche, die (pl. zen). Oaken, eichen. Obedient, } gehorfam. Obediently, To Obey, gehorden. Object, Zweck, Gegenstand, ber (=e&; pl. =e, mod.). Objection (to have no), gern woklen, nichts bamiber haben. To Oblige, nothigen: to be obliged, muffen, mußte, gemußt. To Observe, beobachten, bemerten. Obsolete, veraltet. To Occupy, besegen. Octogenary, adstrigiáhrig. Of, von. -Offensive (to be), zuwiber sein. To Offer, an'sbieten, bot, geboten. Offer, Anerbieten, bas (3). Offering; see Sacrifice. Office, Amt, das (ses; pl. ser, mod.). Often, oft. Oh! D! ach! Oil, Del, bas. Old, alt: o. man, Greis (ses; pl =e), Alte, ber (like adj.). On; see Upon.

Once, einmal or ein Mal. Once, ein, eine, ein. Only, nur. To Open, offnen, eroffnen. Openly, offen, frei. Open-hearted, offenbergia, Opinion, Meinung, bie (pl. sen): to be of o., meinen, glauben, der Meinung sein. Opportunity, Gelegenheit, bie (pl. ≠n). Opposite, gegenüber (with dat.). Oppress, unterbrucken. Oppressor, Unterbructer, ber (=6; pl. —). Or, ober. Order, Ordnung, bie: in order to, um, bamit (bas). Order, Befehl, ber (=es; pl. =e): to take orders, Prebiger werben. To Order, befehlen, befahl, bes fohlen: see also to Command. Other (the), ber anbere; each o., einanber. Otherwise, fonft. Ought, follen, muffen. Our, unser. Out, aus: out of, aus, außer; o. of danger, außer Gefahr. Over, über, vorüber, vorbei: it is all o. with anybody, es ift um jemanben geschehen; all over, überall. To Overcome; see to Conquer. Over-hastily, porcilig. To Owe, schulbig sein. Own, eigen. To Own, ein'sgefteben, geftanb, geftanben: he will not own it, er will es nicht Wort haben (the latter familiarly).

Pain, Schmerz, der (=e8; pl. =en);

Mühe, die (pl. =en); to take pains, sich Mühe geben.

Pair, Paar, das.

Pale, blaß, comp. blaßer: to grow p., erbleichen, erblich, erblichen.

To Pardon, vergeben, vergad, vers

Pitch, Pech, das (=e8).

Pity, Mitlied, das (=e8): to be a

geben; verzeihen, verzieh, ver= Parents, Meltern or Eltern. Paris, Paris, bas. Part, Theil, ber (ses; pl. se). To Partake, Theil nehmen : partaking in, theilhaftig (with gen. of object). Party-coloured, bunt. To Pass, porbei'sgehen (ging, ges gangen). Path, Pfad, der (=e8; pl. =e). Patiently, } gebulbig. To Pay, zahlen, bezahlen. Peace, Friede, ber (=n) [8]). Peaceably, } friebfam, frieblich. Peaceful, Peasant, Bauer, ber (=8; pl. =n). Pen, Keber, bie (pl. =n). Penetration, Scharffinn, ber (=e8). Penknife, Federmesser, das (=6). People, Bolt, das (=es; pl. ser, mod. or Leute). To Perceive, erblicken; wahrneh= men [after nehmen]. Perfect, 7 vollkommen, Perfectly, 5 ganzlich. Perform, thun, aus'=fuhren, ver= richten. Perhaps, vielleicht. To Perish, pergeben; um'=tom= men, tam, getommen. Period, Beitraum, ber (=e8; pl. =t, mod.). Permission, Erlaubniß, bie. To Permit, erlauben. To Persecute, verfolgen. To Persuade, überreben. Physic, see Medicine. Physician, Argt, ber (=8; pl. --, mod.). Picture, Bilb, bas (ses; pl. ser). Piece, Stuck, das (=es; pl. =e). Piety, Frommigfeit, bie. Pigeon, Taube, die (pl. =n). To Pinch, kneipen. Piously, fromm. Pitch, Ded, bas (=e8).

p., Schabe sein; to take p. on, | Practicable, aussuhrbar. erbarmen fich. Place, Dlas (ses; pl. se, mod.); Ort, ber (=es; pl. =er, mod.); Stelle, bie (pl. =n). To Place, ftellen, fegen. To Plant, pflangen. To Play, spielen. Pleasant; see Agreeable. To Please, gefallen, gefiel, gefallen, belieben. Pleased (to be), freuen sich. Pleasure, Bergnigen, bas (=6; pl. **—**). To Plough, pflugen. To Pluck, pflucen: to p. up, ausreißen. Plumb-line, Sentblei, bas (=e8). Pocket, Zafche, bie (pl. =n). Poem, Bebicht, bas (ses; pl. se). Poetry, Dichtkunft, bie: by way of p., bichterisch. Point, Punkt, ber (=es; pl. =e): to be on the p. of, im Begriffe fein; auf bem Puntt fteben. Pointed, spinig. Polish, Politur, die; Glanz, der (se8). Pony, Pferbchen, bas (=6; pl. --). Poor, arm. Poorly, armfelig, armlich. Poplar-tree, Pappel, die (pl. =n). Port ; see Harbour. Portion, Theil, ber (=es; pl. =e). Position; see Station. Positive, Positive, Positively, bestimmt. Possessor, Befiger, ber (=6; pl. Possession, Befig, ber (=e6): to take p. of, bemachtigen, bemeis ftern fich; in p. of, machtig (with gen. of object). Possible, mbalich: if p., wenn (or wo) moglich. Possibly, moglicherweise. To Pounce upon, nieber-ichießen (fcos, gefchoffen). Poverty, Armuth, bie. Power, Kraft (pl. se, mod.); Starte, bie.

Practice: see Use. To Practise, üben; aus'-üben. To Praise, preisen, pries, gepriesen; loben. Praise, Preis, ber (=8). To Pray, beten, bitten: pray do not, bu mogest nicht (with infin.). To Preach, predigen. Precaution, Borficht, bie. Precept, Borfchrift, die (pl. sen). Preceptor, Lehrer, ber (=6). Preciously, foftbar. Precise, \ punttlid, eigen, ge= Precisely, f rabe. Precipitate. boreilig, rafc. Precipitately, To Prepare, bereiten. To Prescribe, verschreiben, verfarieb, verfarieben. Present, gegenwartig: to be p. g. fein, erleben. To Present, barbieten: to p. itself, sich zeigen; to p. with, be= ichenten mit. Present, s. Gefchent, bas (=es; pl. Press, Schrant, ber (es; pl. =e, mod.). Presumptuous, Presuming, see Assuming. To Presuppose, voraus'=fegen. To Pretend, ftellen sid. Pretext, Bormand, ber (=e8). Pretty, hűbích. To Prevent, hindern; verhindern. Price, Preis, ber (ses; pl. se). Priest, Priefter, ber (se; pl. -). Principle, Grundsag, ber (=e8; pl. =e, mod.). Prison, Gefångniß, bas (=es; pl.=e). Prize, Preis, ber (ses; pl. se); Beute, bie. Probable, mahricheinlich. Probably, To Produce, bar'=bringen (brachte, gebracht) Profit, see Gain. Prohibition, Berbot, bas (ses; pl.

Pronounce, aus'=sprechen (e. q. sentence. rid.). Properly, gehörig. Property, Eigenthum (=6); Ber= mogen, bas (=6; pl. --Proposal, Borichlag, ber (=6; pl. =e, mod.). Proprietor, Gigenthumer, ber (=6; pl. —). Prospect, Musficht, die (pl. =en). To Prospect (of persons), gut (wohl) geben; es geht ihm gut (wohl), he prospers; geteihen, gebieh, gebieben (of things). To Protect, ichugen, beichügen. Proud. Proudly, ftoly. To Prove, beweisen, bewies, be= wiesen; erweisen, u.f.m. To Provide, verseben, versah, ver= seben. Provided perfeben ; porqueacfest. Providence, Borfebung, bie. Prudent, }tlug, verftanbig. Prudently, Public, dffentlich, allgemein. Publicly, To Punish, ftrafen; beftrafen. Pupil; see Scholar. To Purchase, faufen. Purchaser, Raufer, ber (=8; pl. **—**). Purse, Borfe, die (pl. =n). To Push, ftogen, ftieß, geftogen. To Put, ftellen, fegen; fteden (e.g. into one's pocket, in die Tafchen; in prison, in's Gefangnis); to p. on, an'=ziehen, zog, gezogen.

Queen, Konigin, die (pl. =en).
Question, Frage, die (pl. =en): to
put a q., eine Frage vor'=legen.
Quick,
Quickly,
} dinell, geschwind.
Quietly,
} ruhig, still.
Quietness, Ruhe, die.
Quito, ganz.

Rain, Regen, ber (=6). To Rain, regnen. To Raise, erheben; auf'=beben; aus'=beben or auf'=ftellen (of soldiers or an army). To Ram up, verrammeln, barrica= biren. Rampart, Wall, ber (=e8; pl. =e, mod.). Rank, Rang, ber; Glieb, bas (=es; pl. =er); close ranks, ge= fcloffene Glieber. Rapid. } reißend, fcnell. Rapidly, Rare, selten. Rascal, Schurte, ber (=n; pl. =n). Rather, ziemlich, etwas, ein wenig. Raw, rob. To Reach, reichen; erreichen. To Read, lefen, las, gelefen. Ready, fertig, bereit. Readily, bercitwillia. Real, Really, wirflich, wahr. To Reap, ernten. To Rear, baumen fich [of a horse]. Reason, Bernunft, bie; Grund, ber (=e8; pl. =e, mod.). Receipt, Quittung, bie (pl. =en). To Receive, empfangen, empfing, empfangen; erhalten, erhielt, erbalten. intelligence, verneb= men, pernahm, pernommen. To Recollect, befinnen, befann, befonnen fich; erinnern fich. Recollection, Erinnerung, bie (pl. =en). To Recommend, empfehlen, emp= fabl, empfoblen. Recommendation, Empfehlung, bie (pl. sen): to give any body

a letter of r., jemanb empfehlen or bei jemanben ein'=sühren; an'=empfehlen. To Recover [from illness], gene= sen, genas, genesen. Recreation, Erholung, bie (pl.=en). To Recruit; see to Refresh. Reed, Rohr, das (=e8; pl. =e); reeds, Schilf, das (=e8); To Refresh, erfriften erholen fich. 1 To Refuse, meigern; also with fich and gen. of the object. Regret, Bebauern, bas (=6); to express one's r., fein Bebauern ausbruden. Reins, Bugel (pl.); to take the r., fahren (with 'to have'); but fabren, with 'to be' = 'to go in a carriage'). Rejection, Bermerfung, Ablehnung, bie. To Reject, verwerfen. with scorn, verschmaben. To Rejoice, freuen fich (with gen.). To Relate, ergablen; berichten: to r. to, fich beziehen auf. Relation, Bermanbte, ber (like Relative: see Relation. To Remain, bleiben, blieb, geblies ben; verbleiben; fich auf'shals To Remember, erinnern; befinnen, befann, befonnen; entfins nen (all with fich); gebenten: remember me, gebente mein. Remnant, Ueberbleibsel, bas (=6; pł. —). Repeatedly, wieberholt, au wieber= bolten Malen. To Replace, erfesen. To Report, berichten. Report, Bericht, ber (ses; pl. se); Gerücht, bas (ses ; pl. se). Reputation, Ruf, ber (ses). To Reprove, tabeln, misbilligen. To Request, ersuchen, bitten. To Resist, widerfteben, widerftanb, wiberftanben. Resolution, Entichluß, ber (=e8; pl. se, mod.). Respect, Achtung, Hinficht, bie (pl. sen): in a certain r., in gewiffer binficht. To Respect, achten. Rest, Rube, bie. To Retire, weichen, wich, gewichen; entfernen fich. To Retreat, zurud'ziehen (309,

gezogen).

Return, Rådfehr, Burådfunft, bie. To Return, surud'sfehren (tebrte, getehrt) or tommen. Reverse; see Contrary. Reward, Belohnung, bie =en). To Reward, belohnen. Rhine, Rhein, ber (=6). Rich, reich. Rid of, los. To Ride, reiten, ritt, geritten; fabren (to go in a carriage). Ride, Ritt, ber: to take a r. einen Ritt maden. Ridge (of hills), Bebirge, bas (=es; pl. =e). Ridiculous, laderlid. Right, recht: to the r., jur Rechten. Right, Recht, bas (ses; pl. se). Ring, Ring, ber (=es; pl. =e). Ripe, reif. Rise, auf'ssteben (e.g. from a couch); auf=geben (e.g. of a star). River, Fluß, ber (=e8; pl.=e, mod.); river-side, Ufer, bas (=6; pl.-). Road, Strafe (pl. =n); Canbftrafe, bie; Weg, ber (ses; pl. se). To Roast, braten, briet, gebraten. Robbery, Rauberei, die; Raub, ber (=e6). Rock, Fels (sen [6]); or Felsen, ber (=8; pl. --). Rocky, felfig. wall, Felsmand, bie (pl. :e, mod.). Rome, Rom, bas (=8). Roman, romijd). Roof, Dad, bas (=es; pl. =er, mod.). Room, Bimmer, bas (=8; pl. --); Stube, die (pl. =n). Rope, Seil, bas (ses; pl. se). Rough, rauh, ichroff. Roughly, raub, rob. Round, runb; um. To Row, rubern. Royal, toniglich. To Rub, reiben, rieb, gerieben.

Ruin, Berberben, bas (=6; pl. -);

Trümmer: to be in ruins, in A. liegen.
To Ruin, ins Berberben führen, zu Grunde richten.
To Run, laufen, lief, gelaufen.
To Rush (into the fight), in ben Kampf, in das Gefecht fturzen.

To Soize, ergreisen: seized with fear, von Furcht ergrissen.
Self, selbst: himself, herself, sich herself, se., er (sie) selbst.
Selfish, eigennüßig.
To Soize, ergreisen: seized with fear, von Furcht ergeisen.

Sacrifice, Opfer, bas (=8; pl. —). Sad, traurig, betrubt, nieber= gefdlagen. To Saddle, fatteln. Safe, }ficher; feft. Sail, Segel, bas (=8; pl. --). To Sail, fegeln. Salt, Gala, bas (ses). Salutary, heilfam. To Salute, grußen. Same (the), ber (bie, bas) felbe. Sand, Canb, ber (ses). Satisfied, fatt. To Save, retten; sparen. To Say, sagen: he is said to be, er foll sein. Scaffolding, Geruft, bas (=es; pl. =e). To Scatter, fixeuen. Scholar, Ochuler, ber (=8; pl. -). School, Schule, die (pl.=n); Schul= haus, das. To Scold, schelten, schalt, gescholten. Score, School, bas (=es; pl. —). Scorn; see Contempt. To Scream, ichreien, ichrie, ge= fdrieen. Sea, Gee, bie (pl. =n). To Search after, auf suchen. Season, Jahrszeit, die (pl. sen). Seat, Gie, ber (=es; pl. =e). Secret, geheim, heimlich, auf Secretly, geheime Weise. Secret, Geheimniß, bas (:es; pl. Second, zweite (ber, bie, bas), ein zweiter. Secure ; see Safe. To See, seben, sab, geseben: to s. before, see to Foresee. Seed, Saamen (or Same), ber (=6; pl. -); Saat, bie (pl. en).

fear, von Murcht ergriffen. Self, felbft: himself, herself, fich felbit; he himself, she herself. &c., er (fie) felbft. Selfish, eigennüßig. To Send, fenben, fanbte, gefanbt. for, rufen, tommen, ab'= bolen lassen. Sense, Sinn, ber (=e6; pl. se). Senselessly, finnles. Sensible, verstänbig, sinnreich. Sentence, Spruch, der (ses; pl. se, mod.); to pronounce s. on, ur= theilen über. Sentimental, empfinbfam, empfinblich. To Separate, trennen; icheiben, schied, geschieden. Serene, beiter. Serenely, f Serious, Jernst, ernsthaft, ernst= Seriously, \(\) lich. Servant, Diener (=6; pl. —); Be= biente, ber (like adj.). Servants, Dienerschaft, bie. To Serve, bienen. To Sot, fegen, unter'sgeben. out, geben, reifen, ab'= reisen. To Settle, an'sfiebeln, nieber's laffen, fich. Seven, fieben. Seventeen, siebzehn. Seventeenth, fiebzehnte. To Shake, schütteln. Shallow, feicht. Shameful, ſchanblich. Sharp, fdarf. She, sie; G. ihrer; D. ihr; A. sie. Sheep, Schaaf, bas (28; pl. 2). Shepherd, Hirt, ber (=en; pl. =en). Shine, Schein (=e8), Schimmer, ber (=8; pl. -) Shine, icheinen, ichien, gefchienen. Ship, Schiff, bas (26; pl. 26). Shoe, Schuh, ber (=es; pl. =e). Shop, Laben, ber (=6; pl. —). Short, furz.

Shortly, balb: very s., balbiaft. Shoulder, Schülter, die (pl. =n). Show, Aufwand, der (=es). To Show, seigen: see also to Express. To Shun; see to Avoid. To Shut, ju'=machen, machte, ge= macht; schließen, schloß, ge= foloffen. Sick, trant. Side, Seite, bie (pl. =n): on this s., biesseits; on that or the other s., jenseits. Silent, ftill, ruhig: to be s., fdmei= gen, fdwieg, gefdwiegen. Silk. Seibe, die. Silken, feiben. Silver, Gilber, bas (=8). Silver, adj. filbern. Similar, ahnlich. - things, bergleichen. Simple, Beinfach. Since (of time), feit, feitbem ; (of cause), ba (411). Sincerely, aufrichtig. Sincerity, Aufrichtigfeit, bie. To Sing, fingen, fang, gefungen. Single, einzeln; allein; einzig. To Sink, finten, fant, gefunten. Sister, Schwester, die (pl. =n). To Sit, sigen, saß, gesessen: to s. down, fich nieber'sfegen. Six, feche. Sixth, fedfte. Sixteen, sedzehn. Sixteenth, sedzehnte. Sixty, sedzig (= sechezig). Skin, Saut, Die (pl. =e, mod.); Fell, das (=es; pl. =e). Sky, himmel, ber (s; pl. --). Slack, schlaff. Slave, Sclave, ber (=n; pl. =n). Sleep, Schlaf, ber (=e6). To Sleep, schlafen, schlief, ge= ichlafen. Slender, schlant. Slow, Slowly, langfam. Small, flein, gering.

Smell, Geruch, ber (=e8; pl. =c, mod.). To Smile, låcheln. Snow, Schnee, ber (=8). So, fo: so - that, fo -- baß. Society, Gesellschaft, bie (pl. =en). Sock, Gode, bie (pl. =n). Soft. weich, fanft, leise. Softly, Soldier, Golbat, ber (sen; pl. sen). Some, etwas, einige. Something or Somewhat, etwas, ein wenig. Son, Sohn, ber. Song, Lieb, bas (ses; pl. ser); Gesang, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). Soon, bald: as s. as, so bald ale; comp. fruher or eher. Sorrow, Sorge, die (pl. sen). Sorrowful, forgenvoll, trube, trau-Sort, Sorte, Art, bie (pl. =en): what s. of ! was fur eine Art? was für ein, e, ein? Soul, Seele, bie (pl. =n). Sound, gesund. Sour, fauer. South, Súb, ber (=en). Southern, fablid). To Sow, faen. Spanish, spanisch. To Spare, schonen: to have to s., übrig haben, or haben simply (e.g. time, Beit). Spark, Funte, der (=n [8]; pl.=en). To Speak, reben; fprechen, fprach, gesprochen. Spear, Speer, Spiek, ber (ses; pl. =e). Speckled, bunt. Spectacles, Brille, bie (pl. =n). Spectator, Buschauer, ber (=6; pl. --). Speech, Rede, Sprache, bie (pl.=n). To Spend, aus'-aeben, aab, aegeben. To Spin, fpinnen, fpann, gesponnen. Spirit, Geift, ber (ses; pl. ser): to be in good spirits, gutes Muthes fein.

Spirited, belebt, muthig. Spite, Tros, ber (=e8): in s. of. tros (393) Spiteful, gehäffig. To Spoil, verberben, verbarb, ver= borben Spoon, Loffel, ber (=6; pl. —). To Spread, verbreiten. To Spring, fpringen, fprang, ge= forungen: to spring up, auf= geben, s. geben. Spring, Fruhling, ber (=8; pl. =e): s.-weather, Frublings-Better, Square, vierectig To Squint, fchielen. Stag, hirid, ber (=e6; pl. =e). Stairs, Treppe, bie (pl. =n): up, down st., oben, unten. State, Staat, ber (=es; pl. =en). To Stand, fteben, ftanb, geftanben. Star, Stern, der (=e8; pl. =e). Station, Stand, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). To Stay; see to Remain. at home, zu Saufe bleiben. To Steal, ftehlen, ftahl (or ftohl), gestohlen: to s. in, sich ein= ichleichen. Steel, Stahl, ber (=e8). Steep, Steeply, fteil, schroff. To Step, treten, trat, getreten; schreiten, schritt, geschritten: to s. in, ein'streten. Step, Schritt, ber (283 pl. 2). Stick, Stock, ber (=e6; pl. =e, mod.). To Stick, fteden. Stiff, fleif, ftarr. Still, noch, noch jest. Stingy, farg, fnauserig. Stocking, Strumpf, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.) Stone, Stein, ber (=e8; pl. =e). - (of stone), steinern. Stork, Storch, ber (=es; pl.=e,mod.). Storm, Sturm, ber (ses; pl. se, mod.); Gewitter, bas (=6; pl. Story, Geschichte, die (pl. =n). Stove, Ofen, ber (=6; pl. mod.).

Straight, gerabe. Straightness, Gerabheit, bie. Strange, fremb, fonderbar, feltfam. Straw, Stroh, das (=es). Stream, Strom, ber (ses; pl. se mod.). Strength, Stårte, bie. To Strike: see to Beat. To Stroke, streicheln. Strong, Strongly, Structure, Bau, ber (=e8). Student, Student, ber (sen; pl. =en). To Study, ftubiren. Stuff, Stoff, ber (=es; pl. =e); Beug, bas (=e8; pl. =e). Stupid, bumm. Subject, Gegenstand, ber (= ; pl. =e, mod.). To Succeed, gelingen, gelang, ge= lungen: any body succeeds, es gelingt Jemanben. Success. Erfolg, ber (=e8). Suddenly, ploblich. To Suffer, leiben, litt, gelitten; bulben. Sugar, Bucter, ber (=8). To Suit, paffen, sich schicken für. Sun, Sonne, bie (pl. =n). Sunday, Sonntag, ber (=e8; pl. =e). To Surpass, uber'streffen or fteigen, vid. Sunset, Sonnenuntergang, ber (=e8). Superficial, oberflåchlich. Superficially, Superfluous, überfluffig. Sure, gewiß, sicher. Surely, gewiß, sicherlich. To Surrender, übergeben, übers gab, übergeben. Suspected of, verbaditig (with gen. of object). Swallow, Schmalbe, bie (pl. =n). Swan, Schman, ber (ses; pl. se, mod.). Sweet, füß. To Swim, schwimmen, schwamm, geschwommen. Swine, Schwein, bas (ses; pl. se).

Sword, Degen, ber (st; pl. —). Syllable, Sylbe, bie (pl. sn).

Table, Tisch, ber (=es; pl. =e). To Take, nehmen, nahm, genom= men: to t. away, meg-nehmen; to t. up, ergreifen, ergriff, er= ariffen (of arms); to take or forry over, über'sführen, über= fegen; to t. to be, halten für; to take tea, Thee frinken. Tale, see Story. Tall, groß, hoch. Tame, zahm. To Tame, gabmen, banbigen. Task, Aufgabe, Nebung, die (pl. =en). To Tasto, fdmeden, toften. Taste, Gefdmad, ber (#8). Ton, Thee, ber (=6). To Teach, lehren. Teacher, Lehrer, ber (=6; pl. --). To Tear, reißen, riß, gerissen. - open, auf sreißen, riß, ges riffen (e.g. of a wound). - out, aus'≤reißen. - up, zerreißen. To Tease, necten. To Tell, jagen; erzählen. Temperate, måßig Temperately, maßig; auf eine maßige Weise. Ten, zehn. Tent, Belt, bas (=es; pl. =e). To Terrify, see to Frighten. Testament, Teffament, bas (=e6; pl. =e); leste Bille, ber. Testimony, Beleg, Beweis, ber ; Beugniß, bas (=es; pl. =e). Than, benn, als. To Thank, banten, fich bebanten. Thankful, bantbar. Thankfully, bankbarlich; Dant; auf eine bantbare Beife. Thanks, Dant, der (=e6). That, jener, jene, jenes. -, conj. daß, damit **baß (wi**th

subj.).

To Thaw, thauen.

To Thatch, mit Strob bebeden.

The, ber, bie, bas; pl. bie; the - the, je — je or je — befto. Their, ihr. There, bort; ba: see also Thither. Therefore, baber. They, sie. Thick, bid. Thief, Dieb, ber (es; pl. =e). Thin, b**á**nn. Thing, Ding, bas (ses; pl. =e); Sache, bie (pl. =n); all things, Alles. To Think, benten, bachte, gebacht; glauben; also gebenten (with gen. of object): te t. upon, nachbenken; to t. about, an etmas benten. Third, britte. Thirty, breißig. This, diefer, e, es, pl. biefe. Thither, babin; bortbin. Thou, bu; Gen. beiner; D. bir; Ac. bid). Though; see Although. Thought, Sebante, ber (=n [8]; pl. =n). Thousand, tausenb. To Threaten, brohen. Three, brei. Throne, Thron, ber (=es; pl. =e). Through, burd). To Throw, werfen, warf, geworfen; to t. off, ab'=werfen; to be thrown from a horse, pom Pferbe geworfen werben; vom Pferde fturzen. Throw, Burf, ber (=es; pl. se, mod.). To Thunder, bonnern. Thunder, Donner, der (=8; pl. —, Thus, so, auf biefe Beife. To Tie, binben, banb, gebunden. Ties, Banbe, pl. Tight, eng, straff. Till; see Until. To Till, bestellen, actern. Time, Beit, bie (pl. sen): the last time, bas legte Mal; t. of the year, Jahrezeit; past time, Ber-·gangenheit, die; many times,

viele Male; three times, brei Timid, furchtsam Timidly, Tin, Binn, bas (=e8). Tired, mube, las, ermubet, über= bruffig (with gen. of object). To, zu, nach, um, in, an. To-day, heute. Together, jufammen; together-with, nebft. Token, Beichen, bas (=8; pl. ---). Tomb. Grab, bas (ses; pl. ser, mod.). Tongue, Sprache, bie (pl. =n). Too, ju: too great, ju groß; too small, zu flein. Tool, Wertzeug, bas (ses; pl. se). To Torture, martern. To Touch, berühren; an'sgreifen (e.g. pitch, Ped). Towards, gegen. Tower, Thurm, ber (=e6; pl. =e, mod.). Town, Stabt, bie (pl. =e, mod.). To Translate, übersegen. To Travel, reifen. Treasure, Schat, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). Tree,Baum, ber (=e6; pl.=e, mod.). To Tremble, zittern, zagen. Triangle, Dreiect, das (=es; pl.=e): to describe, &c., rid. Trifle, Rleinigkeit, bie (pl. zen). Troops, Truppen, die, pl. True, mahr, acht. Truly, mahrlich, reblich, aufrichtig. To Trust, trauen; getroften (fich). Truth, Wahrheit, bie. To Try; see to Attempt. To Turn, breben: to t. upon [one's looks], richten [bie Blide] ; to t. out of doors, jur Thur hinaus werfen; Jemanben bie Thur geigen (the latter an euphemistic term). Turnpike or Stile, Schlagbaum, ber (=e8; pl. =e, mod.). Twelve, zwolf. Twenty, zwanzig. Twentieth, amangiafte.

Twice, amei Mal. Two, amei: the t., bie beiben. Tyrant, Anran, ber (sen ; pl. sen). Ugly, håßlich. Uncle, Dheim (ses; pl. se); Ontel, ber (=8; pl. — Undecided, unentichieben. Under, unter. To Understand, verfteben, verftand, verftanden. To Undertake, unternehmen; to u. a journey, eine Reise antreten. Unexpected, unerwartet. Unfavourable, ungunftia. Unfortunate, ungluctich. Ungrateful, unbantbar. Unhappy, ungluction Unhappily, ungludlicher Beife. Unjust, ungerecht. Unless, wenn nicht, es fei benn daß. Unmindful, uneingebent (with gen.). Unripe, unreif. Unselfish, see Disinterested. Until, bis; bis baß. Unwillingly, ungern. Unworthy, unmurbig. Upon, auf, oben, an, bei: u. the whole, im Ganzen. Us, uns. Use, Nugen (=6; pl. --), Gebrauch, ber (=es; pl. se, mod.): to be of u.. von Rugen fein, nugen or nugen; to make u. of, bebienen fich, Gebrauch machen. To Use, gebrauchen; benusen. Useful, núslich. Useless, unnûş. Usual, Usually, } gewöhnlich.

Vain, eitel; eingebilbet: in vain, Vainly, vergebens. Valiant, tapfer. Valiantly, tapfer. Vanity, Etteleit, bie.

Utter, see Entire.

To Vanquish: see To Conquer. To be Vanquished, unterliegen. Various, verschieben. Vast, ausgebreitet, groß, weit. Venture, magen. Very, sehr. To Vex. argern: I am vexed, es verbrießt mich. Vexation ; see Anger. Vice, Lafter, bas (=6; pl. —). Victory, Sieg, ber (see; pl. se). Unficht, Musficht, bie (pl. ≠en). Village, Dorf, bas (=e8; pl. =er, mod.) Vine, Bein (:e8), Weinstock, ber (#6; pl. =e, mod.). Vinegar, Effig, ber (=8). Violent. beftia. Violently, Virtue, Tugend, bie (pl. sen): by v. of, traft, vermoge (with gen.). Virtuous, tugenbhaft. Virtuously, Visible, sichtbar. Vision, Erscheinung, die (pl. sen). Visit, Besuch, ber (=es; pl. =e). To Visit, besuchen. Volume, Band, ber (=es; pl. =e, mod.). App. 4.

To Wait (for), marten; erwarten; barren. Waiting, Warten (e.g. tired of). To Walk, gehen; vid.; to go out walking, or to take a w., [pa= gieren geben, or einen Spagier= gang machen; of walking, bes Gehens (e.g. tired of). Walk, Gang, Spaziergang, ber (=e8; pl. =e, mod.). Walking, Gehen, bas (compare with Gang, Appendix, 48, f). Wall, Mauer (pl. =n), Banb, bie (pl. se, mod.). Wallenstein (a German general). To Wander, manbern. Want, Mangel, ber (=6; pl. -,

Waistcoat, Befte, bie (pl. =n).

to be in w. of, bedürftig fein, or beburfen. To Want [= be missing], fehlen; beburfen (gen. and acc.). Warm, marm. Warrior, Arieger, ber (=6; pl. —). To Waste, verfdwenden, verfchleubern. Watch, Uhr, bie (pl. ≠n). Water, Baffer, bas (=8; pl. -). To Waver, manten. Wax, Wache, bas (≤es). Way, Weg, ber (=es; pl. =e): to get out of the w., weichen, aus bem Bege geben; in this w., auf biefe Beife. We, wir. Weak, schwach. Weakness, Schwäche, Schwachbeit, bie (pl. sen). Wearied or Weary, matt, mube, ermübet. Weariness, Mübiakeit, die. Weather, Wetter, bas (=8). Weeds, Unfraut, bas (=es). Week, Woche, bie (pl. =n). To Weep, weinen. Weight, Gewicht, bas (=es; pl.=e). Well, gut, mohl: to be as w., eben fo gut fein; as w. as, fo wol als. What, mas: what a, mas fur ein. Whatever, mas aud; mas aud immer ; mas es auch fei. See 447-451. When, wann; wenn; als; ba. Whence, moher. Where, wo, wofelbft. Wherry, Rahn, der (=es; pl. =t, mod.). Whether, ob. * Which, welcher, e, es; ber, bie, bas: w. of the two. w. von beiden. While or Whilst, mahrend, indem. White, meiß. Whither, mobin. Who, ber, bie, bas; welcher, e, es. Who i mer? Whoever or -soever, wer — audio mer er (fie) auch fei; mer auch immer. See 447-451. mod.); to come to w., barben; | Whole, ganz.

Why, warum, weghalb. Wicked, bose, schlecht. Wide, weit, breit. Widow, Wittmer, die (pl. =n). Widower, Wittmer, der (=8; pl. ---). Wild, wilb. Will, Wille, ber (=n [8]; pl. =n); Teftament, bas (=es; pl. =e). Willing (to be), wollen, wollte, gewollt. To Win, gewinnen, gewann, ge= monnen. Wind, Wind, ber (=e8; pl. =e). Window, Fenster, bas (=6; pl. -Winkelried (Arnold von), a Swiss patriot. Wine, Wein, ber (=e8). Winter, Binter, ber (=6; pl. -). Wisdom, Beisheit, bie. Wisely, meise. To Wish, munichen, wollen. Wish, Bunich, der (=es; pl. =e, mod.). With, mit. Within, innerhalb, binnen. Without, ohne, außerhalb: to be w. (= be failing), ermangeln (with gen, of object). Wolf, Bolf, ber (=e8; pl. =e, mod.). Woman, Frau, die (pl. sen). Wool, Bolle, bie. Woollen, wollen. Wonder, Wunber, bas (=6; pl. —) ToWonder, wundern fich: I should not w., es follte mid nicht mun= bern. To Withdraw; see to Retire,

Work, Arbeit, die (pl. =en): to go to w., an bie A. geben; to set to w. about any thing, etwas an'=greifen (see 452). To Work, arbeiten. World, Belt, bie (pl. sen). Worse, årger, schlechter, schlimmer. Worth (to be), gelten, galt, ge= golten. Worthy, wurbig (with gen. of object). To Wound, verwunden. Wound, Bunbe, bie (pl. =en). Wounded, verwundet. Wretched, elend; jammerlich. Writ, Schrift, bie (pl. sen). To Write, ichreiben, ichrieb, ge= fdrieben. Writing, Schrift, die (pl. sen). Wrong, Unrecht, bas (=es). Wrong, unrecht: to be w., Un=

Young, jung.
Yard, see Court.
Ye, ihr.
Year, Sahr, ba6 (=e6; pl. =e).
Yes, ja.
Yesterday, gestern.
Yet, nod;: not y., nod nidit.
You, Jhr, Sie.
Your, euer; bein (thine): Jhr
(when Sie, they, is used for
bu, thou).
Youth, Jugenb, bie; Jüngling
(young man), ber (=e6; pl. =e).

Zine, Bint, bas (=e8).

recht haben.

LONDON:
GILBERT AND RIVINGTON, PRINTERS,
ST. JOHN'S SQUARE.

THE FOLLOWING SCHOOL BOOK

(BY THE LATE REV. T. K. ARNOLD)

ARE PUBLISHED BY MESSRS. RIVINGTON,

3, WATERLOO PLACE, PALL MALL.

Arranged under Numbers for Progressive Tuition.

Keys to those works to which † is prefixed may be had by Schoolmasters and Tutors.

1. † Henry's First Latin Book		ition. 14		rice. .0d.	
(† Second Latin Book, and Practical Grammar			4	0	
2. Trist Verse Book		6	2	ŏ	
Companion to the First Book (additional Exercises)		ĭ	ī	ŏ	
Historiæ Antiquæ Epitome		- 1	4	0	
Epitome)		1	7	6	
Ecloge Ovidianæ, Part I. (From the Elegiac Poems)	•••	9	2	6	
Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, Part I	••••	11	5 6	0 6	
of Cornelius Nepos, with Critical Questions and Imitati	70				
		3	4	0	
VIRGILII ENEIS, Lib. I—VI.	***	1	12	0	
VIDALLI Ewris with English Notes from Dilbner		1	6	0	
HOBATII OPERA, with English Notes from Dübner	•••	1	7	0	
Eclogæ Horatianæ. Pars I. Carmina		3	5	0	
† Practical Introduction to Latin-Verse Composition	••••	3 1	5 12	6	
GRADUS AND PARNASSUM		-		-	
CICERO, WITH ENGLISH NOTES. Part I. Selected Oratic Part II. Selected Epistle	ns	2	4	0	
Part II. Selected Epistle	es		5	0	
Part III, The Tusculan Disputations	***	1	5	6	
Part IV. De Finibus (on the Supreme Go	XI)	1	5 2	6 6	
5. ECLOGE HISTORICE; or, Selections from the Roman His	+0-	•	-	0	
rians, Cæsar, Sallust, Livy, Curtius, Tacitus		1	4	0	
SALLUST: Jugurthine War	••••	ī	3	ě	
SALLUST: Jugurthine War TACITUS, Part I. Annales, Books I—VI.	••••	1	6	Ō	
Part II. Annales, Books XI-XVI	••••	1	5	0	
† Practical Introduction to Latin Prose Composition, Part II			8	0	
(Latin Word-Building; with Etymological Vocabulary	****	2	4	6	
6. 1 Longer Latin Exercises, Part I. Part II.	•••	1	4	ŏ	
Grotefend's Materials for Translation into Latin	****	8	7	6	
ELLISIAN EXERCISES (adapted to the Practical Introduction			ľ	•	
Part 1.)	•••	1	8	6	
Key to the Ellisian Exercises	••••	1	3	0	
GREEK.					
† The First Greek Book		4	5	0	
† The Second Greek Book		1	5	6	
The Third Greek Book (from Xenophon's Cyropædia)	••••	1	3	6	
The Fourth Greek Book (Xenophon's Anabasis, Books IV-VI	I.)	1	4	0	
Practical Introduction to Greek Accidence	••••	6	5	6	
Greek Prose Composition. Part I.	•••	8	5	6	
Greek Constrains	•••	1	6	6	
Greek Grammar (intended as a sufficient Grammar of referen	ce	-	ľ	•	,
for the higher forms)	•••	2	10	6	
Madvig's Greek Syntax (with an Appendix on the Particles)•••	1	8 5	6 0	
Elementary Greek Grammar	••••	i	8	ŏ	
The Dislects separately	••••	i	۱ĭ	6	
The Dialects separately	• • • •	i	8	č	
XENOPHON: Anabasis complete (Hertlein)	• • • • •	ī.	6		

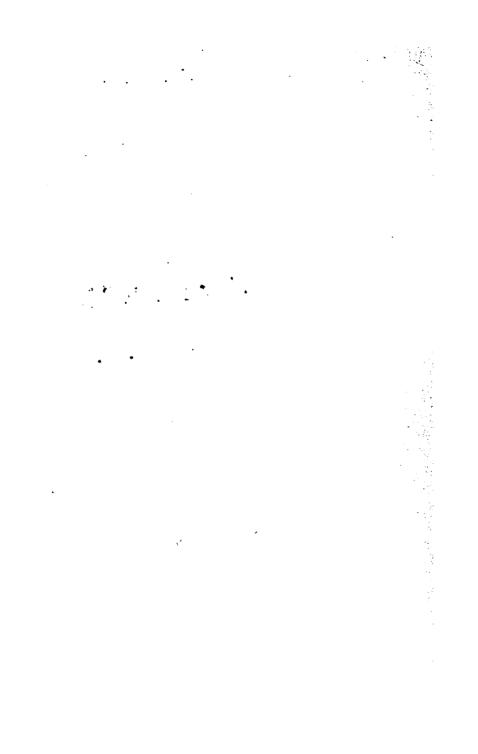
REV. T. K. ARNOLD'S WORKS (continued).	
GREEK CLASSICS, with ENGLISH NOTES (continued). Edition.	Price.
(a) The Olynthiac Orations) with English Notes 2	3 0
DEMOS- (b) The Oration on the Crown and Grammatical 1	4 6
TREE (e) The Philippic Orations References 1	4 0
DENOS- (s) The Olynthiac Orations with English Notes 2 DENOS- (b) The Oration on the Crown and Grammatical 1 THERES (c) The Philippic Orations 1 Escrives.—The Oration against Ctesiphon	4 0
Howart (a) Complete Eattion	12 0
ILIAS. (c) Lib. I—IV., with Critical Introduction	7 6
Homeric Lexicon, Greek and English (Crusius's)	9 0
(The Ajax (Schneidewin)	3 0
The Philoctetes (Schneidewin)	3 0
Soproce and The (Edipus Tyranpus (Schneidewin)	4 0
SOPROCLES The Œdipus Tyrannus (Schneidewin)	4 0
The Antigone (Schneidewin) 1	4 0
The Hecubs 1	8 0
The Hinnelstone	3 0
EURIPIDES The Bacche	3 0
I me ipaigents in fauris	3 0
The Medea 1	3 0
TRUCYDIDES.—Book First	5 6 4 6
HERODOTUS.—Eclogæ Herodoteæ, Part I. (Schweighæuser) 1	3 6
Beloge Aristophanice. Part I. "The Clouds"	3 6
Relogæ Aristophanicæ, Part I. "The Clouds"	3 6
† The First Hebrew Book	7 6 9 0
Rev. T. K. Annold and the Rev. J. E. Riddle] 4	25 0
An Abridgment of the above	10 6
Classical Examination Papers	3 6
English Grammer for Classical Schools	3 6
Spelling Turned Etymology, Part I	2 6
Part II. (Latin vid English) 1	4 6
The First German Book 4	5 6
Key to the shove	2 6
Second German Book; a Syntax and Etymological Vocabulary 1	6 6
Key to ditto	1 0
German Vocabulary 1	4 0
The Riber Prevou Book	5 6
Key to the above, by M. Delille	2 6
French vocabulary	4 6
Zumpt's Annals of Ancient Chronology 1	5 0
HANDBOOKS.	
ROMAN ANTIQUITIES (ROJESEN) 2	3 6
GRECIAN ANTIQUITIES (BOJESEN) 2	3 6
ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY (PUTZ) 2	6 6
MEDIEVAL GEOGRAPHY AND HISTORY (PÜTZ)	4 6
Modern Geography and History (Pütz)	5 6
LATIN SYNONYMES (DOEDERLEIN'S). By the Rev. H. H. Arnold 2 GREEK SYNONYMES (PILLON)	6 6
HEBREW ANTIQUITIES. By the Rev. H. Browne	4 0
HANDBOOK OF THE RELIGION AND MYTHOLOGY OF THE	1
GREEKS. From the German of H. W. Stoll (with Plates) 1	5 0
The ATHENIAN STAGE. From the German of Witzschel 1	1 4 0

A COPIOUS PHRASEOLOGICAL ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON. By Dr. Fradersdoeff, Rev. T. K. Arnold, and Rev. H. Browne. 8vo. 21s.

. By the Rev. H. H. Arnold:
The ITALIAN ANALYST; or, Essentials of Italian Grammar. 3s. 6d.

By Professor Pifferi and Rev. D. W. Turner:
The FIRST ITALIAN BOOK, on the Plan of Henry's First Latin Book. 5s.6d.
A KEY to ditto. 1s.6d.

Boy's ARITHMETIC, Part I. Second Edition. 3s. 6d. Part II. 1s. 6d.



. . • .

luc have 12 1st od 18115, 8 1h look

